



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



3099 f. 142





1. The first part of the document is a letter from the President of the United States to the Congress, dated January 1, 1861. It is a very important document, as it contains the President's message to the Congress at the beginning of his first term.

2. The second part of the document is a letter from the President to the Congress, dated January 1, 1861. It is a very important document, as it contains the President's message to the Congress at the beginning of his first term.

3. The third part of the document is a letter from the President to the Congress, dated January 1, 1861. It is a very important document, as it contains the President's message to the Congress at the beginning of his first term.

4. The fourth part of the document is a letter from the President to the Congress, dated January 1, 1861. It is a very important document, as it contains the President's message to the Congress at the beginning of his first term.

5. The fifth part of the document is a letter from the President to the Congress, dated January 1, 1861. It is a very important document, as it contains the President's message to the Congress at the beginning of his first term.

6. The sixth part of the document is a letter from the President to the Congress, dated January 1, 1861. It is a very important document, as it contains the President's message to the Congress at the beginning of his first term.

7. The seventh part of the document is a letter from the President to the Congress, dated January 1, 1861. It is a very important document, as it contains the President's message to the Congress at the beginning of his first term.

8. The eighth part of the document is a letter from the President to the Congress, dated January 1, 1861. It is a very important document, as it contains the President's message to the Congress at the beginning of his first term.

9. The ninth part of the document is a letter from the President to the Congress, dated January 1, 1861. It is a very important document, as it contains the President's message to the Congress at the beginning of his first term.

10. The tenth part of the document is a letter from the President to the Congress, dated January 1, 1861. It is a very important document, as it contains the President's message to the Congress at the beginning of his first term.

11. The eleventh part of the document is a letter from the President to the Congress, dated January 1, 1861. It is a very important document, as it contains the President's message to the Congress at the beginning of his first term.

12. The twelfth part of the document is a letter from the President to the Congress, dated January 1, 1861. It is a very important document, as it contains the President's message to the Congress at the beginning of his first term.

**A**  
**NEW UNIVERSAL**  
**FRENCH GRAMMAR;**

**BEING**  
**AN ACCURATE SYSTEM**  
**OF**  
***FRENCH ACCIDENCE AND SYNTAX,***  
**ON**  
**A METHODICAL PLAN.**

---

**BY NICOLAS HAMEL,**  
**GRADUATE IN THE UNIVERSITY OF CAEN, AND RECTOR OF**  
**THE TOWN OF L'AIGLE IN NORMANDY.**

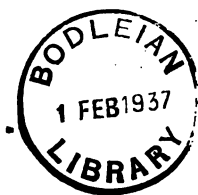
---

**A NEW EDITION,**  
**CAREFULLY CORRECTED AND GREATLY IMPROVED.**

---

**LONDON:**  
**PRINTED FOR**  
**LONGMAN, REES, ORME, BROWN, GREEN, AND LONGMAN,**  
**AND**  
**WHITTAKER AND CO.**

1864



LONDON :  
Printed by A. SPOTTISWOODE,  
New-Street-Square.

## P R E F A C E.

---

**I**T is universally allowed that the only sure, and at the same time the shortest, method to attain the perfection of a language, is to study its principles after the most strict and exact rules of Grammar.

Conformably to this truth, generally acknowledged, and confirmed by daily experience, I have composed this work with sound principles and exact definitions ; and in order to promote as much as possible the learning of this useful tongue, I have drawn a parallel between the French and English languages, which at the same time will confirm the English Student in the principles of his native tongue, greatly facilitate the understanding of the French rules, and point out the different genius of each language with accuracy and precision.

The first part of this Grammar, which has for its object Pronunciation and Orthography, treats of the sound of letters, vowels, and consonants. The different sorts of accents, the proper manner of using of them, and their effects upon vowels, are put in the clearest light ; the use

of the apostrophe and capital letters, the different sorts of punctuation and abbreviations are treated in a method simple and concise, but at the same time so comprehensive, that I know not any thing which could be added on the same subject.

The idea that it would be an encouragement to a pupil, if he could easily treasure in his mind a great collection of words, prompted me to compare the analogy between the two languages; and, after mature consideration, I have devised four fundamental rules, whereby the scholar may, in a few lessons and without much trouble, acquire several thousand French words (page 26).

The rules by which we distinguish the gender of nouns are simple and comprehensive: the masculine substantives which cannot be reduced under any rule of terminations, are set in alphabetical order: thus, in a short time, that important point may be perfectly attained, in which most Grammarians are very defective, and which many do not even attempt to explain.

The formation of the plural of nouns, and of the feminine of adjectives, is placed in a new light (the first, pages 42 and 43; and the second, pages 46 — 48).

On the verb I have been very extensive and methodical: having explained its nature and different species, I have fully conjugated a verb of each regular and irregular conjugation; to this explanation I have added (pages 112 —

•

114) a new method, grounded upon principles by which all regular and irregular verbs may be learnt with uncommon facility.

Having explained the different parts of speech in the manner which seemed the most natural, simple, and methodical, I proceed to the syntax, in which I treat of the union, concord, and disposition of words, in the same order as I had previously adopted in treating of their nature, declension, and conjugation.

This part, as the most essential and difficult, I have explained at large, in a series of clear, short, and accurate rules, for the most part illustrated by instructive examples from good authors. The principles depend successively on each other, and the knowledge of the preceding leads usually to the understanding of that which follows. The rules which I have given for the construction of the language are set in numerical order, and so disposed, that they may be found as easily as a word in a dictionary ; an advantage peculiar to this Grammar.

The most difficult points of the language, such as the construction of pronouns, the different modes of negation and interrogation, the distinction of tenses, the use of the subjunctive mood, the government of verbs, &c. are particularly and fully explained.

The Grammar concludes with an alphabetical series of the French verbs most in use, denoting, at once of what

conjugation they are, and the case they govern, by which two great difficulties in the French language will be removed.

My first object was to render this work fit for the use of schools, and so to adapt it to the capacities of the youngest learners, that in beginning to learn French they may begin it grammatically. For this purpose I have used my utmost endeavours to unite simplicity of method with clearness and precision; and having in some measure succeeded in this point, I may assert from experience, that most of the rules and principles of this Grammar may, with the help of a good master, be understood and learnt by a child of six or seven years of age. Of this those will be easily convinced who will attend to the natural order which exists in the different parts, to the precision of the rules, to the clearness of the style, and, in a word, to the work taken altogether, which, according to the opinion of several learned gentlemen, is executed on a plan new, simple, and much improved.

\*\*\* The present edition of this Grammar has undergone a thorough revision: such corrections have been made, and such observations and explanations added, as appeared necessary to the improvement and utility of the work.

A

# TABLE

OF

## THE CONTENTS.

---

THE true definition of Grammar	-	Page 1
Division of this work	-	ib.

### PART I. *Of Pronunciation and Orthography.*

CHAP. I. Of Pronunciation	-	2
Of the French alphabet	-	ib.
Of the French accents	-	4
Of vowels	-	6
Of diphthongs	-	7
Of consonants	-	8
Observations upon some consonants	-	10
Remarks on the pronunciation of some words	-	14
CHAP. 2. Of Orthography	-	16
Of the apostrophe	-	17
Of the hyphen and cedilla	-	18
Of the <i>tréma</i> , parenthesis, quotations, and abbreviations	-	19
Of punctuation	-	20
Of capital letters	-	22
An alphabetical series of kingdoms, provinces, and towns, which have a different denomination in French and in English	-	ib.



	Page
A method to learn the French denomination for the proper names of persons taken from the Latin and Greek	24
A method to learn easily a great collection of French words	26
 <b>PART II. <i>Different Parts of Speech.</i></b> 	
CHAP. 1. Of the French articles	28
CHAP. 2. Of substantives	<i>ib.</i>
Of the nature and kinds of substantives	29
Of the declension of nouns	<i>ib.</i>
How to distinguish when a noun is masculine or feminine	32
Of substantives masculine in one signification, and feminine in another	39
Rules to form the plural of nouns	42
How compound words form their plural	44
Of substantives which have no plural	<i>ib.</i>
Of substantives which have no singular	45
CHAP. 3. Of adjectives	46
How to form the feminine of adjectives	<i>ib.</i>
Of the plural of adjectives	49
Of comparatives and superlatives	50
Of cardinal numbers	51
Of ordinal numbers	55
CHAP. 4. Of pronouns	56
Of personal pronouns	57
Of possessive pronouns	59
Of demonstrative pronouns	62
Of relative pronouns	64
Of interrogative pronouns	65
Of indeterminate pronouns	66
CHAP. 5. Of verbs and their species	67
Of moods, tenses, numbers, and persons of verbs	69

# TABLE OF THE CONTENTS.

ix

	Page
Conjugation of the auxiliary verb <i>avoir</i> - -	70
Conjugation of the auxiliary verb <i>être</i> - -	72
Verbs conjugated with <i>to have</i> in English, and with <i>être</i> in French - -	74
Of regular conjugations - -	75
Conjugation of all the irregular verbs - -	80
Conjugation of impersonal verbs - -	105
Several ways of using a verb - -	106
Conjugation of a reflected verb - -	108
Observations on the reflected verbs - -	110
Verbs reflected in French - -	111
An easy method to learn verbs - -	112
Of adverbs - -	116
Different sorts of adverbs - -	117
Of prepositions - -	118
Verbs composed with a preposition - -	120
Of conjunctions - -	122
Of interjections - -	124

## PART III. *Of Syntax.*

CHAP. 1. Use of the French articles - -	125
Article used in French and in English - -	126
Article used in French, and not in English - -	127
Articles used in English, and not in French - -	129
No article used either in French or in English - -	131
CHAP. 2. Syntax of substantives - -	134
CHAP. 3. Syntax of adjectives - -	136
Of the concord and position of adjectives - -	137
Of the government of adjectives - -	139
Of the adjectives of dimension - -	141
Of comparatives and superlatives - -	142
CHAP. 4. Of personal and impersonal pronouns - -	146
When they are conjunctive or disjunctive - -	<i>ib.</i>

	Page
Of the personal pronouns, <i>it, they, them</i>	- 149
Of the right placing of personal pronouns	- 153
When the pronouns are or are not to be repeated	156
Distinction between <i>lui, elle, se, and soi</i>	- 157
CHAP. 5. Of possessive pronouns	- 158
CHAP. 6. Of demonstrative pronouns	- 163
CHAP. 7. Of relative pronouns	- 168
CHAP. 8. Of interrogative pronouns	- 170
CHAP. 9. Different sorts of interrogations	- 172
CHAP. 10. Different uses of <i>que</i>	- 175
CHAP. 11. Of indeterminate pronouns	- 178
Of <i>tout</i> and its various constructions	- 183
Of the different sorts of <i>quelque</i>	- 185
CHAP. 12. Several modes of negation	- 191
Distinction between <i>pas</i> and <i>point</i>	- 194
Negative expressions in French, and not in English	195
Syntax of verbs	- 196
CHAP. 13. Of the government of verbs	- 197
CHAP. 14. Of the infinitive mood	- 203
Of the infinitive present	- <i>ib.</i>
Of the gerund	- 210
Of the participle	- 212
Concord of the verb with its nominative	- 214
CHAP. 15. Of the indicative mood	- 217
CHAP. 16. Of the use of the subjunctive	- 222
Words which always govern the subjunctive	- <i>ib.</i>
Words which govern sometimes the indicative, and sometimes the subjunctive	- 225
Which tense of the subjunctive must be used	- 228
CHAP. 17. Of the auxiliary verbs	- 229
CHAP. 18. Of the impersonal verbs	- 232
CHAP. 19. Syntax of adverbs	- 235
CHAP. 20. Syntax of prepositions	- 237
CHAP. 21. Of the French idioms	- 240

# TABLE OF THE CONTENTS.

xi

	Page
Idiomatical expressions of the verbs <i>to have</i> and <i>to be</i>	240
Idiomatical significations of several verbs	244
A series of the most curious French idioms	246
CHAP. 22. The French proverbs most in use	248
CHAP. 23. Of the concord, disposition, and repetition of words in a sentence	253
What parts of speech agree together	<i>ib.</i>
The order of the words in a sentence	254
What words must be repeated	256
Words which may be elegantly repeated	258
CHAP. 24. Distinction in French between many words which are expressed in the same manner in English	260
An alphabetical series of the French verbs most in use	267
Dialogue sur l'Histoire de France	315
Dialogue sur l'Histoire d'Angleterre	319



A NEW

# GRAMMAR

OF THE

## FRENCH LANGUAGE.

---

GRAMMAR is a guide to the arts of *reading, speaking, and writing, correctly*; or, according to the definition of a celebrated author, Grammar is the art of reducing into rules the manner of speaking of a nation.

A Grammar ought to treat of the sounds and characters of a language; of the nature of the words of which it is composed; and of the union and arrangement which is to be made of them in speech.

As I propose to consider these objects in their different points of view, this work is naturally divided into three parts. The first has for its object Pronunciation and Orthography. The second explains the nature or etymology of the different parts of speech, the declension of Nouns and Pronouns, and the conjugation of Verbs. The third contains a series of clear, short, and accurate rules for the construction or syntax of the language, and is completed by a collection of the most curious French idioms and proverbs.

## PART I.

### OF PRONUNCIATION AND ORTHOGRAPHY.

---

## CHAPTER I.

### PRONUNCIATION.\*

**P**RONUNCIATION is reading aloud, or speaking, the words of a language correctly.

Words consist of one or more syllables; and syllables, when written, consist of one or more letters: the letters of the French tongue are the following, named nearly according to the letters in English placed below each.

#### FRENCH ALPHABET.

A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L, M,  
ah, bay, say, day, a, eff, gey, ahsh, e, jee, ka, el, emm,  
N, O, P, Q, R, S, T, U, V, X, Y, Z, &  
enn, o, pay, qu, air, s, tay, u, vay, ex, egrec, zed, &.

These five, *a, e, i, o, u*, are called vowels, because they represent a distinct sound; we will speak of *y* hereafter.

The others are called consonants, because they cannot be sounded without a vowel.

\* As the English cannot of themselves learn the French pronunciation (because the true sounds cannot be conveyed by rules), and as they easily obtain this very essential point with the help of a good master, a long treatise would be useless; therefore I will only give the rules, and make the observations, which to this day have been found the most clear, simple, and useful, and which I have selected from the authors most generally esteemed.

The vowels and consonants can be joined together as follows :

ba,	be,	bi,	bo,	bu,	.....	ab,	eb,	ib,	ob,	ub,
ca,	ce,	ci,	co,	cu,	.....	ac,	ec,	ic,	oc,	uc,
ça,	—	—	ço,	çu,	.....					
da,	de,	di,	do,	du,	.....	ad,	ed,	id,	od,	ud,
fa,	fe,	fi,	fo,	fu,	.....	af,	ef,	if,	of,	uf,
ga,	ge,	gi,	go,	gu,	.....	ag,	eg,	ig,	og,	ug,
ha,	he,	hi,	ho,	hu,	.....	ah,	eh,	ih,	oh,	uh,
ja,	je,	ji,	jo,	ju,	.....					
ka,	ke,	ki,	ko,	ku,	.....	ak,	ek,	ik,	ok,	uk,
la,	le,	li,	lo,	lu,	.....	al,	el,	il,	ol,	ul,
ma,	me,	mi,	mo,	mu,	.....	am,	em,	im,	om,	um,
na,	ne,	ni,	no,	nu,	.....	an,	en,	in,	on,	un,
pa,	pe,	pi,	po,	pu,	.....	ap,	ep,	ip,	op,	up,
qua,	que,	qui,	quo,	qu,	.....					
ra,	re,	ri,	ro,	ru,	.....	ar,	er,	ir,	or,	ur,
sa,	se,	si,	so,	su,	.....	as,	es,	is,	os,	us,
ta,	te,	ti,	to,	tu,	.....	at,	et,	it,	ot,	ut,
va,	ve,	vi,	vo,	vu,	.....	av,	ev,	iv,	ov,	uv,
xa,	xe,	xi,	xo,	xu,	.....	ax,	ex,	ix,	ox,	ux,
za,	ze,	zi,	zo,	zu,	.....	az,	ez,	iz,	oz,	uz.

The letters of the French alphabet, like those of the English, are not so numerous as the elementary sounds they are used to represent.

The deficiency is made up, in some measure, by the use of marks called *accent*, *tréma*, *cedille*; and partly by combining two or more letters in a diphthong.

There is a class of sounds, too, called nasal, and represented by a vowel or diphthong followed by N or M; as :

an,	en,	in,	on,	un,	ain,	ein.
am,	em,	im,	om,	um,	aim,	oin.

The whole number of simple and articulate sounds in French may be reduced to thirty-seven elementary ones, with which every variety of syllable is formed.

The capital letters in the following words serve to mark the thirty-seven elementary sounds :



A-h,	IN-de,	QUeu-e,	Bœu-fs,
A-llez,	ON,	GUeu-x,	Re-nais,
Ê-tre,	UN,	CH-ut!	Le-vain,
E-sther,	OU,	Jeu,	Se,
Ê-pi,	EU-x,	Fœu,	Z-inc,
I-da,	gru-E,*	Voœu,	Te-nez,
O-s,	PST!†	Meus,	Deux,
O-pteز,	H-âche,	Nœu-d,	Mou-ILL-e
U-rie,	H-abit,	Peu,	Bai-GN-e.
AN-dré,			

### OF THE FRENCH ACCENTS. ‡

There are three different accents in French, called *acute*, *grave*, and *circumflex*.

The *acute* accent ( ^ ) gives to the vowel under it an acute sound, much resembling that of *a* in the English alphabet, as in the words *vérité*, truth, *probité*, probity, *prémédité*, premeditated.

The *grave* accent ( ` ) gives to the vowel under it a broad and open sound, as in the words *accès*, access, *progrès*, progress, *succès*, success.

The *circumflex* accent ( ^ ) gives a long sound to the vowel under it, as in the words *âme*, soul, *tête*, head, *gîte*, lodging, *dôme*, cupola, *flûte*, flute.

### THE ACUTE ACCENT IS USED,

1. Over the *é* final, in a substantive which ends in *té* in French, and in *ty* in English; such are, *impiété*, impiety, *charité*, charity, *humanité*, humanity, &c.

2. Over the first *é*, when there are two joined at the end of a noun, as in the words, *armée*, army, *pensée*, thought, *année*, year, *trophée*, trophy, *mausolée*, mausoleum.

\* The *e* mute never begins a word.

† *Pst* is intended to mark, that in some cases a faint *e* mute follows each consonant.

‡ I treat here of accents, because they give to the vowels several sounds which cannot be easily distinguished without some notion of them.

3. Over *é* followed by another vowel, which does not belong to the same syllable, as in the words, *réel*, real, *créateur*, creator, *réunion*, reunion, *préoccupé*, preposessed, &c.

4. Over the *é* final in the participles of all verbs of the first conjugation, that is, which end in *er* in the infinitive mood, such are *parlé*, *chanté*, *acheté*, *aimé*, *donné*, from *parler*, to speak, *chanter*, to sing, *acheter*, to buy, *aimer*, to love, *donner*, to give.

5. Over the *é* final of the first person singular of the indicative present in all verbs of the first conjugation, when they are used interrogatively, but not in other cases: thus we write, *je donne*, I give, *je porte*, I carry, *je préfère*, I prefer, &c. without accent, and *donné-je*, *porté-je*, *préféré-je*, with an accent.

### THE GRAVE ACCENT IS USED,

1. Over the open *è*, followed by the final *s*, as in the words *auprès*, near, *exprès*, express, *progrès*, progress, &c.; but practice alone can teach when *e* is open or not.

2. Over *à* preposition, to distinguish it from the third person of the verb *avoir*, *il a*, he has. Example: *il y a moins de gloire à vaincre un ennemi qu'à lui pardonner, quand on l'a vaincu*. There is less glory in conquering an enemy, than in pardoning him after he has been conquered.

3. Over *là* adverb, to distinguish it from *la* article or pronoun. Example: *où la vertu finit, là le vice commence*; where virtue ends, there vice begins.

4. Over *dès* preposition or conjunction, to distinguish it from *des* article. Example: *dès que j'aurai de l'argent, j'achèterai des livres*; as soon as I have money, I will buy books.

5. Over *où* adverb, to distinguish it from *ou* conjunction: as, *où êtes-vous?* where are you? *vous ou moi nous irons*, you or I shall go.

6. Over the vowel *e* when it is followed by a mute syllable: as, *manè-ge*, *sincè-re*, *jè-te*, *fidè-le*, *espè-rent*.

## THE CIRCUMFLEX ACCENT IS USED,

1. Over the penultimate or last vowel but one of all verbs, in the first and second persons plural of the preterite of the indicative. Example: *nous parlâmes*, we spoke, *vous parlâtes*, you spoke, *nous agîmes*, we acted, *vous agîtes*, you acted, *nous reçûmes*, we received, *vous reçûtes*, you received.

2. Over the last vowel of the third person singular of the preterite of the subjunctive, but not of the preterite of the indicative: thus, *il agit*, he acted, *il fit*, he did, *il vendit*, he sold, *il reçut*, he received; without accent in the preterite of the indicative; and *il agit*, he might act, *il fit*, he might do, *il vendît*, he might sell, *il reçût*, he might receive, with a circumflex accent in the preterite of the subjunctive.

3. Over the syllables which are long, and were formerly written with an *s*: such are *pâte*, paste, *honnête*, honest, *tempête*, storm, *impôt*, tax, *gîte*, lodging.

4. Over *dû*, participle of *devoir*, to owe, to distinguish it from *du*, of the, article. Over *crû*, participle of *croître*, to grow, to distinguish it from *cru*, participle of *croire*, to believe. Over *sûr*, sure, adjective, to distinguish it from *sur*, upon, preposition: as, *je suis sûr que le livre est sur la table*, I am sure that the book is upon the table.

5. Over *î* when followed by *t* in the verbs which have their infinitive in *ôître* or *aitre*; as, *croître*, to grow, *paraître*, to appear, *disparaître*, to disappear, *connaître*, to know, *naître*, to be born, &c.

The other circumstances in which these accents must be used in French, cannot be explained by any general rules.

## OF VOWELS.

When the vowels have an accent, they have a sound either acute, open, or long, according as the accent is acute, grave, or circumflex.

When they have no accent, they generally keep their natural sound, that is, the sound we have given them in the

alphabet, except *e*, which is often mute at the end of a word of several syllables, such as *modestie*, modesty, *justice*, justice, *il étudie*, he studies, &c., and also in the future and conditional of many verbs; thus, *je serai*, I shall be, *je servirais*, I should be, *je prierai*, I shall pray, *je prierais*, I should pray, are pronounced pretty nearly as if they were written *je srai*, *je srais*, *je prirai*, *je prirais*.

But the unaccented vowels are not always pronounced in one way: for the *a* of *allez* is not that of *espace*, *gagner*, &c.; and *o* sounds very differently in *corps*, *optez*, from the *o* in *os*, *clos*. The right pronunciation must be learnt by close attention to a correct speaker, as it cannot be conveyed by general rules.

*Y* has the sound of *i* simple between two consonants; thus the word *mystère*, mystery, *asyle*, asylum, are pronounced as if they were written, *mistère*, *asile*.

When *y* is between two vowels, it has usually the sound of *ii*: thus, *essayer*, to try, *employer*, to employ, are pronounced as if they were written, *essaiier*, *emploiiier*.

## OF DIPHTHONGS.

A Diphthong is the meeting of two or more vowels in the same syllable, which convey to the ear a double sound, as, *Dieu*, God, *miel*, honey, in which we distinctly hear the sound of *i*, and the sound of *eu*, and *e* grave; but being pronounced rapidly, they form only one syllable.

Diphthongs ought not to be confounded with a coalition of two or more vowels, which produce only one single sound, as *vous*, you, *deux*, two, &c.: they are called. compound vowels. The following are sounded in French as follows:

1. *AO* is sounded like *a* in the words *paon*, *paonne*, peacock, peahen; and like *o* in the words *aoriste*, an aorist, and *taon*, a dun-fly. *Août*, August, is sounded like *oo* in *book*.

2. *EAI* and *AI* are sounded like an *é* acute in the preterite of all verbs of the first conjugation; thus, *je parlai*, I spoke, *je mangeai*, I ate, *je donnai*, I gave, *je changéai*,

I. changed, are pronounced as if they were written, *je parlé, je mangé, je donné, je changé*.

3. *AI, EAI, AIE*, in the middle or at the end of nouns, are sounded pretty much like an *è* with a grave accent; such are the words *maison*, house, *démangeaison*, itching, *haie*, hedge, *plaie*, wound.

4. *OI* is sounded in one emission of voice, but distinctly pronouncing the two sounds *o* and *è* grave in the words ending in *oi, oie, oir, oire*: such are the words *moi*, I, *emploi*, employ, *voie*, way, *vouloir*, to be willing, *oratoire*, oratory.

5. *IE* is sounded like an *i*, and *ue* like an *u*, in the different tenses and persons of the verbs which end in *ier* and *uer*, in the infinitive present: thus, *je prie*, I pray, *je prierai*, I shall pray, *je prierais*, I should pray, are pronounced, *je pri, je prirai, je prirais*; and *je remue*, I move, *je remuerai*, I shall move, *il remuerait*, he should move, are pronounced as if they were written, *je remu, je remurai, il remurait*.

6. *AU* and *EAU* at the end of a word, have the sound of *ô* long: thus, *couteau*, knife, *chapeau*, hat, are pronounced *coutô, chapô*.

7. *GEA, GEO, GEURE*, without an accent over *e*, are always sounded *ja, jo, jure*: thus, *George, il changea*, he changed, *nous jugeons*, we judge, *gageure*, wager, are pronounced as if they were written, *Jorge, chanja, jujons, gajure*.

8. *EU* is uniformly sounded more open than the English *u* in burden, excepting the words *gageure, mangeure*, and some parts of the verb *avoir*, to have, where it has the sound of *u*, as *eut, eu, eurent*, had.

## OF CONSONANTS.

### RULE I.

When the following consonants, *cc, ff, ll, mm, nn, pp, rr, ss, tt*, meet together, we most frequently pronounce but one: thus, *accabler*, to overwhelm, *offenser*, to offend, *aller*, to go, *commettre*, to commit, *nonnette*, a nun, *opposer*

to oppose, *arroser*, to water, *attirer*, to attract, are pronounced as if they were written, *acabler*, *ofenser*, *aler*, *cometre*, *noneie*, *oposer*, *aroser*, *atirer*.

*CC* when followed by *e* or *i*, and *dd*, are both sounded, as in the words, *accès*, *accident*, *addition*, *reddition*.

*LL*, *mm*, and *rr*, are both sounded, when they are preceded by an *i* at the beginning of a word; such are, *illégitime*, illegal, *immobile*, immovable, *irrésistible*, irresistible.

#### RULE II.

When either of these four consonants, *d*, *s*, *t*, *x*, is the final of a word, and the next begins with a vowel or *h* mute, without a *comma* or pause between them, it is usually sounded on the next word, as follows:

*D* is sounded as a *t*: thus, *grand ami*, great friend, *quand il viendra*, when he will come, *il attend à la porte*, he is waiting at the door, are pronounced *gran tami*, *quantil viendra*, *il atten tà la porte*.

*S* is sounded as a *z*: thus, *dès à présent*, from this moment, *j'avais été*, I had been, are pronounced *dè zà présent*, *j'avai zété*.

*T* is sounded on the next vowel, thus, *un savant homme*, a man of learning, *Je suis tout à vous*, I am quite yours, *s'il vient à la ville*, if he come to town, are pronounced *un savan thomme*, *je suis tou tà vous*, *s'il vien tà la ville*.

*X* is sounded like a *z*, thus, *six amis*, six friends, *heureux événement*, happy event, are pronounced *si zamis*, *heureu zévénement*.

*N* in the words *en*, thereof, *on*, they, when they precede a verb, in *bien*, well, *rien*, nothing, followed by an adjective or a participle; in adjectives, ending in *n*, placed before a substantive, and in the preposition *en*, in, is sounded on the next word, when it begins with a vowel: thus, *on apprend en étudiant avec méthode*, people learn, when studying methodically; *mon bon ami*, *vous n'avez rien appris*, my good friend, you have learned nothing; are pronounced as if they were written, *on napprend*, *en nétudiant avec méthode*, *mon bon nami*, *vous n'avez rien napprend*.

When the letter *n* is the final of a substantive, it is not sounded on the next word, though it begins with a vowel:

thus the following, *une intention excellente*, an excellent intention, *un pain exquis*, excellent bread, *un vin agréable*, an agreeable wine, are pronounced in two distinct words.

#### RULE III.

These consonants, *b, c, d, f, g, p, t*, are not sounded at the end of a word, when the next begins with a consonant, in *plomb*, lead, *accroc*, rent, *banc*, a bench, *broc*, a large jug, *clerc*, clerk, *cric*, a crane, to lift burthens, *croc*, a hook, *estomac*, stomach, *flanc*, flank, *jonc*, rush, *marc*, eight ounces, *tabac*, snuff, *il vainc*, he conquers, *nœud*, knot, *nid*, nest, *gond*, hinge, *muid*, a hogshead, *cerf*, a stag, *clef*, a key, *étouf*, a tennis-ball, *coing*, quince, *étang*, pond, *fau-bourg*, suburb, *hareng*, herring, *poing*, fist, *seing*, signature, *camp*, camp, *champ*, field, *drap*, cloth, *galop*, gallop, *loup*, wolf, *sirop*, syrup, *attrait*, charm, *fagot*, faggot, and *et*, and.

However, these six, *b, c, d, m, r, s*, are strongly sounded at the end of the names of heathen gods, and of proper names of persons, taken from ancient history: thus, *Job*, *Jacob*, *Isaac*, *David*, *Sem*, *César*, *Darius*, *Jupiter*, *Vénus*, *Marius*, are pronounced, *Jobe*, *Jacobe*, *Isaague*, &c. Also *s* at the end of Latin words, as *oremus*, *gratis*, *patres*, is sounded sharp.

---

#### Observations upon some Consonants.\*

##### C.

*C* has the sound of an *s* before *e* and *i*: thus, *ceci*, this, *cela*, that, are sounded *sesi*, *sela*. *C* has the sound of an *s* before *a*, *o*, and *u*, when it has a cedilla under it, and of a *k*, when not: thus, *façade*, front, *Français*, French, *reçu*, received, are pronounced *fassade*, *Fransais*, *ressu*; and *cabinet*, closet, *cochon*, pig, *cuisinier*, cook, are pronounced *kabinet*, *kochon*, *kuisinier*.

*C* has the sound of a *k* before *l*, *r*, or *t*: thus, *clair*, clear,

\* The letters not mentioned hereafter, are sounded as in the alphabet, except in the cases expressed in the three preceding rules.

*crayon*, pencil, *actuel*, actual, are pronounced *klair*, *krayon*, *aktuel*.

*C* has the sound of *g*, in *second*, and its derivatives; it is not sounded before *e* and *i*, when preceded by an *s* which belongs to the same syllable: thus, *science*, science, *scène*, scene, &c., are pronounced *sience*, *sène*.

*Ch* are generally sounded in French as *sh* are in English.

*Ch* followed by *a*, *o*, *u*, are sounded *ka*, *ko*, *ku*, in the words taken from the Greek or Hebrew: thus, *Achab*, *Chanaan*, *eucharistie*, are pronounced *Akab*, *Kanaan*, *eukaristie*.

## F.

*F* is pronounced like *v* in *neuf*, nine, when it is placed before a substantive or an adjective beginning with a vowel or *h* mute: thus, *neuf hommes*, nine men, *neuf enfans*, nine children, are pronounced *neu vhommes*, *neu venfans*.

## G.

*G* before *e* and *i* is sounded like *j*, but softer: thus, *genou*, knee, *gibier*, game, *mangeant*, eating, are pronounced, *jenou*, *jibier*, *manjant*; not *djenou*, *djibier*, *mandjant*.

*G* has a strong and harsh sound when it is followed by *a*, *o*, *u*, *l*, *r*, as in the words, *gâteau*, cake, *gosier*, gullet, *aigu*, acute, *glorieux*, glorious, *grandir*, to grow tall, &c.

*Gn* has a liquid sound resembling the last syllable of the English word *onion*. As this sound is attended with some difficulty, it must be heard from the master.

## H.

*H* is mute in the following words, their derivatives, and proper names, except *la Hollande*, *la Hongrie*, and a few more: it is aspirated in others.

habile,	able.	hameçon,	a fish-hook.
habit,	a dress.	harmonie,	harmony.
habiter,	to inhabit.	hebdomadaire,	weekly.
habitude,	habit.	héberger,	to harbour.
haleine,	breath.	hébété,	blockhead.



hécatombe,	<i>hecatomb.</i>	honnête,	<i>honest.</i>
hégire,	<i>hegira.</i>	honneur,	<i>honour.</i>
héliotrope,	<i>sun-flower.</i>	hôpital,	<i>hospital.</i>
hémisphère,	<i>hemisphere.</i>	horizon,	<i>horizon.</i>
hémistiche,	<i>hemistich.</i>	horloge,	<i>clock.</i>
hémorragie,	<i>hemorrhage.</i>	horoscope,	<i>horoscope.</i>
herbage,	<i>pasturage.</i>	horreur,	<i>horror.</i>
herbe,	<i>grass.</i>	horrible,	<i>horrid.</i>
hériter,	<i>to inherit.</i>	hospice,	<i>hospital.</i>
hérésie,	<i>heresy.</i>	hospitalier,	<i>hospitable.</i>
hermétique,	<i>alchemy.</i>	hostie,	<i>victim.</i>
hermine,	<i>ermine.</i>	hostilité,	<i>hostility.</i>
hermite,	<i>a hermit.</i>	hôte,	<i>landlord.</i>
héroïne,	<i>a heroine.</i>	hôtel,	<i>hotel.</i>
héroïque,	<i>heroic.</i>	hôtellerie,	<i>inn.</i>
héroïsme,	<i>heroism.</i>	hôtesse,	<i>landlady.</i>
hésiter,	<i>to hesitate.</i>	huile,	<i>oil.</i>
hétérodoxe,	<i>heterodox.</i>	huissier,	<i>usher.</i>
hétérogène,	<i>heterogenous.</i>	huitre,	<i>oyster.</i>
heure,	<i>hour.</i>	humain,	<i>human.</i>
heureux,	<i>happy.</i>	humble,	<i>humble.</i>
hexagone,	<i>hexagon.</i>	humecter,	<i>to moisten.</i>
hexamètre,	<i>hexameter.</i>	humeur,	<i>humour.</i>
hier,	<i>yesterday.</i>	humidité,	<i>dampness.</i>
hiéroglyphe,	<i>hieroglyphic.</i>	humilité,	<i>humility.</i>
hirondelle,	<i>swallow.</i>	hyacinthe,	<i>hyacinth.</i>
histoire,	<i>history.</i>	hydre,	<i>hydra.</i>
histrion,	<i>buffoon.</i>	hydromel,	<i>mead.</i>
hiver,	<i>winter.</i>	hydropisie,	<i>dropsy.</i>
holocauste,	<i>burnt-offering.</i>	hymen,	<i>hymen.</i>
homélie,	<i>a homily.</i>	hymne,	<i>hymn.</i>
homicide,	<i>homicide.</i>	hyperbole,	<i>hyperbole.</i>
hommage,	<i>homage.</i>	hypocrisie,	<i>hypocrisy.</i>
homme,	<i>man.</i>	hypothèque,	<i>mortgage.</i>
homogène,	<i>homogeneous.</i>	hypothèse,	<i>hypothesis.</i>

There are some more words in which *h* is mute ; but they are so seldom used, that I have thought proper to omit them ; and in the words where *h* is said to be aspirated, the breathing is scarcely audible, and never so strong as in *house*, and other English words.

## L.

*L* preceded by *i*, when doubled or final, is ordinarily liquid, and is sounded as in the English words, *brilliant*, *valiant*. That sound being rather difficult, must be heard from the master.

## M.

*M* is sounded as an *n*, when it is followed by *b*, or *p*: thus, *ambition*, *ambition*, *comparer*, to compare, are pronounced, *anbition*, *conparer*.

## P.

*P* is not sounded at all in *baptême*, baptism, *baptiser*, to baptize, *baptistaire*, certificate of baptism, *compte*, account, and its derivatives; in *corps*, body, *exempt*, exempt, *exempter*, to exempt, *prompt*, quick, and its derivatives; in *sculpter*, to carve, and its derivatives; in *sept*, seven, *septième*, seventh, *septièmement*, seventhly, *temps*, time, and in the persons of the verb *rompre*, to break, and its derivatives, in which it is followed by *s* or *t*, as *je romps*, I break, *il corrompt*, he corrupts.

*PH* are always sounded as an *f*: thus, *philippe*, *philosophie*, are pronounced, *filippe*, *filosofie*.

## Q.

*QU* have commonly the sound of a *k*: thus, *quatre*, four, *qualité*, quality, *marque*, mark, are pronounced, *katre*, *kakité*, *mark*.

But *qu* have the sound of *coua* in *aquatil*, aquatic, *équateur*, equator, *in-quarto*, a quarto, *quadrupède*, quadruped, and a few less common words.

## R.

*R* is not sounded at the end of verbs ending in *er*, unless when followed immediately by a vowel.

## S.

*S* has generally the sound of a *z* between two vowels, and after the syllable *tran*: thus, *oser*, to dare, *raisonner*, to reason, *transition*, transition, are pronounced, *ozer*, *raisonner*, *tranzition*, &c.

Some compounded words are excepted from this rule: as, *préséance*, *vraisemblable*.

In other circumstances, *s* has the hissing sound assigned to it in the alphabet, and particularly when it is double, or begins a word: as, *assiduité*, *superstition*, &c.

## T.

*TI* not preceded by *x*, or *s*, are sounded as *si*, 1. in all words ending in *tion*; 2. in adjectives ending in *tial*, *tiel*, *tient*, *tieux*, and their derivatives; 3. in the names of persons or people, ending in *tien*; 4. in all the tenses of the verbs *balbutier*, to stammer, and *initier*, to initiate; 5. in the following words ending in *tie*; *facétie*, pleasantry, *impéritie*, ignorance, *ineptie*, folly, *inertie*, idleness, *minutie*, trifle, *primatie*, primacy, *prophétie*, prophecy, and *suprématie*, supremacy.

## X.

*X* is sounded, 1. like *hs*, in the middle of words, and in words beginning with *ex*, followed by a consonant, as *maxime*, maxim, *extase*, ecstasy; 2. like *gz*, in words beginning with *ex*, followed by a vowel, as *exemple*, example, *exiger*, to exact; 3. like *k* in all words beginning with *exc* followed by *e* or *i*, as *excellent*, excellent, *exciter*, to excite.

---

*Remarks on the Pronunciation of some Words.*

1. The final *aient*, which is in the third person of the plural in the imperfect and conditional tenses of all verbs, is sounded like *ais* of the first person of the same tense, only a little longer: thus, *j'étais* and *ils étaient*, *je pensais*, and *ils pensaient*, are pronounced nearly alike.

2. The final *ent*, in the third person of the plural in the present and preterite of the indicative and subjunctive moods; thus, *je parle* and *ils parlent*, *je parlasse* and *ils parlissent*, are pronounced alike.

3. There are several substantives or adjectives which are spelt absolutely like the third person plural of some verbs. They are not to be mistaken, as in the substantives and adjectives the final *ent* is pronounced like *ant*, and in the verbs it is entirely mute. Such are the following:—

SUBST. OR ADJECT.		VERBS.	
adhérent,	<i>adherent.</i>	ils adhèrent,	<i>they adhere.</i>
affluent,	<i>flowing.</i>	ils affluent,	<i>they resort.</i>
content,	<i>content.</i>	ils content,	<i>they relate.</i>
différent,	<i>different.</i>	ils diffèrent,	<i>they differ.</i>
parent,	<i>relation.</i>	ils parent,	<i>they adorn.</i>
président,	<i>president.</i>	ils président,	<i>they preside.</i>
violent,	<i>violent.</i>	ils violent,	<i>they violate.</i>

4. Some other words spelt alike, differ by the pronunciation on account of the accent, or of *oi* having the two sounds *ai* and *oa*, according to many printed books. Such are:—

{ il bat,	<i>he beats.</i>	{ un François,	<i>a Frenchman.</i>
{ un bât,	<i>a pack-saddle.</i>	{ François,	<i>Francis.</i>
{ il boite,	<i>he limps.</i>	{ jeune,	<i>young.</i>
{ une boîte,	<i>a box.</i>	{ jeûne,	<i>fast.</i>
{ il chasse,	<i>he hunts.</i>	{ matin,	<i>morning.</i>
{ une chaise,	<i>a shrine.</i>	{ mâtin,	<i>mastiff-dog.</i>
{ un foret,	<i>a gimlet.</i>	{ paroisse,	<i>parish.</i>
{ une forêt,	<i>a forest.</i>	{ il paroisse,	<i>he may appear.</i>
{ pêcher,	<i>to sin.</i>	{ tache,	<i>a spot.</i>
{ pêcher,	<i>to fish.</i>	{ tâche,	<i>task.</i>
{ un pêcheur,	<i>a sinner.</i>	{ tacher,	<i>to spot.</i>
{ un pêcheur,	<i>a fisherman.</i>	{ tâcher,	<i>to endeavour.</i>

### *Remarks on the Pronunciation of Poetry.*

In poetry and in orations delivered in public, the finals of words are sounded much more strongly than in common conversation; and we may here establish it as a

nearly general rule, that the final consonants, except *n* nasal, are sounded on the next word, when it begins with a vowel or *h* mute.

The following diphthongs, *ia, ie, io, ian, ion*, are generally sounded with one emission of voice in prose, and with two in poetry: thus, for instance, *diadème, passion*, make two syllables in prose, and three in poetry.

In reading poetry we commonly pause a little in the middle of a long verse; and again at the end of every line, though there should be neither stop nor comma, provided the sense does not suffer by it.

## CHAPTER II.

### OF ORTHOGRAPHY.

ORTHOGRAPHY is the art of using proper letters and figures in writing the words of a language.

In this chapter I will speak, 1. of the proper spelling of words; 2. of the apostrophe; 3. of the hyphen, and cedilla; 4. of the parenthesis, quotations, diæresis, and abbreviations; 5. of punctuation; and 6. of the use of capital letters.

#### I. *Of the proper Spelling of French Words.*

Orthography in the French language consists in the proper spelling, 1. of substantives in the plural number; 2. of adjectives in the plural and feminine; 3. of verbs in their different tenses and persons. These objects are fully explained in the second part of this grammar. The plurals of substantives and adjectives are found in chapter the 2d, section the 4th; the feminine of adjectives is described in chapter the 3d, section the 1st; and in the conjugation of verbs will be found the different terminations of their tenses and persons.

I will here only make some observations which are conformable to the practice of good authors.

1. A simple or radical word has usually for its final that consonant which begins the next syllable of the word derived from it: thus, *plomb*, lead, has *b* for its final, *blanc*, white, *c*, *camp*, camp, *p*, &c. because the second syllable of *plomber*, to lead, begins with *b*, of *blancheur*, whiteness, with *c*, and of *camper*, to encamp, with *p*.

2. We usually write *am*, *em*, *im*, *om*, *um*, and pronounce *an*, *en*, *in*, *on*, *un*, in the words in which *m* is followed by *b*, *p*, or another *m*; such are *chambre*, room, *emporter*, to take away, *emmener*, to carry away, &c.

3. We write *dont* with a *t*, when it is a relative pronoun, and with a *c* when it is a conclusive conjunction: as, *les avantages dont nous jouissons viennent de Dieu*; *nous devons donc lui en rendre des actions de grâce*; the advantages which we enjoy come from God; we ought then to thank him for them.

4. The word *quand* has a *d* for its final, when it signifies *when*; as, *quand viendrez-vous?* *when* will you come? and a *t* when it signifies *as for*. Example: *quant à moi*, je le blâme; *as for* me, I blame him.

5. We double the consonants in most words derived from the *Latin*, when they are double in that language: thus, *approuver*, to approve, is spelt with *pp*, and *offrir*, to offer, with *ff*, because they come from the Latin verbs, *approbare*, *offerre*, in which these consonants are double.

6. The consonants *l*, *m*, *n*, *t*, are often doubled after *a* and *e*, when the syllable is to be sounded short or open, whether the words are derived from the Latin or not. Thus we write with a double consonant, *salle*, *chandelle*, *femme*, *canne*, *colonne*, *patte*, *assiette*, &c.

7. *P* is often double when it comes after *a* or *o*; as *apprendre*, to learn, *opprimer*, to oppress, &c.

## II. Of the Apostrophe.

The apostrophe is a kind of comma, formed thus ('), which is put between two letters, to denote the elision of one vowel before another.

*A* and *e* suffer elision in the monosyllables, *le*, *la*, *je*, *me*,

*te, se, de, ce, ne, que*, when the word following begins with a vowel or *h* mute: thus, we write, *l'oiseau*, bird, *l'amitié*, friendship, *l'homme*, man, *j'ai*, I have, &c. instead of *le oiseau, la amitié, le homme, je ai*; but *ce* and *je* joined to a verb preceding are not cut short: as, *est-ce à moi?* is it mine? *ai-je été avide?* was I greedy?

They do not suffer elision before *oui*, yes, *huit*, eight, *huitième*, eighth, *onze*, eleven, *onzième*, eleventh, nor after a verb in the imperative mood: thus we write *il n'y a que oui ou non*; there is nothing but yes or no; *de onze, il n'en resta que huit*; out of eleven, eight only remained: *dites-le à mon père*, tell it to my father; and not *il n'y a qu'oui ou non*; nor *d'onze, il n'en resta qu'huit*; *dites l'à mon père*.

*I* suffers elision in the conjunction *si*, if, before the personal pronouns *il*, he, or *ils*, they, but not before *elle*, she, nor any substantive whatever: thus we write, *s'il vient*, if he comes, with an apostrophe; and *si elle vient*, if she comes, without elision.

A vowel never suffers elision in a word of more than one syllable, unless it be a conjunction composed of *que*, as *quoiqu'il dise*, though he says; but the preposition *entre*, between, joined with the pronouns *eux, elles*, and some verbs, as, *entr'eux, entr'ouvrir*, also the adjective *grande*, when joined to some words, as, *grand mère*, suffer elision by the apostrophe.

### III. Of the Hyphen and Cedilla.

The *Hyphen* (in French, *le trait d'union*) is a line across thus (-), which is used—

1. After a verb followed by the pronouns, *je, moi, tu, toi, nous, vous, il, ils, elle, elles, le, la, les, lui, leur, y, en, ce, on*; as *parlé-je?* do I speak? *viens-tu?* dost thou come? *dis-moi*, tell me, *voyez-les*, see them, &c.

2. Between several words so joined, that they make but one; as, *avant-coureur*, forerunner, *arc-en-ciel*, rainbow, *cure-dent*, toothpick; and with *très* joined to an adjective, as, *très-haut*, very high.

3. Between the particles *ci*, or *là*, and the word which

precedes them; as, *celui-ci*, this, *celui-là*, that, *cet homme-ci*, this man, *cette femme-là*, that woman.

N. B. When a verb interrogatively used ends with a vowel, we put a *t*, with two *hyphens*, between it and the pronoun *il*, *elle*, or *on*: thus, *A-t-il*? Has he? *Parle-t-elle*? Does she speak? *Viendra-t-on*? Will they come? &c.

4. The *hyphen* is used at the end of a line, when there is no room to write the whole word. The syllables of a word are then divided, but not the letters of the same syllable: thus, for instance, if you cannot write the word *moment* in the same line, you may end it with *mo-*, and begin the other with *ment*; but you cannot end one line with *mom*, and begin the other with *ent*.

The *Cedilla* is a little comma, thus (*ç*), which is put under *ça*, *ço*, *çu*, when they must be sounded *sa*, *so*, *su*: thus, *menaçant*, threatening, *conçu*, conceived, *leçon*, lesson, with a cedilla, are pronounced as if they were written *menassa*, *consu*, *lesson*.

When *c* has the sound of an *s*, in the present of the infinitive, it has the same sound in all the tenses and persons of the same verb, and therefore must have a *cedilla* when it is followed by *a*, *o*, or *u*.

#### IV. Of Parentheses, Quotations, Diæreses, and Abbreviations.

1. A *Parenthesis* is made thus (*)*, and is used to enclose an occasional sentence, interposed in the middle of the principal one. The use of *parentheses* must not be too frequent.

2. A *Quotation* is a double inverted comma (*"*) put at the beginning, and at the end, or at the beginning of each line of a passage extracted from another author. Example: *L'avarice est un vice infâme; voici ce qu'en dit Bourdaloue: "l'avarice corrompt tout, elle renverse tout, elle domine les hommes, elle en fait des esclaves, et les abrutit."*

3. The *Diæresis* (in French, *le tréma*) is two dots, thus, (*¨*), put over the vowels *ë*, *ï*, or *ü*, when they are not of the same syllable as the vowel preceding; such are *Noël*, Christmas, *haï*, hated, *Saül*.



But the *tréma* is not applied to all cases of this sort, though it would serve as a guide to the pronunciation of

<i>aiguille</i> ,	needle,	<i>argua</i> ,	argued,
<i>aiguillon</i> ,	goad,	<i>Guise</i> ,	Guise,
<i>aiguiser</i> ,	to whet,	<i>Le Guide</i> ,	Guido,
<i>arguer</i> ,	to argue,		

as is the custom with *aiguë*, acute, *ciguë*, hemlock; and the finals of verbs; as, *constituëz*, *concluëz*, &c.

4. The *Abbreviations* the most used in French are, *Mr.* or *M.* for *Monsieur*. *Mde.* for *Madame*. *Mlle.* for *Mademoiselle*. *MM.* for *Messieurs*. *S. M.* for *Sa Majesté*. *S. M. Imp.* for *Sa Majesté Impériale*. *S. M. T. C.* for *Sa Majesté Très-Chrétienne*. *S. M. Cath.* for *Sa Majesté Catholique*. *S. M. Brit.* for *Sa Majesté Britannique*. *S. A. R.* for *Son Altesse Royale*. *S. A. E.* for *Son Altesse Electorale*. *J. C.* for *Jesus Christ*. *CP.* for *Constantinople*. *MS.* for *Manuscript*. *Sept. or 7bre.* for *Septembre*. *Oct. or 8bre.* for *Octobre*. *Nov. or 9bre.* for *Novembre*. *Dec. or 10bre.* for *Décembre*.

## V. Of Punctuation.

*Punctuation* is used in writing and printing, to distinguish one sentence from another, and to mark the different parts of a sentence.

The *stops* are of six sorts, of which the names and figures are as follow:—

- (,) une virgule.....a *comma*.
- (;) un point et une virgule .....a *semicolon*.
- (:) deux points .....a *colon*.
- (.) un point .....a *full stop*.
- (?) un point d'interrogation.....a *note of interrogation*.
- (!) un point d'admiration.....a *note of admiration*.

These *stops* are necessary to avoid obscurity, to prevent misconstructions, and for the better understanding of what we read or write.

A *Comma* is used, 1. within a sentence, to distinguish the things enumerated: as, *Les parties du discours sont, le substantif, l'adjectif, le pronom, le verbe, l'adverbe, &c.* the

parts of speech are, the substantive, the adjective, the pronoun, the verb, the adverb, &c. : 2. to distinguish the different parts of a sentence, when they require no subdivision into subordinate classes : as, *il est bien difficile, quelque philosophie qu'on ait, de souffrir long-temps sans se plaindre*; it is very difficult, whatever philosophy we may have, to suffer long without complaining.

The placing of full stops must determine whether the punctuation of a sentence can be *graduated*; and then the *comma* serves to subdivide the parts distinguished by a colon or semicolon, if they require it.

A *Semicolon* is used to distinguish the two parts of a sentence of a pretty good length, when the first has a complete sense of itself: as, *on est coupable quand on garde son argent sans vouloir s'en servir au besoin; c'est là ce qu'on appelle avarice*; men are guilty when they keep their money, without being willing to apply it to the supply of their wants; this is what is called avarice.

The *Colon* is used after part of a sentence which might stand alone, because it makes a complete sense of itself, but which is, however, followed by another, which explains or extends it: as, *il ne faut point se moquer des malheureux: peut-on se flatter de ne l'être jamais soi-même?* people ought not to laugh at the unfortunate: can they flatter themselves that they shall never be so themselves?

A *Full Stop* is used when the sentence is complete: as, *la charité est la première des vertus Chrétiennes*; charity is the first of Christian virtues.

A *Note of Interrogation* is used at the end of a sentence which expresses a question: as, *Mr. votre père est-il à la maison?* is your father at home?

A *Note of Admiration* is put at the end of a sentence which expresses admiration or surprise: as, *que vous êtes heureux!* how happy you are!

N. B. In reading a book, you must stop a little at every comma, a little longer at a semicolon, more at a colon than at a semicolon, and more at a full stop than at a colon.

VI. *Of Capital Letters.*

Capital or great letters are used,

1. At the beginning of every sentence in prose : they are, besides, used at the beginning of every verse in poetry.

Examples : —

<i>Prose.</i>	{ La vertu est aimable. Le vice est odieux.	
	{ <i>Virtue is amiable. Vice is odious.</i>	
<i>Poetry.</i>	{ Choisissez des amis de qui la piété	
	{ Vous soit un sûr garant de leur fidélité.	

2. All Christian and proper names of persons, kingdoms, provinces, towns, places, rivers, ships, mountains, and also the names of heathen gods and goddesses, are written with a capital letter : as, *Mars, Vénus, Cicéron, César, Londres, la Tamise, les Alpes, la France, l'Angleterre, la Bourgogne*, &c.

Observe that *je, I*, is not written with a capital in the body of a sentence, as in English.

## AN ALPHABETICAL SERIES

OF THE

*Kingdoms, Republics, Provinces, and principal Towns, which have a different Denomination in French and in English.*

The Letter *E* denotes an Empire, *K* a Kingdom, *P* a Province, *T* a Town, and *R* a Republic.

<i>English.</i>	<i>French.</i>	<i>English.</i>	<i>French.</i>
Africa,	<i>Afrique.</i>	Bavaria, P.	<i>Bavière.</i>
America,	<i>Amérique.</i>	Bern, T.	<i>Berne.</i>
Antioch, T.	<i>Antioche.</i>	Bohemia, K.	<i>Bohême.</i>
Antwerp, T.	<i>Anvers.</i>	Bologna, T.	<i>Bologne.</i>
Apulia, P.	<i>la Pouille.</i>	Brasil, P.	<i>Brésil.</i>
Athens, T.	<i>Athènes.</i>	Bremen, T.	<i>Brême.</i>
Attica, P.	<i>Attique.</i>	Brittany, P.	<i>Bretagne.</i>
Austria, P.	<i>Autriche.</i>	Britain, K.	<i>Bretagne.</i>
Babylon, T.	<i>Babylone.</i>	Brussels, T.	<i>Bruxelles.</i>
Basil, T.	<i>Bâle.</i>	Burgundy, P.	<i>Bourgogne.</i>

<i>English.</i>	<i>French.</i>	<i>English.</i>	<i>French.</i>
Cairo, T.	<i>le Caire.</i>	Italy,	<i>Italie.</i>
Calabria, P.	<i>Calabre.</i>	Lacedæmon, T.	<i>Lacédémone.</i>
Canterbury, T.	<i>Cantorbery.</i>	Lancaster, T.	<i>Lancastre.</i>
Cappadocia, P.	<i>Cappadoce.</i>	Leghorn, T.	<i>Livourne.</i>
Calcedonia, T.	<i>Calcédoine.</i>	Leyden, T.	<i>Leyde.</i>
Cologne, T.	<i>Cologne.</i>	Lisbon, T.	<i>Lisbonne.</i>
Copenhagen, T.	<i>Copenhague.</i>	Lisle, T.	<i>Lille</i>
Corinth, T.	<i>Corinthe.</i>	Lombardy, P.	<i>Lombardie.</i>
Cornwall, P.	<i>Cornouailles.</i>	London, T.	<i>Londres.</i>
Corsica,	<i>Corse.</i>	Lorrain, P.	<i>Lorraine.</i>
Corunna, T.	<i>Corogne.</i>	Lucca, R.	<i>Luques.</i>
Cracow, T.	<i>Cracovie.</i>	Lyons, T.	<i>Lyon.</i>
Cyprus,	<i>Cypre.</i>	Mantua, T.	<i>Mantoue.</i>
Damascus, T.	<i>Damas.</i>	Mecca, T.	<i>La Mècque.</i>
Dauphiny, P.	<i>Dauphiné.</i>	Mechlin, T.	<i>Malines.</i>
Denmark, K.	<i>Danemark.</i>	Mentz, T.	<i>Mayence.</i>
Dover, T.	<i>Douvres.</i>	Mexico, P.	<i>Mexique.</i>
Dunkirk, T.	<i>Dunkerque.</i>	Miletus, T.	<i>Milet.</i>
Edinburgh, T.	<i>Edimbourg.</i>	Minorca,	<i>Minorque.</i>
Egypt, K.	<i>Egypte.</i>	Mogul, E.	<i>Mogol.</i>
England, K.	<i>Angleterre.</i>	Morocco, E.	<i>Maroc.</i>
Ephesus, T.	<i>Ephèse.</i>	Muscovy, E.	<i>Moscovie.</i>
Epidaurus, T.	<i>Epidaure.</i>	Nantz, T.	<i>Nantes.</i>
Epirus, K.	<i>Épire.</i>	Nimeguen, T.	<i>Nimègue.</i>
Flanders, P.	<i>Flandres.</i>	Nineveh, T.	<i>Ninive.</i>
Frankfort, T.	<i>Francfort.</i>	Normandy, P.	<i>Normandie.</i>
Gascony, P.	<i>Gascogne.</i>	Norway, K.	<i>Norvège.</i>
Geneva, R.	<i>Genève.</i>	Odenburg, T.	<i>Odembourg.</i>
Genoa, R.	<i>Gènes.</i>	Ostend, T.	<i>Ostende.</i>
Germany, E.	<i>Allemagne.</i>	Otranto, T.	<i>Otrante.</i>
Ghent, T.	<i>Gand.</i>	Padua, T.	<i>Padoue.</i>
Greece,	<i>Grèce.</i>	Palermo, T.	<i>Palerme.</i>
Guelderland, P.	<i>Gueldres.</i>	Persia, K.	<i>Perse.</i>
Hague, T.	<i>La Haie.</i>	Pharsalia, T.	<i>Pharsale.</i>
Hanover, P.	<i>Hanovre.</i>	Picardy, P.	<i>Picardie.</i>
Holland, R.	<i>Hollande.</i>	Poland, K.	<i>Pologne.</i>
Hungary, K.	<i>Hongrie.</i>	Prussia, K.	<i>Prusse.</i>
Japan, E.	<i>Japon.</i>	Ratisbon, T.	<i>Ratisbonne.</i>
Iceland,	<i>Islande.</i>	Saguntum, T.	<i>Sagonte.</i>
Ireland, K.	<i>Irlande.</i>	Sardinia, K.	<i>Sardaigne.</i>

<i>English.</i>	<i>French.</i>	<i>English.</i>	<i>French.</i>
Sardis, T.	<i>Sardes.</i>	Thessaly, P.	<i>Thessalie</i>
Savoy,	<i>Savoie.</i>	Toledo, T.	<i>Tolède.</i>
Saxony, P.	<i>Saxe.</i>	Triers, T.	<i>Trèves.</i>
Scotland, K.	<i>Ecosse.</i>	Troy, T.	<i>Troye.</i>
Sicily, K.	<i>Sicile.</i>	Turkey, E.	<i>Turquie.</i>
Sluys, T.	<i>L'Ecluse.</i>	Tuscany,	<i>Toscane.</i>
Spain, K.	<i>Espagne.</i>	Valencia, T.	<i>Valence.</i>
Sparta, T.	<i>Sparte.</i>	Venice, R.	<i>Venise.</i>
Suabia, P.	<i>Souabe.</i>	Vicenza, T.	<i>Vicence.</i>
Sweden, K.	<i>Suède.</i>	Wales, P.	<i>Galles.</i>
Tarsus, T.	<i>Tarse.</i>	Warsaw, T.	<i>Varsovie.</i>
Thebaid, P.	<i>Thébaïde.</i>	York, T.	<i>Yorch.</i>

## OBSERVATIONS.

. All other names of kingdoms, provinces, and towns, ending in *a* English, become French by changing *a* into *e* mute. Examples: —

*English:* Asia, Arabia, Cesarea, Carolina, &c.

*French:* *Asie, Arabie, Césarée, Caroline, &c.*

2. The other names of towns, ending in *burg*, become French by changing *burg* into *bourg*, thus: —

*English:* Ausburg, Friburgh, Hamburg, Brandeburg, &c.

*French:* *Ausbourg, Fribourg, Hambourg, Brandebourg, &c.*

3. Most of the other names not here specified are the same in both languages.

## A METHOD

*To learn the French Denomination of Heathen Gods, and of Names taken from the Greek or Latin: and in what they differ from the English.*

1. The proper names of men ending in English in *a*, are the same in both languages; thus we say,

*English:* Agrippa, Dolabella, Nerva, Caligula, &c.

*French:* *Agrippa, Dolabella, Nerva, Caligula, &c.*

2. The proper names of women and goddesses ending

in *a*, become French by changing the final *a* into *e* mute.

Examples : —

*English* : Julia, Cleopatra, Octavia, Agrippina, Diana, &c.

*French* : *Julie, Cléopâtre, Octavie, Agrippine, Diane, &c.*

3. The greater number of proper names ending in English in *as*, become French by changing *as* into *e* mute.

Examples : —

*English* : Mecenas, Eneas, Pythagoras, &c.

*French* : *Mécène, Enée, Pythagore, &c.*

4. The proper names ending in English in *es*, become French by changing that final into *e* mute. Examples : —

*English* : Demosthenes, Ulysses, Socrates, &c.

*French* : *Démosthène, Ulysse, Socrate, &c.*

5. The proper names ending in *o* in English, become French by changing *o* into *on*. Examples : —

*English* : Dido, Cicero, Cato, Plato, Scipio, &c.

*French* : *Didon, Cicéron, Caton, Platon, Scipion, &c.*

6. The proper names ending in English in *us* or *ius*, are the same in French when they are of two syllables only

Examples : —

*English* : Brutus, Cyrus, Cræsus, Venus, &c.

*French* : *Brutus, Cyrus, Cræsus, Vénus, &c.*

7. Most proper names ending in *us*, *eus*, or *ius*, become French by changing that final into *e* mute, when they are composed of three or more syllables. Examples : —

*English* : Camillus, Orpheus, Esculapius, &c.

*French* : *Camille, Orphée, Esculape, &c.*

8. Most proper names ending in English in *is* or *al*, are the same in both languages. Examples : —

*English* : Sesostris, Juvenal, Annibal, Asdrubal, &c.

*French* : *Sésostrie, Juvénal, Annibal, Asdrubal, &c.*

9. Most proper names ending in English in *ander*, become French by changing *ander* into *andre* : as,

*English* : Alexander, Leander, Lysander, &c.

*French* : *Alexandre, Léandre, Lysandre, &c.*

## A METHOD

*For learning with ease several Thousand French Words.*

## RULE I.

Most nouns, substantive and adjective, which end in English with any of the seven following syllables, *ble, ce, de, ge, ne, ion, and ent*, are the same in French as in English. Thus we say in both languages, but without accents in English :

1. *ble*, Fable, visible, incapable, noble, sensible, &c.
2. *ce*, Province, distance, vice, évidence, force, &c.
3. *de*, Servitude, habitude, prélude, &c.
4. *ge*, Charge, passage, siège, fébrifuge, &c.
5. *ne*, Machine, scène, famine, doctrine, &c.
6. *ion*, Nation, opinion, union, éducation, religion, &c.
7. *ent*, Prudent, diligent, patient, content, &c.

## RULE II.

Most English words ending in any of the seven following syllables, *ary, ory, cy, ty, ous, our, and or*, become French by changing the final, thus : —

1. *ary*, into *aire*, as military, *militaire*, &c.
2. *ory*, ... *oire*, as glory, *gloire*, &c.
3. *cy*, ... *ce*, as clemency, *clémence*, &c.
4. *ty*, ... *té*, as humanity, *humanité*, &c.
5. *ous*, ... *eux*, as dangerous, *dangereux*, &c.
6. *our*, ... *eur*, as favour, *faveur*, &c.
7. *or*, ... *eur*, as doctor, *docteur*, &c.

## RULE III.

Most English verbs ending in *ise, use, ute*, become French by adding an *r* to the final, thus : to

1. *ise*, add *r*, as baptise, realise, *baptiser, réaliser*, &c.
2. *use*, ... *r*, as abuse, excuse, *abuser, excuser*, &c.
3. *ute*, ... *r*, as dispute, refute, *disputer, réfuter*, &c.

## RULE IV.

Most English verbs ending in *ate, fy, or ish*, become French by changing the final, as follows : —

## ENGLISH.

## FRENCH.

1. ate, into *er*, as accelerate, abrogate, *accélérer, abroger*, &c.
2. fy, ... *fier*, as justify, liquefy, *justifier, liquéfier*, &c.
3. ish, ... *ir*, as abolish, accomplish, *abolir, accomplir*, &c.

Note 1. Most nouns which end in *y*, except those mentioned in Rule 2, become French by changing that final into *ie*, and have the plural alike in both languages, thus:

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

*English*: folly, tragedy, fury; follies, tragedies, furies.

*French*: *folie, tragédie, furie*; *folies, tragédies, furies*.

Note 2. The verbs ending in *bute* and *tute* are excepted from Rule 3, and become French by changing *ute* into *uer*: as, to attribute, *attribuer*, to substitute, *substituer*.

Note 3. There are some exceptions to these four rules, particularly to the words ending in *ty*; but they are very few, and a great advantage will certainly be derived from learning these finals by heart.



## PART II.

### OF THE NINE PARTS OF SPEECH.

THERE are in French, as in other languages, nine parts of speech, called *article*, *substantive*, *adjective*\*, *pronoun*, *verb*, *adverb*, *preposition*, *conjunction*, and *interjection* : the first five are declinable, and the four others indeclinable.

---

---

### CHAP. I.

#### OF THE ARTICLE.

The article is a little word, placed before a noun\*, to specify the extent of the signification in which it is taken. There are in French three sorts of articles : *viz.*

1. definite : *le*, m.    *la*, f.    *les*, pl. *the*.
2. indefinite : *un*, m.    *une*, f.    no pl. *a* or *an*.
3. partitive : *du*, m.    *de la*, f.    *des*, pl. *some* or *any*.

---

---

### CHAP. II.

#### OF SUBSTANTIVES.

This chapter is divided into four sections : *the first* explains the nature and the different kinds of substantives ; *the second* speaks of their cases and declension ; *the third* treats of their gender, and shows how to distinguish the masculine from the feminine ; *the fourth* teaches the plural of nouns, and its formation from the singular number.

\* The word noun is applied to both substantives and adjectives, but more commonly to the former.

## SECTION THE FIRST.

*Of the Nature and Kinds of Substantives.*

*A Substantive* is a word which expresses the name of a person, or an object, material, spiritual, or ideal: such as *homme*, man; *femme*, woman; *cheval*, horse; *maison*, house; *vertu*, virtue, &c.

There are three sorts of substantives: viz *proper*, *common*, and *collective*.

*The substantive proper* expresses some individual person or thing which cannot be divided into species: such are, *Pierre*, Peter; *Londres*, London; *Caton*, Cato; *Paris*, Paris, &c.

*The substantive common* comprehends all objects of the same kind: such are, *royaume*, kingdom; *rivière*, river; *soldat*, soldier.

*The substantive collective* is a word which presents to the mind a collection of persons or things. The nouns collective are *general* or *partitive*.

*A noun collective general* represents the whole object: such are, *la nation*, the nation; *l'armée*, the army; *la flotte*, the fleet; *le parlement*, the parliament.

*A noun collective partitive* represents only a part of the whole object; such are, *un grand nombre*, a great number; *une foule*, a crowd; *la plupart*, the most part.

N. B. See the use of substantives, Rules 21 and following, in the Syntax.

## SECTION THE SECOND.

*Of the Declension of Nouns.*

As the French nouns do not change their termination in the same number, many grammarians pretend, that there are no *cases* in our tongue; but I think it is more simple and natural to give the same names, in all languages, to the same relation of things; and the rather because many of those who learn French, learn at the same time Latin or Greek. Although the French nouns have no changes

of termination to mark a variety of state in the object, it must be allowed that the pronouns have a nominative, accusative, and dative case; and a substitute for a genitive in the indeclinable word *en*. The four states of the noun answering to these cases will form our declension.

*N.* denotes the nominative, *G.* the genitive, *D.* the dative, *Ac.* the accusative.

## DECLENSION

## OF NOUNS WITH THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

1. ' *A Noun Masculine.*

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

N. Ac.	le roi, <i>the king.</i>	les rois, <i>the kings.</i>
G.	du roi, <i>of or from the king.</i>	des rois, <i>of or from the.</i>
D.	au roi, <i>to the king.</i>	aux rois, <i>to the kings.</i>

2. *A Noun Feminine.*

N. Ac.	la reine, <i>the queen.</i>	les reines, <i>the queens.</i>
G.	de la reine, <i>of or from the.</i>	des reines, <i>of or from the.</i>
D.	à la reine, <i>to the queen.</i>	aux reines, <i>to the queens.</i>

3. *A Noun beginning with a Vowel.*

N. Ac.	l'ami, <i>the friend.</i>	les amis, <i>the friends.</i>
G.	de l'ami, <i>of or from the.</i>	des amis, <i>of or from the.</i>
D.	à l'ami, <i>to the friend.</i>	aux amis, <i>to the friends.</i>

4. *A Noun beginning with an h mute.*

N. Ac.	l'homme, <i>the man,</i>	les hommes, <i>the men.</i>
G.	de l'homme, <i>of or from the.</i>	des hommes, <i>of or from.</i>
D.	à l'homme, <i>to the man.</i>	aux hommes, <i>to the men.</i>

5. *A Noun preceded by tout.*

## SINGULAR.

N. Ac.	tout le monde, <i>every body.</i>
G.	de tout le monde, <i>of or from every body.</i>
D.	à tout le monde, <i>to every body.</i>

## PLURAL.

- N. Ac. tous les enfans, *all the children.*  
 G. de tous les enfans, *of or from all the children.*  
 D. à tous les enfans, *to all the children.*

## DECLENSION

## OF NOUNS WITH THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

## MASCULINE.

## FEMININE.

- N. Ac. un jardin, *a garden.* une maison, *a house.*  
 G. d'un jardin, *of or from a.* d'une maison, *of or from.*  
 D. à un jardin, *to a garden.* à une maison, *to a house.*

## DECLENSION

## OF NOUNS WITH THE PARTITIVE ARTICLE.

## SINGULAR, MASC.

## PLURAL, MASC. ,

- N. Ac. du pain, *some bread.* des poissons, *fishes.*  
 D. à du pain, *to some bread.* à des poissons, *to fishes.*

## SINGULAR FEM.

## PLURAL, FEM.

- N. Ac. de la viande, *some meat.* des oranges, *oranges.*  
 D. à de la viande, *to some meat.* à des oranges, *to oranges.*

## DECLENSION OF PROPER NAMES.

- N. Ac. Londres, *London.* Paris, *Paris.*  
 G. de Londres, *of or from.* de Paris, *of or from.*  
 D. à Londres, *to London.* à Paris, *to Paris.*
- N. Ac. Pierre, *Peter.* Annibal, *Annibal.*  
 G. de Pierre, *of or from Peter.* d'Annibal, *of or from.*  
 D. à Pierre, *to Peter.* à Annibal, *to Annibal.*

Observe, 1. *Du* and *des*, which are in the genitive, are used by a contraction for *de le*, *de les*; and *au*, *aux*, for *à le*, *à les*, which contraction does not take place when a noun is preceded by *tout*, as above.

Observe, 2. That all the nouns which begin with a vowel or *h* mute, take *l'* in the nominative or accusative, *de l'* in the genitive, and *à l'* in the dative, whether they be masculine or feminine, in order to avoid the hard sound

which would result from the meeting of two vowels: thus, we say, *l'âme*, the soul, instead of *la âme*, *l'ambition*, the ambition, instead of *la ambition*, &c.

### SECTION THE THIRD.

*How to distinguish when a Noun is masculine or feminine.*

The distinction of genders in substantives originates in the distinction of sexes; by imitation the masculine or feminine gender have been given to all substantives, though they have no reference to any sex: thus, for instance, *pain*, bread, *couteau*, knife, *jardin*, garden, &c. are masculine, and *cuiller*, a spoon, *fourchette*, a fork, *table*, a table, &c. are feminine.

A list of substantives that have two forms for the diversity of the sexes, will be found after the Rules for forming the feminine of adjectives.

#### A GENERAL RULE.

The nouns which have reference to males are of the masculine gender, and those which have reference to females are feminine. Thus, *un homme*, a man; *un cheval*, a horse, are masculine: and *une femme*, a woman; *une jument*, a mare, are feminine.

The gender of other nouns is known by their termination, as follows:—

N. B. *Fishes, reptiles, and insects, both male and female, are known in French by one gender only, which is generally distinguished by their termination, as are the inanimate objects, of which hereafter; many birds and wild beasts are also of one gender only.*

### MASCULINE TERMINATIONS.

#### RULE I.

Nouns which end in a consonant are of the masculine gender when they have any other final than *x*, *eur*, and *ion*, to which must be added, *son*, preceded by a vowel, of which we shall speak hereafter.

This rule, which comprehends many thousand words, has no other exceptions than the thirty-one following words : —

la boisson,	<i>drinking.</i>	une leçon,	<i>a lesson.</i>
une brebis,	<i>a sheep.</i>	la main,	<i>the hand.</i>
de la chair,	<i>flesh.</i>	la maman,	<i>mamma.</i>
une chanson,	<i>a song.</i>	la mer,	<i>the sea.</i>
une clef,	<i>a key.</i>	la mort,	<i>death.</i>
la cour,	<i>the court.</i>	la moisson,	<i>harvest.</i>
une cuiller,	<i>a spoon.</i>	la mousson,	<i>the monsoon.</i>
la cuisson,	<i>baking.</i>	la nef,	{ <i>the body of the</i> <i>church.</i>
une dent,	<i>a tooth.</i>	la nuit,	
une dot,	<i>a portion.</i>	la part,	<i>the part.</i>
la façon,	<i>making.</i>	la rançon,	<i>the ransom.</i>
la faim,	<i>hunger.</i>	la soif,	<i>thirst.</i>
la fin,	<i>the end.</i>	une souris,	<i>a mouse,</i>
une fois,	<i>once.</i>	une tour,	<i>a tower,</i>
une forêt,	<i>a forest.</i>	une vis,	<i>a screw.</i>
la hart,	<i>halter.</i>		

*Rule 2* RULE II.

All trees, and also all adjectives and verbs substantively used, are masculine, whatever be their termination : such are, for trees, *un houx*, a holy-oak ; *un chêne*, an oak ; *un hêtre*, a beech : for adjectives, *un impie*, an impious man ; *un sot*, a fool ; *un brave*, a brave man : and for verbs, *le boire*, the drinking ; *le manger*, the eating, &c.

RULE III.

The names of days, months, seasons, shrubs, towns, colours, metals, mountains, and winds, are masculine, except *l'automne*, the autumn, of both genders, *les Alpes*, *les Pyrénées*, *les Cordillères*.

*Star* RULE IV.

Nouns which end in the vowels *a*, *i*, *o*, *u*, are masculine ; and also those which end in *é* accented, and not preceded by a *t* : as, *un opéra*, an opera ; *un oubli*, oblivion ; *un chapeau*, a hat ; *le thé*, tea ; *un pré*, a meadow.

These four : *la foi*, faith ; *la fourmi*, the ant ; *la loi*, the law ; *la merci*, mercy ; are excepted from the rule.

These five: *de belle eau*, fine water; *de la glu*, bird-lim; *la peau*, the skin; *une tribu*, a tribe; *la vertu*, virtue; a excepted from the rule. The finals, *a*, *o*, *é*, have no exceptions.

RULE V.

Nouns ending in any of the following terminations, *age*, *é*, *u*, *oire*, *acle*, *aume*, *éme*, *isme*, and *ôme*, are masculine: as, *un paysage*, a landscape; *un piège*, a snare; *délu*, the flood, &c.

*La gloire*, glory; *une écriture*, an inkstand; *l'histoire*, the history; *une racloire*, a strickle; *la machoire*, the jaw; *la nageoire*, the fin; *une passoire*, a colander; *la victoire*, victory; are excepted from the rule.

The word *crème*, cream, is excepted from the rule.

The words *page*, page, *rage*, rage, *cage*, cage, *image*, image, are excepted from the rule.

## FEMININE TERMINATIONS.

RULE I.

All nouns which end in *x*, *eur*, *ion*, and also in *son*, when *s* is preceded by a vowel, are feminine: as, *la paix*, peace; *la chaleur*, heat; *la nation*, the nation; *la maison*, the house.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. *Le choix*, choice, *un crucifix*, a crucifix, *le flux*, tide, *flux*, *le reflux*, the reflux, *le prix*, the price.

2. *L'auteur*, the author, *le bonheur*, happiness, *le cœur*, the heart, *le déshonneur*, dishonour, *l'équateur*, the equator, *l'honneur*, honour, *le labeur*, labour, *le malheur*, misfortune, *les pleurs*, tears.

3. *Le bastion*, the bastion, *un champion*, a champion, *le croupion*, a rump, *un lampion*, a lamp, *un million*, a million, *un scorpion*, a scorpion, *le septentrion*, the north.

4. *Le blazon*, heraldry, *un gazon*, a green turf, *l'horizon*, the horizon, *un oison*, a gosling, *un peson*, a steelyard, *poison*, the poison, *un tison*, a brand.

## RULE II.

All nouns which end in *té, tié, ée, ie, ue, ace, ade, ude, ance, ence, anse, ense, iere, ure, lle, mme, nne, rre, sse, tte*, are feminine. Examples: *la charité*, charity, *la pensée*, thought, *la vie*, life, *la vue*, sight, *la glace*, ice, &c.

## EXCEPTIONS TO THESE FINALS.

*Un arrêté*, a resolution, *un athée*, an atheist, *un augure*, an augury, *du beurre*, butter, *un carrosse*, a coach, *un chèvrefeuille*, a honeysuckle, *un cimetière*, a churchyard, *un codicille*, a codicil, *un colosse*, a colossus, *un comité*, a committee, *un comté*, a county, *le côté*, the side, *le derrière*, the back, *le foie*, the liver, *un espace*, a space, *le génie*, genius, *un grade*, a degree, *un incendie*, a conflagration, *un intervalle*, an interval, *un libelle*, a libel, *un mausolée*, a mausoleum, *le mercure*, mercury, *un murmure*, a murmur, *un parterre*, a flower-garden, *un parjure*, perjury, *un parapluie*, an umbrella, *un pâté*, a pie, *le prélude*, the prelude, *le silence*, silence, *le tonnerre*, thunder, *le traité*, treaty, *un trophée*, a trophy.



## RULE III.

All nouns ending in *e* mute are feminine, when they have any other final than those mentioned in rule the fifth of the masculine terminations. Examples: *la colère*, anger, *la face*, the face, *la racine*, the root, *la bouche*, the mouth, *la jambe*, the leg, &c.

## EXCEPTIONS.

	<i>A.</i>	ange,	<i>angel.</i>
		angle,	<i>angle.</i>
Abîme,	<i>abyss.</i>	antidote	<i>antidote.</i>
acte,	<i>act.</i>	antre,	<i>a cave.</i>
adverbe	<i>an adverb.</i>	arbitre,	<i>umpire.</i>
adultère,	<i>adultery.</i>	arbre,	<i>a tree.</i>
aigle,	<i>eagle.</i>	arbuste,	<i>shrub.</i>
albâtre,	<i>alabaster.</i>	artifice,	<i>artifice.</i>
ambre,	<i>amber.</i>	asthme,	<i>asthma.</i>



astre,  
asile,  
auspice,  
axe,

*star.*  
*sanctuary.*  
*auspice.*  
*axis.*

## B.

Bénéfice,  
blâme,  
bitume,  
branle,  
bronze,  
buste,

*a living.*  
*blame.*  
*bitumen.*  
*motion.*  
*cast copper.*  
*bust.*

## C.

Câble,  
cadavre,  
cadre,  
calibre,  
calice,  
calme,  
camphre,  
cantique,  
caprice,  
caractère,  
casque,  
catalogue,  
cauterre,  
centre,  
cercle,  
chanvre,  
chapitre,  
chiffre,  
cidre,  
cierge,  
cigne,  
cilice,  
cylindre,  
cimeterre,  
clistère,

*cable.*  
*a corpse.*  
*frame.*  
*size.*  
*chalice.*  
*calm.*  
*camphire.*  
*spiritual song.*  
*whim.*  
*character.*  
*a helmet.*  
*a catalogue.*  
*a cautery.*  
*centre.*  
*circle.*  
*hemp.*  
*a chapter.*  
*a cypher.*  
*cyder.*  
*wax taper.*  
*a swan.*  
*hair-cloth.*  
*cylinder.*  
*scimitar.*  
*a elyster.*

cloître,  
code,  
coffre,  
colloque,  
commerce,  
concile,  
concombre,  
cône,  
congre,  
compte,  
conte,  
contraste,  
coude,  
couvercle,  
crépuscule,  
crêpe,  
crible,  
crime,  
cube,  
cuivre,  
culte,

*cloister.*  
*code.*  
*a trunk.*  
*a conference.*  
*trade.*  
*council.*  
*cucumber.*  
*a cone.*  
*a conger.*  
*an account,*  
*tale.*  
*contrast.*  
*elbow.*  
*lid.*  
*twilight.*  
*a crape.*  
*sieve.*  
*crime.*  
*cube.*  
*copper.*  
*worship.*

## D.

Décompte,  
dédale,  
délire,  
démérite,  
désastre,  
désordre,  
diable,  
dialogue,  
diamètre,  
dilemme,  
diocèse,  
divorce,  
dogme,  
domaine,  
domicile,  
doute,

*discounting.*  
*maze.*  
*delirium.*  
*demerit.*  
*disaster.*  
*disorder.*  
*devil.*  
*dialogue.*  
*diameter.*  
*dilemma.*  
*diocese.*  
*divorce.*  
*dogma.*  
*domain.*  
*abode.*  
*doubt.*

	E.	homicide, hôte,	<i>a murder.</i> <i>landlord.</i>
Ebène,	<i>ebony.</i>		
échange,	<i>exchange.</i>		
édifice,	<i>edifice.</i>		I.
éloge,	<i>praise.</i>	Jeûne,	<i>fast.</i>
émétique,	<i>emetic.</i>	insecte,	<i>insect.</i>
empire,	<i>empire.</i>	interrègne,	<i>interregnum.</i>
emplâtre,	<i>plaster.</i>	isthme,	<i>isthmus.</i>
épisode,	<i>episode.</i>		
équilibre,	<i>equilibrium.</i>		L.
équinoxe,	<i>equinox.</i>		
esclandre,	<i>a bustle.</i>	Labyrinthe,	<i>labyrinth.</i>
escompte,	<i>discount.</i>	légume,	<i>pulse.</i>
évangile,	<i>gospel.</i>	lierre,	<i>ivy.</i>
exercice,	<i>exercise.</i>	lièvre,	<i>hare.</i>
exode,	<i>exodus.</i>	linge,	<i>linen.</i>
		lucre,	<i>profit.</i>
		lustre,	<i>lustre.</i>
		luxe,	<i>luxury.</i>
	F.		
Faîte,	<i>top.</i>		
faute,	<i>ostentation.</i>		
fiacre,	<i>hackney-coach.</i>		M.
flegme,	<i>phlegm.</i>	Mâle,	<i>male.</i>
fleuve,	<i>river.</i>	maléfice,	<i>witchcraft.</i>
frontispice,	<i>frontispiece.</i>	manifeste,	<i>manifesto.</i>
		marbre,	<i>marble.</i>
		martyre,	<i>martyrdom.</i>
	G.	masque,	<i>a mask.</i>
Genièvre,	<i>juniper.</i>	massacre,	<i>a slaughter.</i>
genre,	<i>gender.</i>	membre,	<i>member.</i>
germe,	<i>bud.</i>	mélange,	<i>mixture.</i>
geste,	<i>gesture.</i>	mensonge,	<i>a lie.</i>
glaive,	<i>a sword.</i>	mérite,	<i>merit.</i>
globe,	<i>a globe.</i>	merle,	<i>a blackbird.</i>
globule,	<i>globule.</i>	météore,	<i>meteor.</i>
gouffre,	<i>whirlpool.</i>	meuble,	<i>furniture.</i>
		meurtre,	<i>murder.</i>
		ministère,	<i>ministry.</i>
	H.	mobile,	<i>motive.</i>
Havre,	<i>haven.</i>	modèle,	<i>model.</i>

monarque,	<i>monarch.</i>	prétexte,	<i>a pretence.</i>
monde,	<i>the world.</i>	principe,	<i>a principle.</i>
monastère,	<i>monastery.</i>	prodige,	<i>prodigy.</i>
monopole,	<i>monopoly.</i>	proverbe,	<i>proverb.</i>
monstre,	<i>monster.</i>	pupitre,	<i>a desk.</i>
mystère,	<i>mystery.</i>		
			R.
	N.	Régime,	<i>a diet.</i>
Navire,	<i>ship.</i>	règne,	<i>reign.</i>
négoce,	<i>trade.</i>	remède,	<i>remedy.</i>
nombre,	<i>number.</i>	reptile,	<i>a reptile.</i>
		reproche,	<i>reproach.</i>
	O.	reste,	<i>rest.</i>
Ongle,	<i>nail.</i>	rêve,	<i>a dream.</i>
opprobre,	<i>reproach.</i>	rhume,	<i>a rheum.</i>
ordre,	<i>order.</i>	risque,	<i>a risk.</i>
organe,	<i>an organ.</i>		S.
orge,	<i>barley.</i>	Sable,	<i>sand.</i>
	P.	sabre,	<i>broad-sword.</i>
Pacte,	<i>a bargain.</i>	sacrifice,	<i>sacrifice.</i>
paradoxe,	<i>a paradox.</i>	sacerdoce,	<i>priesthood.</i>
parricide,	<i>parricide.</i>	salpêtre,	<i>saltpetre.</i>
participe,	<i>participle.</i>	scandale,	<i>scandal.</i>
patrimoine,	<i>patrimony.</i>	sceptre,	<i>a sceptre.</i>
peigne,	<i>a comb.</i>	schisme,	<i>a schism.</i>
pêne,	<i>a bolt.</i>	scrupule,	<i>a scruple.</i>
peuple,	<i>people.</i>	seigle,	<i>rye.</i>
phénomène,	<i>phenomenon.</i>	service,	<i>service.</i>
plâtre,	<i>plaster.</i>	sexe,	<i>a sex.</i>
poivre,	<i>pepper.</i>	siècle,	<i>an age.</i>
pôle,	<i>pole.</i>	signe,	<i>a sign.</i>
portique,	<i>portico.</i>	songe,	<i>dream.</i>
pouce,	<i>thumb.</i>	souffle,	<i>breath.</i>
précepte,	<i>precept.</i>	soufre,	<i>sulphur.</i>
précipice,	<i>precipice.</i>	spectre,	<i>a ghost.</i>
préjudice,	<i>prejudice.</i>	style,	<i>a style.</i>
prestige,	<i>a charm.</i>	subside,	<i>subsidiy.</i>
		sucré,	<i>sugar.</i>

supplice,	<i>a torment.</i>		V.
symbole,	<i>a symbol.</i>		
synode,	<i>a synod.</i>	Vacarme,	<i>uproar</i>
synonyme,	<i>a synonym.</i>	ventre,	<i>belly.</i>
		verbe,	<i>verb.</i>
	T.	verre,	<i>glass.</i>
Télescope,	<i>telescope.</i>	vestibule,	<i>entry.</i>
terme,	<i>a term.</i>	vice,	<i>vice.</i>
texte,	<i>a text.</i>	vinaigre,	<i>vinegar.</i>
théâtre,	<i>theatre.</i>	volume,	<i>volume.</i>
triangle,	<i>triangle.</i>	ulcère,	<i>ulcer.</i>
trône,	<i>a throne.</i>		Z.
tropique,	<i>tropic.</i>		
trouble,	<i>trouble.</i>	Zèle,	<i>zeal.</i>
tube,	<i>tube.</i>	zéphyre,	<i>zephyr.</i>
tumulte,	<i>tumult.</i>		

*N. B.* There are some more, but they are so little used, that I have not thought proper to insert them.

## SUBSTANTIVES

*Masculine in one Signification, and Feminine in another.*

un aune,	<i>an alder.</i>	
une aune,	<i>an ell.</i>	
un barbe,	<i>a Barbary horse.</i>	
une barbe,	<i>a beard.</i>	
un Basque,	<i>a Basque.</i>	
une basque,	<i>a skirt.</i>	
un coche,	<i>a travelling coach.</i>	
une coche,	<i>a sow.</i>	[wife).
un couple,	<i>a couple (a husband and his</i>	
une couple,	<i>a couple (of things).</i>	
un enseigne,	<i>an ensign.</i>	
une enseigne,	<i>a sign.</i>	

un exemple,	<i>a pattern.</i>
une exemple,	<i>a copy (in writing).</i>
un garde,	<i>a keeper.</i>
une garde,	<i>a guard.</i>
le greffe,	<i>the registry.</i>
la greffe,	<i>the graft.</i>
un guide,	<i>a guide.</i>
une guide,	<i>a guidance.</i>
un iris,	<i>a rainbow.</i>
une iris,	<i>an iris (precious stone).</i>
un livre,	<i>a book.</i>
une livre,	<i>a pound.</i>
un manche,	<i>a handle.</i>
une manche,	<i>a sleeve.</i>
un mémoire,	<i>a memorandum.</i>
une mémoire,	<i>a memory.</i>
un mode,	<i>a form.</i>
une mode,	<i>a fashion.</i>
un môle,	<i>a pier.</i>
une môle,	<i>a moon-calf.</i>
un moule,	<i>a mould.</i>
une moule,	<i>a muscle.</i>
un mousse,	<i>a ship-boy.</i>
la mousse,	<i>the moss.</i>
un œuvre,	<i>a work (of art).</i>
une œuvre,	<i>a work.</i>
un page,	<i>a page (to a king).</i>
une page,	<i>a page (of a book).</i>
un pailleasse,	<i>a clown.</i>
une pailleasse,	<i>a straw-bed.</i>
un parallèle,	<i>a comparison.</i>
une parallèle,	<i>a parallel-line.</i>
le pendule,	<i>the pendulum.</i>
une pendule,	<i>a clock.</i>

le période,	<i>pitch.</i>
une période,	<i>a period.</i>
le plane,	<i>the plane-tree.</i>
la plane,	<i>the plane.</i>
le platine*,	<i>platina (a metal).</i>
la platine,	<i>the platen.</i>
le ponte,	<i>the punter.</i>
la ponte,	<i>the laying of eggs.</i>
un pique,	<i>a mattock.</i>
une pique,	<i>a pike.</i>
un poêle,	<i>a stove.</i>
une poêle,	<i>a frying-pan.</i>
un poste,	<i>an employment.</i>
la poste,	<i>the post-office.</i>
le pourpre,	<i>the purples (a sort of illness).</i>
la pourpre,	<i>purple.</i>
un quadrille,	<i>quadrille (game).</i>
une quadrille,	<i>a troop of horse.</i>
un Satyre,	<i>a Satyr.</i>
une satire,	<i>a satire.</i>
le solde,	<i>the balance of an accompt.</i>
la solde,	<i>pay.</i>
un somme,	<i>a sleep.</i>
une somme,	<i>a sum.</i>
un tour,	<i>a trick.</i>
une tour,	<i>a tower.</i>
un triomphe,	<i>a triumph.</i>
une triomphe,	<i>a trump at cards.</i>
un trompette,	<i>a trumpeter.</i>
une trompette,	<i>a trumpet.</i>
un vase,	<i>a vase.</i>
la vase.	<i>the mud.</i>

\* Masculine, according to the last edition of the Dictionary of the French Academy, and the actual use.

un voile,	<i>a veil.</i>
une voile,	<i>a sail.</i>
personne, M.	<i>when pronoun.</i>
personne, F.	<i>when substantive.</i>

Other substantives belong exclusively to the masculine or feminine gender.

A list of substantives having a distinct form for the female sex will be given in CH. 3. § 1.

## SECTION THE FOURTH.

### *Of the Number of Substantives.*

The number of nouns denotes the distinction between one and several objects.

There are two numbers, called singular and plural. A noun is in the singular, when it denotes but one person or thing: as, *un homme*, a man; *une maison*, a house: a noun is in the plural, when it denotes several persons or things: as, *des hommes*, men; *des maisons*, houses.

### *How to form the Plural of Nouns*

#### FIRST RULE.

Nouns which end in *s*, *x*, or *z* in the singular, have both numbers alike: as, *le fils*, the son, *la voix*, the voice, *le nez*, the nose, singular: *les fils*, *les voix*, *les nez*, plural.

#### SECOND RULE.

Nouns which end in *u* in the singular, take an *x* when *u* is preceded by *e* or *a*: as, *le lieu*, the place, *le chapeau*, the hat, singular: *les lieux*, *les chapeaux*, plural.

#### THIRD RULE.

Most nouns which end in *al* in the singular, become plural by changing *al* into *aux*: as, *cheval*, horse, *canal*, channel, singular: *chevaux*, *canaux*, plural.

## FOURTH, OR GENERAL RULE.

The plural of nouns is formed by adding an *s* to the singular. Example:—

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
un homme,	<i>a man,</i>	des hommes,	<i>men,</i>
un ami,	<i>a friend,</i>	des amis,	<i>friends,</i>
une maison,	<i>a house,</i>	des maisons,	<i>houses.</i>

*List of irregular Plurals.*

			RULE
Aïeul,	<i>grandfather,</i>	aïeux,	4.
Ail,	<i>clove of garlic,</i>	aulx,	4.
Aval,	<i>surety for payment,</i>	avals,	2.
Bail,	<i>lease,</i>	baux,	4.
Bal,	<i>ball,</i>	bals,	3.
Bijou,	<i>jewel,</i>	bijoux,	4.
Cal,	<i>callosity,</i>	cals,	3.
Caillou,	<i>pebble,</i>	cailloux,	4.
Carnaval,	<i>carnival,</i>	carnavals,	3.
Ciel,	<i>heaven,</i>	cieux,	4.
Ciel,	<i>testers,</i>	ciels de lit.	
Corail,	<i>coral,</i>	coraux,	4.
Émail,	<i>enamel,</i>	émaux,	4.
Genou,	<i>knee,</i>	genoux,	4.
Hibou,	<i>owl,</i>	hiboux,	4.
Œil,	<i>eye,</i>	yeux,	4.
Œil,	<i>in architecture, &amp;c.</i>	œils de bœuf.	
Pal,	<i>pale (in heraldry),</i>	pals,	3.
Plumail,	<i>feather-brush,</i>	plumaux,	4.
Pou,	<i>louse,</i>	poux,	4.
Régat,	<i>treat,</i>	régals,	3.
Soupirail,	<i>air-hole,</i>	soupiraux,	4.
Travail,	<i>labour,</i>	travaux,	4.
Travail,	<i>in horse-shoeing,</i>	travails,	4.
Vantail,	<i>door-flap,</i>	vantaux,	4.

*N. B.* The figures show which rule is departed from.



*How Compound Words form their Plural.*

**Rule 1.** When a word is composed of a substantive and an adjective, both take the mark of a plural. Example *un gentil-homme*, a nobleman, *des gentils-hommes*; *un arc-boutant*, buttress, *des arcs-boutans*. But the adjective *den* is an exception: as, *des demi-dieux*, *des demi-lunes*.

**Rule 2.** When a word is composed of a substantive and a pronoun, both take the mark of a plural: as, *Monsieur* Sir, *Madame*, Madam, singular; *Messieurs*, *Mesdames* plural.

**Rule 3.** When a word is composed of two substantives not separated by a preposition, both take also the mark of the plural: as, *un Garde-Suisse*, singular; *des Gardes-Suisses*, plural.

**Rule 4.** When a word is composed of two substantives separated by a preposition, the first alone takes the mark of the plural: as, *un arc-en-ciel*, a rainbow, *un chef-d'œuvre* a master-piece, singular; *des arcs-en-ciel*, *des chefs-d'œuvre* plural.

**Rule 5.** When a word is composed of a substantive and a verb, or a preposition, the substantive alone takes the mark of the plural, if required by the sense: as, *un avant-coureur*, a forerunner, singular; *des avant-coureurs*, plural. *Un essuie-mains*, a towel, is better than *un essuie-main* in the singular.

Substantives common have no plural when they denote something that has one uniform aspect or constitution.

*Substantives which have no Plural in French.*

The nouns which have no plural are, 1. the names of metals, taken in general; as *l'or*, gold; *l'argent*, silver; *le cuivre*, copper; *le plomb*, lead; *le fer*, iron. Indeed, we sometimes say *les fers*, *les plombs*, &c. but then we consider these metals as wrought, and do not speak of them generally.

2. The names of habitual virtues and vices, such as *la foi*, faith; *l'espérance*, hope; *la charité*, charity; *la prudence*, prudence; *l'orgueil*, pride; *l'avarice*, covetousness, &c.

3. Infinitives and adjectives, substantively used : as, *le boire*, the drinking; *le manger*, the eating; *le beau*, the beautiful; *l'utile*, the useful; *le vrai*, the true, &c.

4. The following substantives have commonly no plural:—

l'absinthe,	<i>wormwood.</i>	la noblesse,	<i>nobility.</i>
l'artillerie,	<i>artillery.</i>	l'odorat,	<i>smelling</i>
le courroux,	<i>wrath.</i>	l'ouïe,	<i>hearing.</i>
la disette,	<i>scarcity.</i>	la pauvreté,	<i>poverty.</i>
l'enfance,	<i>infancy.</i>	le pourpre,	<i>red fever.</i>
l'estime,	<i>esteem.</i>	le prochain,	<i>our neighbour.</i>
la faim,	<i>hunger.</i>	la renommée,	<i>fame.</i>
la gloire,	<i>glory.</i>	le repos,	<i>rest.</i>
l'encens,	<i>incense.</i>	le salut,	<i>salvation.</i>
l'eucharistie,	<i>eucharist.</i>	le sang,	<i>blood.</i>
la jeunesse,	<i>youth.</i>	la soif,	<i>thirst.</i>
le lait,	<i>milk.</i>	le sommeil,	<i>sleep.</i>
le miel,	<i>honey.</i>	la vieillesse,	<i>old age.</i>
la mollesse,	<i>effeminacy.</i>	la virilité,	<i>manhood.</i>

*Substantives which have no singular in French.*

les accordailles,	<i>espousals.</i>	les épousailles,	<i>espousals.</i>
les annales,	<i>annals.</i>	les fiançailles,	<i>betrothing.</i>
les ancêtres,	<i>ancestors.</i>	les frais,	<i>expenses.</i>
les armoiries,	<i>coat of arms.</i>	les funérailles,	<i>funerals.</i>
les arrérages,	<i>arrears.</i>	les gens,	<i>people.</i>
les atours,	<i>elegant dress.</i>	les matériaux,	<i>materials.</i>
les bestiaux,	<i>cattle.</i>	les mœurs,	<i>manners.</i>
les brossailles,	<i>briars.</i>	les mouchettes,	<i>snuffers.</i>
les calendes,	<i>calends.</i>	les munitions,	<i>ammunition.</i>
les catacombes,	<i>catacombs.</i>	les obsèques,	<i>obsequies.</i>
les ciseaux,	<i>scissors.</i>	les pleurs,	<i>tears.</i>
les confins,	<i>the confines.</i>	les proches,	<i>relations.</i>
les décombres,	<i>rubbish.</i>	les prémices,	<i>first-fruits.</i>
les dépens,	<i>cost.</i>	les représailles,	<i>reprisals.</i>
les écrouelles,	<i>the king's evil.</i>	les vivres,	<i>victuals.</i>
les entraves,	<i>shackles.</i>	les ténèbres,	<i>darkness, &amp;c.</i>
les entrailles,	<i>bowels.</i>		

## CHAP. III.

## OF ADJECTIVES.

THE *substantive* is the name of an object or person ; *adjectives* are words added to substantives, and specify the qualities of a person or thing : as, *la vertu est aimable, vice est odieux* : virtue is amiable, vice is odious. — *Virtu* and *vice* are two substantives ; *odieux* and *aimable* two adjectives.

A noun which makes good sense with the word *person* or *thing* is an adjective ; a noun which cannot make any sense with them is a substantive. This is an infallible rule in regard to adjectives, at least : for instance, the word *good* is an adjective, because we may say a *good* person, a *good* thing ; but the word *man* is a substantive, because we cannot say, a *man* person, a *man* thing.

The substantives, few excepted, are of one gender only but the adjectives which qualify them admit of two genders and numbers, because they must agree with the substantives to which they have reference. They form the feminine from the masculine termination, as follows : —

## SECTION THE FIRST.

*How to form the Feminine of Adjectives.*

Six Rules, when these exceptions are known, will include all the feminine adjectives.

## IRREGULAR FEMININES,

M.		F.	RULE
Absous,	<i>absolved,</i>	absoute,	6.
Auteur,	<i>author,</i>	auteur,	6.
Bailleur,	<i>lessor,</i>	bailleresse,	4.
Bas,	<i>low.</i>	basse,	6.
Beau,	<i>handsome,</i>	belle,	6.
Bénin,	<i>benign,</i>	bénigne,	6.
Blanc,	<i>white,</i>	blanche,	6.
Caduc,	<i>declining,</i>	caduque,	6.

M.		F.	RULE
Chatain,	<i>chestnut,</i>	—	
Défendeur,	<i>defendant,</i>	défenderesse,	4.
Demandeur,	<i>demandant,</i>	demanderesse,	4.
Doux,	<i>sweet,</i>	douce,	2.
Enchanteur,	<i>enchanted,</i>	enchanteresse,	4.
Epais,	<i>thick,</i>	épaisse,	6.
Exécuteur,	<i>executing,</i>	exécutrice,	4.
Exprès,	<i>express,</i>	expresse,	6.
Fat,	<i>affected,</i>	—	
Faux,	<i>false,</i>	fausse,	2.
Favori,	<i>favourite,</i>	favourite,	6.
Fou,	<i>foolish,</i>	folle,	6.
Frais,	<i>fresh,</i>	fraîche,	6.
Franc,	<i>free,</i>	franche,	6.
Gras,	<i>fat,</i>	grasse,	6.
Grec,	<i>Greek,</i>	Grèque,	6.
Gros,	<i>big,</i>	grosse,	6.
Las,	<i>weary,</i>	lasse,	6.
Long,	<i>long,</i>	longue,	6.
Malin,	<i>wicked,</i>	maligne,	6.
Mou,	<i>soft,</i>	molle,	6.
Nouveau,	<i>new,</i>	nouvelle,	6.
Nul,	<i>no,</i>	nulle,	6.
Pêcheur,	<i>sinning,</i>	pécheresse,	4.
profès,	<i>initiated,</i>	professe,	6.
Persécuteur,	<i>persecuting,</i>	persécutrice,	4.
Public,	<i>public,</i>	publique,	6.
Roux,	<i>red,</i>	rousse,	2.
Sec,	<i>dry,</i>	sèche,	6.
Sot,	<i>silly,</i>	sotte,	6.
Tiers,	<i>third,</i>	tierce,	6.
Traître,	<i>traitorous,</i>	traïtesse,	4.
Turc,	<i>Turkish,</i>	Turque,	6.
Vengeur,	<i>avenging,</i>	vengeresse,	4.
Vieux,	<i>old,</i>	vieille,	2.

*Rule 1.* Adjectives which end in *e* mute in the masculine singular, are alike in both genders : as, *sage*, wise, *brave*, brave, *célèbre*, famous, masculine ; *sage*, *brave*, *célèbre*, feminine.

**Rule 2.** Adjectives which end in *x* in the masculine, become feminine by changing *x* into *se* : as *jaloux*, jealous, *heureux*, happy, masculine ; *jalouse*, *heureuse*, feminine.

**Rule 3.** Adjectives which end in *f* in the masculine, become feminine by changing *f* into *ve* : as *vif*, quick, *actif*, active, *neuf*, new, masculine ; *vive*, active, *neuve*, feminine.

**Rule 4.** Nouns ending in *teur* and *eur*, when a gerund would arise from putting *ant* in the place of *eur*, make the feminine to end in *euse* : as *flatteur*, flattering, *flatteuse*; *trompeur*, deceiving, *trompeuse* : because of *flat-tant*, *trompant*. In other cases they change *teur* into *trice* : as *acteur*, acting, *actrice* ; *moteur*, moving, *motrice*, &c. Words ending in *érieur* ; and *majeur*, *meilleur*, *mineur*, follow the 6th or general Rule.

**Rule 5.** Most adjectives in *el*, *eil*, *et*, *ien*, *an*, *on*, double their final consonant before *e* mute of the feminine : as, *cruelle*, *pareille*, *muette*, *ancienne*, *paysanne*, *bonne*, from *cruel*, *pareil*, *muet*, *ancien*, *bon*.

**Rule 6.** Adjectives of all finals not mentioned before become feminine by adding an *e* to the masculine termination : as *grand*, great, *divin*, divine, *savant*, learned, masculine ; *grande*, *divine*, *savante*, feminine.

**REMARKS.** The feminines, *belle*, *molle*, *folle*, *nouvelle*, may be considered as formed from *bel*, *mol*, *fol*, *nouvel*, which are used before a vowel or *h* mute, instead of *beau*, *mou*, *fou*, *nouveau*.

SOME substantives have a distinct form for individuals of the female sex, founded partly on the foregoing rules : as,

M.		F.
accusateur,	<i>accuser</i> ,	accusatrice.
ambassadeur,	<i>ambassador</i>	ambassadrice
apprenti,	<i>apprentice</i> ,	apprentie.
baron,	<i>baron</i> ,	baronne.
berger,	<i>shepherd</i> ,	bergère.
bienfaiteur,	<i>benefactor</i> ,	bienfaitrice.
chanoine,	<i>canon</i> ,	chanoinesse.
chanteur,	<i>singer</i> ,	chanteuse.
chasseur,	<i>hunter</i> ,	chasseuse.
chasseur,	(in poetry),	chasseresse.
danseur,	<i>dancer</i> ,	danseuse.

M.		F.
empereur,	<i>emperor,</i>	impératrice.
jouvenceau,	<i>lad,</i>	jouvencelle.
lion,	<i>lion,</i>	lionne.
païen,	<i>heathen,</i>	païenne.
paon,	<i>peacock,</i>	paonne.
prieur,	<i>prior,</i>	prieure.
prince,	<i>prince,</i>	princesse.
témoin,	<i>witness,</i>	témoine.
voisin,	<i>neighbour,</i>	voisine.

N. B. Observe, from the preceding rules, that all adjectives end in *e* mute in the feminine singular; and as those which end in *e* mute form their plural by the addition of an *s*, all adjectives, without any exception, end in *es* in the feminine plural.

## SECTION THE SECOND.

### *Of the Plural of Adjectives.*

Adjectives form their plural like the substantives, of which we have before spoken; and the rules given in page 42. can be applied to adjectives, with only three exceptions to the second rule, in *fou*, *mou*, *bleu*, which take an *s*.

*The following Adjectives have no Plural in the Masculine Gender: —*

austral,	<i>southern.</i>	lustral,	<i>lustral.</i>
boréal,	<i>northern.</i>	littéral,	<i>literal.</i>
canonial,	<i>canonical.</i>	matinal,	<i>early.</i>
conjugal,	<i>conjugal.</i>	natal,	<i>natal.</i>
diamétral,	<i>dizmetrical.</i>	naval,	<i>naval.</i>
fatal,	<i>fatal.</i>	pastoral,	<i>pastoral.</i>
filial,	<i>filial.</i>	pascal,	<i>pascal.</i>
final,	<i>final.</i>	pectoral,	<i>pectoral.</i>
frugal,	<i>frugal.</i>	spécial,	<i>special.</i>
jovial,	<i>jovial.</i>	vénal,	<i>venal.</i>

## SECTION THE THIRD.

*Of Comparatives and Superlatives.*

A *Comparative* is a comparison of two or more objects, in order to know what proportion they bear to one another: now as two objects can either be equal, superior, or inferior to one another, there are three sorts of comparatives, called of *equality*, *superiority*, and *inferiority*.

The *Comparative of equality* is formed by prefixing the word *aussi* to an adjective: as, *je suis aussi riche que vous*; I am as rich as you.

The *Comparative of superiority* is formed by prefixing the word *plus* to an adjective: as, *je suis plus grand que vous*; I am taller than you.

The *Comparative of inferiority* is formed by putting a negation before the verb, and *si* before the adjective, or only by prefixing the word *moins* to an adjective: as, *je suis moins heureux que vous*, or *je ne suis pas si heureux que vous*; I am not so happy as you.

The *Superlatives* increase or diminish to the utmost degree the signification of adjectives. They are of two sorts: the one *relative*, and the other *absolute*.

The first is formed by prefixing the article *le, la, les*, with *plus*, to the adjectives: as, *j'ai vu la plus belle femme d'Angleterre*; I have seen the *handsomest* woman in England.

The second is formed by prefixing the adverbs *très* or *fort* to the adjective: as, *je suis très-malheureux*; I am very unfortunate.

*Comparatives and Superlatives formed irregularly.*

These three adjectives, *bon*, good, *mauvais*, bad, *petit*, little, as well as their corresponding adverbs, deviate from others in the formation of their comparatives and superlatives, which are as follows:—

	POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
adj.	bon,	good. meilleur, better.	le meilleur, the best.
	mauvais, bad.	pire, worse.	le pire, the worst.
	petit,	little. moindre, less.	le moindre, the least.

	POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
adv. {	bien, <i>well.</i>	mieux, <i>better.</i>	le mieux, <i>the best.</i>
	mal, <i>bad.</i>	pis, <i>worse.</i>	le pis, <i>the worst.</i>
	peu, <i>little.</i>	moins, <i>less.</i>	le moins, <i>the least.</i>

We say also *plus mauvais, plus petit, plus mal*; but never *plus bon, plus bien, plus peu.*

## SECTION THE FOURTH.

*Of the Cardinal Numbers.*

The *Cardinal numbers* denote the quantity of persons or things, and answer to the question *how much? how many?* They are called *cardinal*, because they are the root of all others; they are as follows: —

1, {	un, <i>m. une, f.</i>	} <i>one,</i>	I.
	uns, unes, pl.		
2,	deux,	<i>two,</i>	II.
3,	trois,	<i>three,</i>	III.
4,	quatre,	<i>four,</i>	IV.
5,	cinq,	<i>five,</i>	V.
6,	six,	<i>six,</i>	VI.
7,	sept,	<i>seven,</i>	VII.
8,	huit,	<i>eight,</i>	VIII.
9,	neuf,	<i>nine,</i>	IX.
10,	dix,	<i>ten,</i>	X.
11,	onze,	<i>eleven,</i>	XI.
12,	douze,	<i>twelve,</i>	XII.
13,	treize,	<i>thirteen,</i>	XIII.
14,	quatorze,	<i>fourteen,</i>	XIV.
15,	quinze,	<i>fifteen,</i>	XV.
16,	seize,	<i>sixteen,</i>	XVI.
17,	dix-sept,	<i>seventeen,</i>	XVII.
18,	dix-huit,	<i>eighteen,</i>	XVIII.
19,	dix-neuf,	<i>nineteen,</i>	XIX.
20,	vingt,	<i>twenty,</i>	XX.
21,	vingt et un,	<i>twenty-one,</i>	XXI.
22,	vingt-deux,	<i>twenty-two,</i>	XXII.
23,	vingt-trois,	<i>twenty-three,</i>	XXIII.



24,	vingt-quatre,	<i>twenty-four,</i>	XXIV.
25,	vingt-cinq,	<i>twenty-five,</i>	XXV.
26,	vingt-six,	<i>twenty-six,</i>	XXVI.
27,	vingt-sept,	<i>twenty-seven,</i>	XXVII
28,	vingt-huit,	<i>twenty-eight,</i>	XXVII
29,	vingt-neuf,	<i>twenty-nine,</i>	XXIX.
30,	trente,	<i>thirty,</i>	XXX.
31,	trente et un,	<i>thirty-one,</i>	XXXI.
32,	trente-deux,	<i>thirty-two,</i>	XXXII
33,	trente-trois,	<i>thirty-three,</i>	XXXII
34,	trente-quatre,	<i>thirty-four,</i>	XXXIV
35,	trente-cinq,	<i>thirty-five,</i>	XXXV.
36,	trente-six,	<i>thirty-six,</i>	XXXVI
37,	trente-sept,	<i>thirty-seven,</i>	XXXVII
38,	trente-huit,	<i>thirty-eight,</i>	XXXVIII
39,	trente-neuf,	<i>thirty-nine,</i>	XXXIX
40,	quarante,	<i>forty,</i>	XL.
41,	quarante et un,	<i>forty-one,</i>	XL I.
42,	quarante-deux,	<i>forty-two,</i>	XLII.
43,	quarante-trois,	<i>forty-three,</i>	XLIII.
44,	quarante-quatre,	<i>forty-four,</i>	XLIV.
45,	quarante-cinq,	<i>forty-five,</i>	XLV.
46,	quarante-six,	<i>forty-six,</i>	XLVI.
47,	quarante-sept,	<i>forty-seven,</i>	XLVII.
48,	quarante-huit,	<i>forty-eight,</i>	XLVIII
49,	quarante-neuf,	<i>forty-nine,</i>	XLIX.
50,	cinquante,	<i>fifty,</i>	L.
51,	cinquante et un,	<i>fifty-one,</i>	LI.
52,	cinquante-deux,	<i>fifty-two,</i>	LII.
53,	cinquante-trois,	<i>fifty-three,</i>	LIII.
54,	cinquante-quatre,	<i>fifty-four,</i>	LIV.
55,	cinquante-cinq,	<i>fifty-five,</i>	LV.
56,	cinquante-six,	<i>fifty-six,</i>	LVI.
57,	cinquante-sept,	<i>fifty-seven,</i>	LVII.
58,	cinquante-huit,	<i>fifty-eight,</i>	LVIII.
59,	cinquante-neuf,	<i>fifty-nine,</i>	LIX.
60,	soixante,	<i>sixty,</i>	LX.
61,	soixante et un,	<i>sixty-one,</i>	LXI.
62,	soixante-deux,	<i>sixty-two,</i>	LXII.
63,	soixante-trois,	<i>sixty-three,</i>	LXIII.
64,	soixante-quatre,	<i>sixty-four,</i>	LXIV.

65,	soixante-cinq,	<i>sixty-five,</i>	LXV.
66,	soixante-six,	<i>sixty-six,</i>	LXVI.
67,	soixante-sept,	<i>sixty-seven,</i>	LXVII.
68,	soixante-huit,	<i>sixty-eight,</i>	LXVIII.
69,	soixante-neuf,	<i>sixty-nine,</i>	LXIX.
70,	soixante-dix,	<i>seventy,</i>	LXX.
71,	soixante et onze,	<i>seventy-one,</i>	LXXI.
72,	soixante-douze,	<i>seventy-two,</i>	LXXII.
73,	soixante-treize,	<i>seventy-three,</i>	LXXIII.
74,	soixante-quatorze,	<i>seventy-four,</i>	LXXIV.
75,	soixante-quinze,	<i>seventy-five,</i>	LXXV.
76,	soixante-seize,	<i>seventy-six,</i>	LXXVI.
77,	soixante-dix-sept,	<i>seventy-seven,</i>	LXXVII.
78,	soixante-dix-huit,	<i>seventy-eight,</i>	LXXVIII.
79,	soixante-dix-neuf,	<i>seventy-nine,</i>	LXXIX.
80,	quatre-vingt,	<i>eighty,</i>	LXXX.
81,	quatre-vingt-un,	<i>eighty-one,</i>	LXXXI.
82,	quatre-vingt-deux,	<i>eighty-two,</i>	LXXXII.
83,	quatre-vingt-trois,	<i>eighty-three,</i>	LXXXIII.
84,	quatre-vingt-quatre,	<i>eighty-four,</i>	LXXXIV.
85,	quatre-vingt-cinq,	<i>eighty-five,</i>	LXXXV.
86,	quatre-vingt-six,	<i>eighty-six,</i>	LXXXVI.
87,	quatre-vingt-sept,	<i>eighty-seven,</i>	LXXXVII.
88,	quatre-vingt-huit,	<i>eighty eight,</i>	LXXXVIII.
89,	quatre-vingt-neuf,	<i>eighty-nine,</i>	LXXXIX.
90,	quatre-vingt-dix,	<i>ninety,</i>	XC.
91,	quatre-vingt-onze,	<i>ninety-one,</i>	XCi.
92,	quatre-vingt-douze,	<i>ninety-two,</i>	XCII.
93,	quatre-vingt-treize,	<i>ninety-three,</i>	XCIII.
94,	quatre-vingt-quatorze,	<i>ninety-four,</i>	XCIV.
95,	quatre-vingt-quinze,	<i>ninety-five,</i>	XCV.
96,	quatre-vingt-seize,	<i>ninety-six,</i>	XCVI.
97,	quatre-vingt-dix-sept,	<i>ninety-seven,</i>	XCVII.
98,	quatre-vingt-dix-huit,	<i>ninety-eight,</i>	XCVIII.
99,	quatre-vingt-dix-neuf,	<i>ninety-nine,</i>	XCIX.
100,	cent,	<i>hundred,</i>	C.
200,	deux cent,	<i>two hundred,</i>	CC.
300,	trois cent,	<i>three hundred,</i>	CCC.
400,	quatre cent,	<i>four hundred,</i>	CCCC.
500,	cinq cent,	<i>five hundred,</i>	D.
600,	six cent,	<i>six hundred,</i>	DC.

700,	sept cent,	seven hundred,	DCC.
800,	huit cent,	eight hundred,	DCCC.
900,	neuf cent,	nine hundred,	DCCCC
1000,	mille,	one thousand,	M.

*Observations upon Cardinal Numbers.*

1. When two numerals are joined together, the larger goes first in French: thus we say, *vingt-cinq*, *vingt-six*, &c. and not *cinq & vingt*, five and twenty, *six & vingt*, six and twenty, as the English sometimes do.

2. When several numbers meet together, we do not put in French any conjunction between them: thus, we say, *cent vingt*, *cent trente*, and not *cent & vingt*, *cent & trente*, hundred and twenty, hundred and thirty.

3. The English word *thousand* is rendered in French by *mil*, with one *l* only, when it is used for the date of the year, and by *mille* with *lle*, in other circumstances: thus, we say, *l'an mil huit cent huit*, in the year one thousand eight hundred and eight.

4. When the words *cent* and *mille* are followed by a number, they are never preceded by the word *un* in French, as they are in English by the word *one*: thus, we say, *cent cinquante*, for one hundred and fifty; *mil sept cent*, for one thousand and seven hundred; and not *un cent cinquante*, nor *un mil sept cent*.

5. In speaking of several score or hundred, the words *vingt* and *cent* take an *s*, when not followed by another numeral: thus, we write, *quatre-vingts livres*, fourscore pounds; *trois cents soldats*, three hundred soldiers, with an *s*; but *quatre-vingt-dix livres*, ninety pounds; *trois cent vingt-six soldats*, three hundred and twenty-six soldiers, without an *s*.

6. The word *million* is a collective noun, and takes the mark of the plural: as, *deux millions*, *dix millions*.

7. *Mille*, when meaning a thousand, never takes an *s*, so we say, *deux mille*, two thousand; but when *mille* means a mile, it takes *s* in the plural: as, *un mille*, one mile, *deux milles*, two miles, &c.

8. All numbers not mentioned in the preceding observations are always indeclinable.

## SECTION THE FIFTH.

*Of Ordinal Numbers.*

dinal numbers denote the order and disposition of  
s ; they are as follows : —

premier, <i>m.</i>	première, <i>f.</i>	1st, <i>first.</i>
second, <i>m.</i>	seconde, <i>f.</i>	2d, <i>second.</i>
troisième,		3d, <i>third.</i>
quatrième,		4th, <i>fourth.</i>
cinquième		5th, <i>fifth.</i>
sixième,		6th, <i>sixth.</i>
septième,		7th, <i>seventh.</i>
huitième,		8th, <i>eighth.</i>
neuvième,		9th, <i>ninth.</i>
dixième,		10th, <i>tenth.</i>
onzième,		11th, <i>eleventh.</i>
douzième,		12th, <i>twelfth.</i>
treizième,		13th, <i>thirteenth.</i>
quatorzième,		14th, <i>fourteenth.</i>
quinzième,		15th, <i>fifteenth.</i>
seizième,		16th, <i>sixteenth.</i>
dix-septième,		17th, <i>seventeenth.</i>
dix-huitième,		18th, <i>eighteenth.</i>
dix-neuvième,		19th, <i>nineteenth.</i>
vingtième,		20th, <i>twentieth.</i>
vingt-unième,		21st, <i>twenty-first.</i>
{ vingt-deuxième, et }		22d, { <i>twenty-second,</i>
{ ainsi de suite. }		{ <i>and so on.</i>

*Observations upon Ordinal Numbers.*

Except *le premier* and *le second*, the ordinal numbers  
formed from the *cardinal*, by changing *e* mute into  
for those which end with a vowel : as, *quatre*, *quatri-*  
and by adding *ième* to those which end in any other  
mant than *f* : as, *trois*, *dix*, cardinal ; *troisième*, *dix-*  
ordinal, except *cinq*, which takes *u* before *ième*,  
*ième*.

Those which end in *f*, change that final into *vième* :  
*euf*, *dix-neuf*, cardinal ; *neuvième*, *dix-neuvième*, or-

3. The English always use the *ordinal* numbers, when they put a date to any thing; the French, on the contrary, most commonly use the *cardinal* in this case (except the first, which is *ordinal*): thus we say, *le premier de Janvier, le deux de Février, le trois de Mars, le quatre d'Avril, le cinq de Mai*, &c. the first of January, the second of February, the third of March, the fourth of April, the fifth of May, &c.

4. The English use the *ordinal* numbers with an article after the Christian name of a sovereign; the French, on the contrary, use the *cardinal* (the two first excepted), and never put any article before them. Example: *Henri premier, Henri second, Henri trois, Henri quatre*, &c.; Henry the first, Henry the second, Henry the third, Henry the fourth, &c.; we say also, nevertheless, *Henry deux, Charles deux*.

5. The adverbs of *number* are formed from the *ordinal*, by adding *ment* to the final: as, *premier, dixième*, ordinal; *premièrement, dixièmement*, adverbs.

There are again three other sorts of numbers, called *collective, distributive*, and *proportional*: the *collective* denotes a certain quantity of things joined together: as, *une douzaine*, a dozen; *une cinquantaine*, fifty. The *distributive* express a part of the whole: as, *la moitié*, the half; *le tiers*, the third part; *le dixième*, the tenth part, &c. The *proportional* express the same quantity multiplied: as, *double*, double; *triple*, triple; *centuple*, centuple.

## CHAP. IV.

### OF PRONOUNS.

*Pronouns* are words used instead of nouns. If we were obliged to use a substantive before or after every verb, the repetition would be extremely tedious; we avoid this inconvenience by the help of some little words used instead of them, which are called *pronouns*. They are of six sorts, called *personal, possessive, demonstrative, relative, interrogative*, and *indeterminate*, of which as follows: —

I. *Of Personal Pronouns.*

The personal pronouns assign to persons three parts in discourse : the *first* speaks, the *second* is spoken to, and the *third* is spoken of. The pronouns of the first person, *je, me, moi, nous*, and those of the second, *tu, te, toi, vous*, are said of persons only, or of personified objects ; but those of the third, *il, ils ; elle, elles ; lui, leur, le, la, les ; se, soi ; y, en*, are said of persons, animals, and things.

As the same pronoun is expressed one way when it is *conjunctive* (that is to say, indispensably joined to a verb), and another when *disjunctive* (that is to say, which may be used without any reference to a verb), strict attention must be given to the following declensions, in which they are carefully distinguished.

*Declension of Conjunctive Personal Pronouns.*

## FIRST PERSON.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	<i>m. f.</i>			<i>m. f.</i>	
N.	Je,	<i>I.</i>	N.	Nous,	<i>We.</i>
G.	En,	<i>Of me.</i>	G.	En,	<i>Of us.</i>
D.	Me,	<i>To me.</i>	D.	Nous,	<i>To us.</i>
Ac.	Me,	<i>Me.</i>	Ac.	Nous,	<i>Us.</i>

## SECOND PERSON.

	<i>m. f.</i>			<i>m. f.</i>	
N.	Tu,	<i>Thou.</i>	N.	Vous,	<i>You.</i>
G.	En,	<i>Of thee.</i>	G.	En,	<i>Of you.</i>
D.	Te,	<i>To thee.</i>	D.	Vous,	<i>To you.</i>
Ac.	Te,	<i>Thee.</i>	Ac.	Vous,	<i>You.</i>

## THIRD PERSON.

N.	Il, <i>m.</i>	<i>He.</i>	N.	Ils, <i>m.</i>	<i>They.</i>
G.	En,	<i>Of him.</i>	G.	En,	<i>Of them.</i>
D.	Lui,	<i>To him.</i>	D.	Leur,	<i>To them.</i>
Ac.	Le,	<i>Him.</i>	Ac.	Les,	<i>Them.</i>

## THIRD PERSON.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	Elle, <i>f.</i>	<i>She.</i>	N.	Elles, <i>f.</i>	<i>They.</i>
G.	En,	<i>Of her.</i>	G.	En,	<i>Of them.</i>
D.	Lui,	<i>To her.</i>	D.	Leur,	<i>To them.</i>
Ac.	La,	<i>Her.</i>	Ac.	Les.	<i>Them.</i>

## OF BOTH GENDERS.

N.	—		N.	—	
G.	—		G.	—	
D.	Se,	<i>To one's self.</i>	D.	Se,	<i>To themselves.</i>
Ac.	Se,	<i>One's self.</i>	Ac.	Se,	<i>Themselves.</i>

*Of the Disjunctive Personal Pronouns.*

## FIRST PERSON.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	Moi,	<i>I.</i>	N.	Nous,	<i>We.</i>
G.	De moi,	<i>Of me.</i>	G.	De nous,	<i>Of us.</i>
D.	A moi,	<i>To me.</i>	D.	A nous,	<i>To us.</i>
Ac.	Moi,	<i>Me.</i>	Ac.	Nous,	<i>Us.</i>

## SECOND PERSON.

N.	Toi,	<i>Thou.</i>	N.	Vous,	<i>You.</i>
G.	De toi,	<i>Of thee.</i>	G.	De vous,	<i>Of you.</i>
D.	A toi,	<i>To thee.</i>	D.	A vous,	<i>To you.</i>
Ac.	Toi,	<i>Thee.</i>	Ac.	Vous,	<i>You.</i>

## THIRD PERSON.

N.	Lui, <i>m.</i>	<i>He.</i>	N.	Eux, <i>m.</i>	<i>They.</i>
G.	De lui,	<i>Of him.</i>	G.	D'eux,	<i>Of them.</i>
D.	A lui,	<i>To him.</i>	D.	A eux,	<i>To them.</i>
Ac.	Lui,	<i>Him.</i>	Ac.	Eux,	<i>Them.</i>
N.	Elle, <i>f.</i>	<i>She.</i>	N.	Elles, <i>f.</i>	<i>They.</i>
G.	D'elle,	<i>Of her.</i>	G.	D'elles,	<i>Of them.</i>
D.	A elle,	<i>To her.</i>	D.	A elles,	<i>To them.</i>
Ac.	Elle,	<i>Her.</i>	Ac.	Elles,	<i>Them.</i>

## OF BOTH GENDERS.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	—		N.	—	
G.	De soi,	<i>Of one's self.</i>	G.	De soi,	<i>Of themselves.</i>
D.	A soi,	<i>To one's self.</i>	D.	A soi,	<i>To themselves.</i>
Ac.	Soi,	<i>One's self.</i>	Ac.	Soi,	<i>Themselves.</i>

*Pronouns used with reference to Animals, and Things.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	Il, elle, or ce,	<i>It.</i>	N.	Ils, elles, or ce,	<i>They.</i>
G.	En,	<i>Of it.</i>	G.	En,	<i>Of them.</i>
D.	Lui, y,	<i>To it.</i>	D.	Leur, y,	<i>To them.</i>
Ac.	Le, la,	<i>It.</i>	Ac.	Les,	<i>Them.</i>

N. B. The compound pronouns *moi-même*, myself; *toi-même*, thyself; *lui-même*, himself; *elle-même*, herself; *nous-mêmes*, ourselves; *vous-mêmes*, yourselves; *eux-mêmes*, themselves; take the preposition *de* in the genitive case, and *à* in the dative.

It has been already remarked, that *en* is only a substitute for a genitive case: it differs from a true pronoun as much as *y*, which is an adverb signifying *in* or *to* that place.

*2. Of Possessive Pronouns.*

The possessive pronouns denote possession. They are called *conjunctive*, when they are joined to a noun, and *disjunctive* when they are used with reference to a noun antecedent. Both are declined as follows:

*Declension of Conjunctive Possessive Pronouns.*

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.	
	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>		<i>m. &amp; f.</i>	
N Ac.	mon,	ma,		mes,	<i>my.</i>
G.	de mon,	de ma,		de mes,	<i>of my.</i>
D.	à mon,	à ma,		à mes,	<i>to my.</i>



## OF POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>m. &amp; f.</i>	
N. Ac.	ton,	ta,	tes,	<i>thy.</i>
G.	de ton,	de ta,	de tes,	<i>of thy.</i>
D.	à ton,	à ta,	à tes,	<i>to thy.</i>

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>m. &amp; f.</i>	
N. Ac.	son,	sa,	ses,	<i>his, her, its.</i>
G.	de son,	de sa,	de ses,	<i>of his, &amp;c.</i>
D.	à son,	à sa,	à ses,	<i>to his, &amp;c.</i>

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
	<i>m. &amp; f.</i>		<i>m. &amp; f.</i>	
N. Ac.	notre,		nos,	<i>our.</i>
G.	de notre,		de nos,	<i>of our.</i>
D.	à notre,		à nos,	<i>to our.</i>

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
	<i>m. &amp; f.</i>		<i>m. &amp; f.</i>	
N. Ac.	votre,		vos,	<i>your.</i>
G.	de votre,		de vos,	<i>of your.</i>
D.	à votre,		à vos,	<i>to your.</i>

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
	<i>m. &amp; f.</i>		<i>m. &amp; f.</i>	
N. Ac.	leur,		leurs,	<i>their.</i>
D.	de leur,		de leurs,	<i>of their.</i>
G.	à leur,		à leurs,	<i>to their.</i>

*Declension of Disjunctive Possessive Pronouns.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>
N.Ac.	le mien,	la mienne,	les miens,	les miennes, <i>mine.</i>
G.	du mien,	de la mienne,	des miens,	des miennes, <i>of mine.</i>
D.	au mien,	à la mienne,	aux miens,	aux miennes, <i>to mine.</i>

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>
N. Ac. le tien,	la tienne,	les tiens,	les tiennes, <i>thine.</i>
G. du tien,	de la tienne,	des tiens,	des tiennes, <i>of thine.</i>
D. au tien,	à la tienne,	aux tiens,	aux tiennes, <i>to thine.</i>

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>
N. Ac. le sien,	la sienne,	les siens,	les siennes, <i>his, her, its.</i>
G. du sien,	de la sienne,	des siens,	des siennes, <i>of his, &amp;c.</i>
D. au sien,	à la sienne,	aux siens,	aux siennes, <i>to his, &amp;c.</i>

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>m. &amp; f.</i>
N. Ac. le nôtre,	la nôtre,	les nôtres, <i>ours.</i>
G. du nôtre,	de la nôtre,	des nôtres, <i>of ours.</i>
D. au nôtre,	à la nôtre,	aux nôtres, <i>to ours.</i>

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>m. &amp; f.</i>
N. Ac. le vôtre,	la vôtre,	les vôtres, <i>yours.</i>
G. du vôtre,	de la vôtre,	des vôtres, <i>of yours.</i>
D. au vôtre,	à la vôtre,	aux vôtres, <i>to yours.</i>

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>m. &amp; f.</i>
N. Ac. le leur,	la leur,	les leurs, <i>theirs.</i>
G. du leur,	de la leur,	des leurs, <i>of theirs.</i>
D. au leur,	à la leur,	aux leurs, <i>to theirs.</i>

---

*Observations upon these Pronouns.*

1. The possessive pronouns agree in gender and number with the substantive which they precede, or to which they have reference.

*Son* and *sien* do not refer, like *his, her, its*, in English, to the sex of the *person*; but agree in gender only with the noun that follows them.

2. *Mon, ton, son*, are used in the feminine instead of *ma, ta, sa*, before a vowel or *h* mute: as, *mon âme*, my soul, *son humeur*, his humour.

3. The *conjunctive* take the preposition *de* in the genitive case, and *à* in the dative, like proper names. The *disjunctive* are preceded by *le, la, les*, in the nominative; by *du, de la, des*, in the genitive; and by *au, à la, aux*, in the dative, like a substantive.

4. *Leur*, to them, must not be confounded with *leur*, their. The first is a personal pronoun which goes before a verb, and never takes an *s*, as *il leur parle*, he speaks to them. The second is a possessive pronoun which goes before a substantive, and takes an *s* in the plural, as *leurs frères sont venus*, their brothers are come.

5. *Notre* and *votre*, conjunctive, are sounded short; *le nôtre, le vôtre*, disjunctive, are sounded long, and have a circumflex accent over *ô*: as, *notre père est mort*; *le vôtre est en bonne santé*; our father is dead; yours is in good health.

### 3. Of Demonstrative Pronouns.

Demonstrative pronouns denote precisely, and point out, as it were, to the eye, the noun which they precede, or to which they have reference. They may be called *conjunctive* when they are joined to a substantive, and *disjunctive* when they have reference to a substantive antecedent.

#### *Pronouns used before a substantive.*

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>
N. Ac. <i>sing.</i>	<i>ce, cet,*</i>	<i>cette, this or that.</i>
G.	<i>de ce, de cet,</i>	<i>de cette, of this or of that.</i>
D.	<i>à ce, à cet,</i>	<i>à cette, to this or to that.</i>
N. Ac. <i>pl.</i>	<i>ces, — m. &amp; f.</i>	<i>these or those.</i>
G.	<i>de ces,</i>	<i>of these or of those.</i>
D.	<i>à ces,</i>	<i>to these or to those.</i>

\* This pronoun is used before a noun masculine, which begins with a vowel or an *h* mute.

*Demonstrative Pronouns followed by a genitive or a relative Pronoun.*

	M.	F.
N. Ac. <i>sing.</i>	celui,	celle, <i>that</i> ,
G.	de celui,	de celle, <i>of that</i> .
D.	à celui,	à celle, <i>to that</i> .
N. Ac. <i>pl.</i>	ceux,	celles, <i>those</i> .
G.	de ceux,	de celles, <i>of those</i> .
D.	à ceux,	à celles, <i>to those</i> .

*Pronouns used with reference to the last Noun spoken of.*

	M.	F.
N. Ac. <i>sing.</i>	celui-ci,	celle-ci, <i>this</i> .
G.	de celui-ci,	de celle-ci, <i>of this</i> .
D.	à celui-ci,	à celle-ci, <i>to this</i> .
N. Ac. <i>pl.</i>	ceux-ci,	celles-ci, <i>these</i> .
G.	de ceux-ci,	de celles-ci, <i>of these</i> .
D.	à ceux-ci,	à celles-ci, <i>to these</i> .

*Pronouns used with reference to the first Noun spoken of.*

N. Ac. <i>sing.</i>	celui-là,	celle-là, <i>that</i> .
G.	de celui-là,	de celle-là, <i>of that</i> .
D.	à celui-là, /	à celle-là, <i>to that</i> .
N. Ac. <i>pl.</i>	ceux-là,	celles-là, <i>those</i> .
G.	de ceux-là,	de celles-là, <i>of those</i> .
D.	à ceux-là,	à celles-là, <i>to those</i> .

*Pronouns used to denote an Object without naming it.*

N. Ac. <i>sing.</i>	ceci, <i>this</i> .	cela, <i>that</i> .
G.	de ceci, <i>of this</i> .	de cela, <i>of that</i> .
D.	à ceci, <i>to this</i> .	à cela, <i>to that</i> .

4. *Of Relative Pronouns.*

Though every pronoun has reference to a substantive, and might be, on that account, called *relative*, yet the following, *qui, que, quoi, lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles*, especially bear that denomination, being more particularly related to their antecedent than any other. Of the relative pronouns, some have reference only to persons or personified objects, and some to animals and things. They are declined as follows :

*Pronouns relative to Persons.*

## M. F. SING. PLUR.

N.	qui,	<i>who.</i>
G.	de qui, <i>or</i> dont,	<i>of whom.</i>
D	à qui,	<i>to whom.</i>
Ac.	qui, <i>or</i> que,	<i>whom.</i>

*Pronouns relative to Animals and Things.*

## SINGULAR.

	<i>m. f.</i>		<i>m.</i>		<i>f.</i>	
N.	qui	<i>or</i>	lequel,		laquelle,	<i>which.</i>
G.	dont	<i>or</i>	duquel,		de laquelle,	<i>of which.</i>
D.			auquel,		à laquelle,	<i>to which.</i>
Ac.	que	<i>or</i>	lequel,		laquelle,	<i>which.</i>

## PLURAL.

	<i>m. f.</i>		<i>m.</i>		<i>f.</i>	
N.	qui	<i>or</i>	lesquels,		lesquelles,	<i>which.</i>
G.	dont	<i>or</i>	desquels,		desquelles,	<i>of which.</i>
D.			auxquels,		auxquelles,	<i>to which.</i>
Ac.	que	<i>or</i>	lesquels,		lesquelles,	<i>which.</i>

*Observations.* 1. *Dont*, whereof, is a word of the same class with *en* and *y*, but has come to be considered a pronoun.

2. The adverb *où* is also substituted for *lequel, auquel, &c.*

5. *Of Interrogative Pronouns.*

Interrogative pronouns are those used to ask a question ; viz. *quel, quelle*, what or which ? used *conjunctively* ; and *lequel, qui, quoi*, and *que*, used *disjunctively* or *absolutely*, for which, who, what ?

*Pronouns used with reference to Persons.*

N.	qui ?	<i>who ?</i>
G.	de qui ?	<i>of whom ?</i>
D.	à qui ?	<i>to whom ?</i>
Ac.	qui ?	<i>whom ?</i>

*Pronouns used with reference to Persons and Things.*

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>
N. Ac.	<i>lequel, laquelle,</i>	<i>lesquels, lesquelles,</i>	<i>which ?</i>
G.	<i>duquel, de laquelle,</i>	<i>desquels, desquelles,</i>	<i>of which ?</i>
D.	<i>auquel, à laquelle,</i>	<i>auxquels, auxquelles,</i>	<i>to which ?</i>

*What ?* used conjunctively.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>
N. Ac.	<i>quel, quelle,</i>	<i>quels, quelles,</i>	<i>what ?</i>
G.	<i>de quel, de quelle,</i>	<i>de quels, de quelles,</i>	<i>of what ?</i>
D.	<i>à quel, à quelle,</i>	<i>à quels, à quelles,</i>	<i>to what ?</i>

*What ?* not followed by a substantive.

N.	<i>quoi, and que,</i>	<i>what ?</i>
G.	<i>de quoi,</i>	<i>of what ?</i>
D.	<i>à quoi,</i>	<i>to what ?</i>
Ac.	<i>que,</i>	<i>what ?</i>

6. *Of Indeterminate Pronouns*

Indeterminate pronouns are so called, because they allude to an object rather than specify it: they are divided into four classes.

1. *Those which are never joined to a Noun.*

<i>on</i> ,	one, people, they.	<i>l'un l'autre</i> ,	one another.
<i>quelqu'un</i> ,	somebody.	<i>autrui</i> ,	others.
<i>quiconque</i> ,	whoever.	<i>personne</i> , m.	nobody.
<i>chacun</i> ,	every one.	<i>rien</i> , m.	nothing.

2. *Those which are always joined to a Noun.*

<i>quelque</i> ,	some.	<i>quelconque</i> ,	whatever.
<i>chaque</i> ,	every, each.	<i>certain</i> ,	some.

3. *Those which are sometimes joined to a Noun and sometimes not.*

<i>nul</i> ,	not one.	<i>ni l'un ni l'autre</i> ,	neither.
<i>pas un</i> ,	not one.	<i>le même</i> ,	the same.
<i>aucun</i> ,	not one.	<i>tel</i> ,	such.
<i>autre</i> ,	another.	<i>plusieurs</i> ,	many.
<i>l'un et l'autre</i> ,	both.	<i>tout</i> ,	every, every thing
<i>l'un ou l'autre</i> ,	either.		

4. *Those which are followed by the Conjunction que.*

<i>qui que</i> ,	whoever.	<i>quelque que</i> ,	whatever.
<i>quoi que</i> ,	whatever.	<i>tel que</i> ,	such as.
<i>quel que</i> ,	whoever or whatever.	<i>tout que</i> ,	however.
<i>lequel que</i> ,	whichever.		

Observe, 1. After the indeterminate pronoun *on*, and others, in the singular, we express the personal pronouns which relate to them, by *de soi*, *à soi*, *se*, *soi*: as, *on doit veiller sur soi*, one must watch over one's self, *chacun doit penser à soi*, every one ought to take care of himself.

2. *L'un l'autre* makes *l'un de l'autre*, in the genitive, and *l'un à l'autre*, in the dative; *l'un et l'autre*, *l'un ou l'autre*, *ni l'un ni l'autre*, make *de l'un et de l'autre*, *de l'un ou de*

*e, ni de l'un ni de l'autre*, in the genitive, and *à l'un l'autre, à l'un ou à l'autre, ni à l'un ni à l'autre*, in the dative; *le même* makes *du même, au même*.

All other pronouns take only the preposition *de* in the genitive, and *à* in the dative.

## CHAP. V.

### OF VERBS.

This chapter is divided into *eight* sections: *the first* is of the nature and species of verbs; *the second* treats of their different moods, tenses, numbers, and persons; *the third* gives the conjugation of the auxiliaries *avoir* and *être*, and contains a list of those conjugated with *to have* in English, and with *être* in French; *the fourth* comprehends the regular conjugations; *the fifth* contains all the irregular verbs, in alphabetical order, fully explained; *the sixth* treats of the impersonal verbs; *the seventh* displays the conjugation of a verb, reflected on its conjunctive pronoun; and *the eighth* teaches several manners of conjugating a verb.

### SECTION THE FIRST.

#### *Of the Nature and Species of Verbs.*

A *verb*, according to the Latin etymology, *verbum*, is the word by which we make an assertion, concerning any person or thing in the nominative case.

A *verb* denotes an action done, or received; or expresses only the state of its nominative case; hence arise three distinct sorts of verbs, which are called,

- 1, active, *actif*.
- 2, passive, *passif*.
- 3, neuter, *neutre*.

The *active verb* expresses the action of its nominative subject towards some object, or noun in the accusative case.



as, *Charles étudie sa leçon*, Charles studies his lesson: *étudie* is a verb active, which expresses the action of *Charles* in regard to his lesson.

*The passive verb* expresses an action received by its nominative case: as, *les méchans seront punis de Dieu*, wicked people will be punished by God. It will not engage our attention here, as it is rendered by the auxiliary verb *être*, to be, in French as in English.

*The neuter verb* expresses the state of its nominative case: as, *je suis*, I am; *je dors*, I sleep; *je languis*, I languish. It expresses also an action, but absolutely, or without reference to an object, or noun in the accusative case: as, *je marche*, I walk, *j'agis*, I act.

Verbs admit of six further distinctions or epithets.

### VERBS,

1, auxiliary,	<i>auxiliaires</i>
2, reflected,	<i>réfléchis.</i>
3, personal,	<i>personnels.</i>
4, impersonal,	<i>impersonnels.</i>
5, regular,	<i>réguliers.</i>
6, irregular,	<i>irréguliers.</i>

1. *The auxiliary verbs* are these two: *avoir*, to have; and *être*, to be: they are called *auxiliaries*, because they help to conjugate all other verbs in their compound tenses.

2. *The reflected verbs* are those which have for subject and object the same person or thing: as, *je me lève*, I rise; *je m'habille*, I dress myself; *je me repens*, I repent.

3. *The personal verbs* are those which are conjugated with three persons in the singular number, and three in the plural, in all the tenses of the indicative and subjunctive moods: as, *je parle*, *tu parles*, *il parle*, *nous parlons*, *vous parlez*, &c.

4. *The impersonal verbs* are those which are used only in the third person singular of each tense: as, *il pleut*, it rains; *il neige*, it snows; *il gèle*, it freezes.

5. *The regular verbs* are those which are conjugated in all their tenses and persons, like the verb of the same fin

in the infinitive, which is given for example in regular conjugations : thus, for instance, *chanter* and *danſer*, to ſing, and to dance, are regular of the firſt conjugation, becauſe they are conjugated like *parler* in all their tenses and perſons.

The *irregular verbs* are thoſe which deviate in ſome tenses or perſons, from the verb regular of the ſame conjugation which is given for example : thus, *aller*, to go, is irregular, becauſe it is not conjugated like *parler*, though it has the ſame final in the infinitive mood.

## SECTION THE SECOND.

### *Of Moods, Tenses, Numbers, and Perſons of Verbs.*

Verbs are neceſſarily ſubject, 1. *to moods*, whereby they are adapted to different modes of ſpeaking ; 2. *to tenses*, by the help of which they represent the thing ſpoken of, as preſent, paſt, or future ; 3. *to numbers* and *perſons*, that they may agree with their nominative caſe. What is called conjugation is the method of varying theſe different moods, tenses, numbers, and perſons.

#### 1. OF MOODS.

Moods are the different manners of uſing a verb. There are four moods ; the *infinitive*, the *indicative*, the *subjunctive*, and the *imperative*.

*The infinitive mood*, which is the root of a verb, and by which the conjugations are diſtinguiſhed from each other, expreſſes an action, but in an indeterminate manner, without ſpecifying any particular agent : as, *parler*, to ſpeak ; *dormir*, to ſleep ; *agir*, to act, &c.

*The indicative mood* is adapted to the utterance of declarations and propoſitions : it forms a ſenſe of itſelf independently of what precedes or follows : as, *je veux*, I am willing ; *j'écris*, I am writing ; *je parle*, I ſpeak.

*The ſubjunctive mood* employs different tenses, but dependently on the verb or conjunction antecedent : as, *il*

*faut que nous soyons modestes, quelque mérite que nous ayons* : if you take out *il faut que, quelque mérite que*, the rest, *nous soyons, nous ayons*, have not a complete sense.

The imperative mood expresses the action of desiring, commanding, exhorting, &c. : as, *répondez-moi*, answer me : —

*Tenez votre parole inviolablement,  
Mais ne la donnez pas inconsidérément.*

## 2. OF TENSES.

Tenses refer to the time; and are expressed by different terminations : a verb has reference to present, past, or future. Their names are found in the following conjugations, and their use is fully explained in the Syntax, chapters 15, 16, and 17.

## 3. OF NUMBERS AND PERSONS.

There are two numbers in a verb, which are the *singular* and *plural* : the singular is used when we speak of one : as, *votre frère est mort*, your brother is dead ; and the plural, when we speak of more than one : as, *vos frères sont morts*, your brothers are dead.

There are three persons in each number : *the first* is used when we speak of ourselves, *the second* when we speak to another, and *the third* when we speak of another.

---

## SECTION THE THIRD.

*Conjugation of the auxiliary Verb Avoir, to have.*

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present tense,</i>	avoir,	<i>to have.</i>
<i>Gerund,</i>	ayant,	<i>having.</i>
<i>Participle,</i>	eu, m. eue, f.	<i>had.</i>
<i>Compound of the present,</i>	avoir eu,	<i>to have had.</i>
<i>Compound of the gerund,</i>	ayant eu,	<i>having had.</i>

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
I,	<i>I have</i>	Nous avons, <i>we have</i>
thou,	<i>thou hast.</i>	vous avez, <i>you have.</i>
he,	<i>he has.</i>	ils ont, <i>they have.</i>

## IMPERFECT.

ais,	<i>I had.</i>	Nous avions, <i>we had.</i>
vais,	<i>thou hadst.</i>	vous aviez, <i>you had.</i>
ait,	<i>he had.</i>	ils avaient, <i>they had.</i>

## PRETERITE.

s,	<i>I had.</i>	Nous eûmes, <i>we had.</i>
us,	<i>thou hadst.</i>	vos eûtes, <i>you had.</i>
it	<i>he had.</i>	ils eurent, <i>they had.</i>

## FUTURE.

rai, <i>I shall or will</i>	} <i>have.</i>	Nous aurons, <i>we shall</i>	} <i>have</i>
uras, <i>thou shalt</i>		vous aurez, <i>you shall</i>	
ira, <i>he shall</i>		ils auront, <i>they shall</i>	

## CONDITIONAL.

rais, <i>I would</i>	} <i>have.</i>	Nous aurions, <i>we would</i>	} <i>have.</i>
irais, <i>thou wouldst</i>		vous auriez, <i>you would</i>	
rait, <i>he would</i>		ils auraient, <i>they would</i>	

<i>and of the present,</i>	J'ai eu, &c. <i>I have had.</i>
<i>und of the imperfect,</i>	J'avais eu, &c. <i>I had had.</i>
<i>und of the preterite,</i>	J'eus eu, &c. <i>I had had.</i>
<i>und of the future,</i>	J'aurai eu, &c. <i>I shall have had.</i>
<i>und of the conditional,</i>	{ J'aurais eu, or j'eusse eu, &c. <i>I would have had.</i>

figures 1, 2, 3, denote the first, second, and third persons.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

Que            That

- |             |                          |             |                       |
|-------------|--------------------------|-------------|-----------------------|
| 1. J'aie,   | <i>I may have.</i>       | Nous ayons, | <i>we may have.</i>   |
| 2. tu aies, | <i>thou mayest have.</i> | vous ayez,  | <i>you may have.</i>  |
| 3. il ait,  | <i>he may have.</i>      | ils aient,  | <i>they may have.</i> |

## PRETERITE.

- |               |                       |                |                         |
|---------------|-----------------------|----------------|-------------------------|
| 1. J'eusse,   | <i>I might have.</i>  | Nous eussions, | <i>we might have.</i>   |
| 2. tu eusses, | <i>thou mightest.</i> | vous eussiez,  | <i>you might have.</i>  |
| 3. il eût,    | <i>he might have.</i> | ils eussent,   | <i>they might have.</i> |

<i>Compound of the present,</i>	J'aie eu,	<i>I may have had.</i>
<i>Compound of the preterite,</i>	J'eussé eu,	<i>I might have had.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

- |               |                      |               |                       |
|---------------|----------------------|---------------|-----------------------|
|               |                      | Ayons,        | <i>let us have.</i>   |
| 2. aies,      | <i>have thou.</i>    | ayez,         | <i>have ye.</i>       |
| 3. qu'il ait, | <i>let him have.</i> | qu'ils aient, | <i>let them have.</i> |

N. B. Though I have only put the first person of the compound tenses, the pupil must repeat all the persons by heart.

---

*Conjugation of the auxiliary verb, être, to be.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present tense,</i>	être,	<i>to be.</i>
<i>Gerund,</i>	étant,	<i>being.</i>
<i>Participle,</i>	été,	<i>been.</i>
<i>Compound of the present,</i>	avoir été,	<i>to have been.</i>
<i>Compound of the gerund,</i>	ayant été,	<i>having been.</i>

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

- |             |                  |              |                  |
|-------------|------------------|--------------|------------------|
| 1. Je suis, | <i>I am.</i>     | Nous sommes, | <i>we are.</i>   |
| 2. tu es,   | <i>thou art.</i> | vous êtes,   | <i>you are.</i>  |
| 3. il est,  | <i>he is.</i>    | ils sont,    | <i>they are.</i> |

## IMPERFECT.

- |              |                   |              |                   |
|--------------|-------------------|--------------|-------------------|
| 1. J' étais, | <i>I was.</i>     | Nous étions, | <i>we were.</i>   |
| 2. tu étais, | <i>thou wast.</i> | vous étiez,  | <i>you were.</i>  |
| 3. il était, | <i>he was.</i>    | ils étaient, | <i>they were.</i> |

## PRETERITE.

- |            |                   |             |                  |
|------------|-------------------|-------------|------------------|
| 1. Je fus, | <i>I was.</i>     | Nous fûmes, | <i>we were.</i>  |
| 2. tu fus, | <i>thou wast.</i> | vous fûtes, | <i>you were.</i> |
| 3. il fut, | <i>he was.</i>    | ils furent, | <i>they were</i> |

## FUTURE.

- |              |                               |              |                              |
|--------------|-------------------------------|--------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Je serai, | <i>I shall or will be.</i>    | Nous serons, | <i>we shall or will be.</i>  |
| 2. tu seras, | <i>thou shalt or wilt be.</i> | vous serez,  | <i>you shall or will be.</i> |
| 3. il sera   | <i>he shall or will be.</i>   | ils seront,  | <i>they shall or will be</i> |

## CONDITIONAL.

- |               |                         |               |                       |
|---------------|-------------------------|---------------|-----------------------|
| 1. Je serais, | <i>I would be.</i>      | Nous serions, | <i>we would be.</i>   |
| 2. tu serais, | <i>thou wouldst be.</i> | vous seriez,  | <i>you would be.</i>  |
| 3. il serait, | <i>he would be.</i>     | ils seraient, | <i>they would be.</i> |

- |                                     |                                 |                           |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>Compound of the present,</i>     | J'ai été,                       | <i>I have been.</i>       |
| <i>Compound of the imperfect,</i>   | J'avais été,                    | <i>I had been.</i>        |
| <i>Compound of the preterite,</i>   | J'eus été,                      | <i>I had been.</i>        |
| <i>Compound of the future,</i>      | J'aurai été,                    | <i>I shall have been.</i> |
| <i>Compound of the conditional,</i> | { J'aurais été, or j'eusse été, | <i>I would have been.</i> |

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

- |             |                       |              |
|-------------|-----------------------|--------------|
| Que         | <i>That</i>           |              |
| 1. Je sois, | <i>I may be.</i>      | Nous soyons, |
| 2. tu sois, | <i>thou mayst be.</i> | vous soyez,  |
| 3. il soit  | <i>he may be.</i>     | ils soient,  |

## PRETERITE.

- |               |                         |                |                       |
|---------------|-------------------------|----------------|-----------------------|
| 1. Je fusse,  | <i>I might be.</i>      | Nous fussions, | <i>we might be.</i>   |
| 2. tu fusses, | <i>thou mightst be.</i> | vous fussiez,  | <i>you might be,</i>  |
| 3. il fût,    | <i>he might be.</i>     | ils fussent,   | <i>they might be.</i> |

- |                                   |              |                           |
|-----------------------------------|--------------|---------------------------|
| <i>Compound of the present,</i>   | J'aie été,   | <i>I may have been.</i>   |
| <i>Compound of the preterite,</i> | J'eusse été, | <i>I might have been.</i> |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

		Soyons,	let us be.
2. sois,	be thou.	soyez,	be ye.
3. qu'il soit,	let him be.	qu'ils soient,	let them be. <i>ly</i>

These two verbs, *avoir* and *être*, help to conjugate all others in their compound tenses, and therefore must be learnt perfectly. All verbs conjugated with the verb *to be* in English, take *être* in French; but all those conjugated with *to have* in English, do not take *avoir* in French. The following are excepted: —

*Verbs conjugated with To Have, in English, and Etre in French.*

1. All reflected and reciprocal verbs, without exception, take, in their compound tenses, the auxiliary *être* in French, and the auxiliary *to have* in English.

2. The sixteen following are conjugated with *être* in French, and *to have* in English: —

aller,	to go.	tomber	to fall.
arriver,	to arrive.	venir,	to come.
déchoir,	to decay.	devenir,	to become.
décéder,	to die.	disconvenir,	to disagree.
entrer,	to come in.	intervenir,	to intervene.
mourir,	to die.	parvenir,	to attain.
naître,	to be born.	revenir,	to come back.
partir,	to set out.	survenir,	to happen.

These six, *accourir*, to run to; *accroître*, to increase; *apparaître*, to appear; *croître*, to grow; *disparaître*, to disappear; and *périr*, to perish; which are always conjugated with the auxiliary *to have* in English, are conjugated in French with *avoir* or *être*, according as action or state is more particularly meant.

*Verbs which take Avoir in one signification, and Etre in another.*

These six verbs, *accoucher, convenir, demeurer, descendre, monter, and passer*, take *avoir*, or *être*, in their compound tenses, according to the following distinctions:—

1. *Accoucher* takes *avoir*, when used in an active sense, and *être*, when used as a verb neuter: as,  *votre mère est accouchée, mon frère l'a accouchée*; your mother is brought to bed, my brother has delivered her.

2. *Convenir* takes *avoir*, when it means *to be convenient*, and *être*, when it signifies *to agree*: as,  *votre maison aurait convenu à mon père, je suis fâché que vous ne soyez pas convenus du prix*; your house would have suited my father, I am sorry that you have not agreed upon the terms.

3. *Demeurer* takes *avoir*, when it signifies *to live in*, and *être*, when it signifies *to remain*: as,  *j'ai demeuré à Londres*, I have lived in London;  *il est demeuré inébranlable*, he has remained immovable.

4. *Descendre* takes *avoir*, when it governs an accusative case, and *être* in other cases: as,  *il a descendu l'escalier*, he has gone down stairs;  *il est descendu d'une bonne famille*, he is descended from a good family.

5. *Monter* takes *avoir*, when it governs the accusative, and *être* in other cases: as,  *j'ai monté la colline*, I have ascended the hill;  *je suis monté par degrés aux charges militaires*, I have ascended by degrees to military employments.

6. *Passer* takes *avoir*, when it is followed by a noun or a pronoun, and *être* when not: as,  *j'ai passé par la France*, I have passed through France;  *cette mode est passée*, that fashion is past.

---

## SECTION THE FOURTH.

### *Of Regular Conjugations.*

A comparative view of the different terminations of verbs, in their moods, tenses, and persons, enables us to



refer them all to one or other of two classes, distinguished by the ending of the infinitive mood in *ER* or *IR*: as, *parler*, to speak, *agir*, to act, which we select as examples of the two regular conjugations.

Some verbs have the ending *RE* or *OIR* in the infinitive mood; and some of those in *ER* and *IR* deviate from the models, *parler* and *agir*, in forming their tenses: these will be treated of in a separate section, on the conjugation of irregular verbs.

### First Conjugation. Parler.

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present tense,</i>	parler,	<i>to speak.</i>
<i>Gerund,</i>	parlant,	<i>speaking.</i>
<i>Participle,</i>	parlé,	<i>spoken.</i>
<i>Compound of the present,</i>	avoir parlé,	<i>to have spoken.</i>
<i>Compound of the gerund,</i>	ayant parlé,	<i>having spoken.</i>

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

##### PRESENT TENSE.

###### SINGULAR.

Je parle,	<i>I speak.</i>
tu parles,	<i>thou speakest.</i>
il parle,	<i>he speaks.</i>

###### PLURAL.

Nous parlons,	<i>we speak.</i>
vous parlez,	<i>you speak.</i>
ils parlent,	<i>they speak.</i>

##### IMPERFECT.

Je parlais,	<i>I was</i>	} <i>speaking.</i>	Nous parlions,	<i>we were</i>	} <i>speaking.</i>
tu parlais,	<i>thou wast</i>		vous parliez,	<i>you were</i>	
il parlait,	<i>he was</i>		ils parlaient,	<i>they were</i>	

##### PRETERITE.

Je parlai,	<i>I spoke.</i>	Nous parlâmes,	<i>we spoke.</i>
tu parlas,	<i>thou spokest.</i>	vous parlâtes,	<i>you spoke.</i>
il parla,	<i>he spoke.</i>	ils parlèrent,	<i>they spoke.</i>

FUTURE.

Je parlerai, *I shall speak.* Nous parlerons, *we shall speak.*  
 tu parleras, *thou shalt speak.* vous parlerez, *you shall speak.*  
 ils parlera, *he shall speak.* ils parleront, *they shall speak.*

CONDITIONAL.

Je parlerais, *I would* } Nous parlerions, *we would* }  
 tu parlerais, *thou wouldst* } *speak.* vous parleriez, *you would* }  
 il parlerait, *he would* } ils parleraient, *they would* } *speak.*

*Compound of the present,* J'ai parlé, *I have spoken.*

*Compound of the imperfect,* J'avais parlé, *I had spoken.*

*Compound of the preterite,* J'eus parlé, *I had spoken.*

*Compound of the future,* J'aurai parlé, *I shall have spoken.*

*Compound of the conditional,* } J'aurais or j'eusse parlé, *I would*  
 } *have spoken.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Que *That*  
 Je parle, *I may speak.* Nous parlions, *we may speak.*  
 tu parles, *thou mayst speak.* vous parliez, *you may speak.*  
 il parle, *he may speak.* ils parlent, *they may speak.*

PRETERITE.

Je parlasse, *I might speak.* Nous parlussions, *we might speak.*  
 tu parlasses, *thou mightst speak.* vous parlassiez, *you might speak.*  
 il parlât, *he might speak.* ils parlassent, *they might speak.*

*Compound of the present,* J'aie parlé, *I may have spoken.*

*Compound of the preterite,* J'eusse parlé, *I might have spoken.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD

Parlons, *let us speak.*  
 2. parle, *speak thou.* parlez, *speak ye.*  
 3. qu'il parle, *let him speak.* qu'ils parlent, *let them speak.*

OBSERVATIONS.

1. *Was*, with the gerund in *ing*, is the mark of the imperfect in all verbs, *shall* or *will*, of the future, *would*.

*could*, or *should*, of the conditional, *may* of the present subjunctive, *might* of the preterite, and *let* of the imperative mood.

2. Most French verbs have the infinitive in *er*, and are conjugated the same as *parler*, except *aller*, *envoyer*, and *renvoyer*, which are in the list of irregulars.

3. Verbs which end in *ayer*, *oyer*, or *uyer*, in the infinitive mood retain *i* after *y*, in the first and second persons of the plural of the imperfect of the indicative, and present of the subjunctive: as, *essayer*, *employer*, *essuyer*, inf. *nous essayions*, *vous essayiez*; *nous employions*, *vous employiez*; *nous essuyions*, *vous essuyiez*, imperfect indicative, and present subjunctive. When *y* would be followed by an *e* mute, it is changed into *i*: as, *balayer*, to sweep, *balaie*.

4. Verbs which in the infinitive end in *ier*, are written with double *ii* in the first and second persons plural of the imperfect of the indicative, and of the present of the subjunctive: as, *prier*, *plier*, inf. *nous priions*, *nous plions*; *vous priez*, *vous pliez*, imperfect indicative, and pres. subj.

5. Orthography requires an *e* between *g* and *a* or *o*, through the whole conjugation of verbs which end in *ger* in the infinitive mood. Thus we say, *juger*, *jugeant*, *je jugeais*, *nous jugeons*; *partager*, *je partageais*, &c. not *jugant*, *jugais*, as we say, *parlant parlais*.

N. B. As the compound tenses of all verbs, regular and irregular, are nothing else than the conjugation of the verbs *avoir* or *être*, and the participle of the verb conjugated; the scholar, knowing well the auxiliaries, knows how to conjugate the compound tenses of all verbs; therefore we may dispense with inserting them in the following conjugations.

### Second Conjugation. Agir.

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present tense,</i>	<i>agir,</i>	<i>to act.</i>
<i>Gerund,</i>	<i>agissant,</i>	<i>acting</i>
<i>Participle,</i>	<i>agi,</i>	<i>acted.</i>

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

## SINGULAR.

J' agis, *I act.*  
 tu agis, *thou actest.*  
 il agit, *he acts.*

## PLURAL.

Nous agissons, *we act.*  
 vous agissez, *you act.*  
 ils agissent, *they act.*

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

J' agissais, <i>I was</i>	} <i>acting.</i>	Nous agissions, <i>we were</i>	} <i>acting.</i>
tu agissais, <i>thou wast</i>		vous agissiez, <i>you were</i>	
il agissait, <i>he was</i>		ils agissaient, <i>they were</i>	

## PRETERITE.

J' agis, <i>I acted.</i>	Nous agîmes, <i>we acted.</i>
tu agis, <i>thou actedst.</i>	vous agîtes, <i>you acted.</i>
il agit, <i>he acted.</i>	ils agirent, <i>they acted.</i>

## FUTURE.

J' agirai, <i>I shall or will act.</i>	Nous agirons, <i>we shall act.</i>
tu agiras, <i>thou shalt, &amp;c. act.</i>	vous agirez, <i>you shall act.</i>
il agira, <i>he shall, &amp;c. act.</i>	ils agiront, <i>they shall act.</i>

## CONDITIONAL.

J' agirais, <i>I would, &amp;c. act.</i>	Nous agirions, <i>we would act.</i>
tu agirais, <i>thou wouldst act.</i>	vous agiriez, <i>you would act.</i>
il agirait, <i>he would act.</i>	ils agiraient, <i>they would act.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

Que	<i>That</i>	
J' agisse, <i>I may act.</i>	Nous agissions, <i>we may act.</i>	
tu agisses, <i>thou mayst act.</i>	vous agissiez, <i>you may act.</i>	
il agisse, <i>he may act.</i>	ils agissent, <i>they may act.</i>	

## PRETERITE.

J' agisse, <i>I might act.</i>	Nous agissions, <i>we might act.</i>
tu agisses, <i>thou mightst act.</i>	vous agissiez, <i>you might act.</i>
il agit, <i>he might act.</i>	ils agissent, <i>they might act.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

- |                  |                     |                  |                      |
|------------------|---------------------|------------------|----------------------|
|                  |                     | Agissons,        | <i>let us act.</i>   |
| 2. agis,         | <i>act thou.</i>    | agissez,         | <i>act ye.</i>       |
| 3. qu'il agisse, | <i>let him act.</i> | qu'ils agissent, | <i>let them act.</i> |

All verbs which end in the infinitive mood in *ir*, except those mentioned in the list of irregular conjugations, are regular in French, and conjugated after *agir*. *Hâïr*, to hate, is conjugated in the same manner; but in the singular of the indicative present it makes *je hais, tu hais, il hait*, pronounced, *je hès, tu hès, il hèt*.

## SECTION THE FIFTH.

*Conjugation of all the Irregular Verbs.*I. ABSOUDRE, *to absolve*.\*

*Inf.* Absoudre, *to absolve.* *Ger.* absolvant, *absolving.*

*Part.* absous, *absolved.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
<i>Pres.</i>	J'absou	-s,	s, t;	absolv	-ons,	ez, ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	J'absolv	-ais,	ais, ait;	absolv	-ions,	iez, aient.
<i>Pret.</i>	None.					
<i>Fut.</i>	J'absoud	-rai,	ras, ra;	absoud	-rons,	rez, ront.
<i>Cond.</i>	J'absoud	-rais,	rais, rait;	absoud	-rions,	riez, raient.
<i>S. P.</i>	J'absolv	-e,	es, e;	absolv	-ions,	iez, ent.
<i>Pret.</i>	None.					
<i>Imper.</i>	abs-		ous, olve;	absolv	-ons,	ez, ent.

*On absoudre, as a pattern, conjugate dissoudre, but not résoudre.*

\* The pupil must learn to repeat the English words which answer to every tense and person of the French verbs: this will be an easy task, if he remembers that *to* is the mark of the present of the infinitive; *was*, with the gerund, the mark of the imperfect of the indicative; *shall* or *will* of the future; *would*, *could*, or *should*, of the conditional; *may* of the present of the subjunctive; *might* of the preterite; and *let* of the imperative mood. The figures 1, 2, 3, denote the first, second, and third persons of the singular and plural.

<i>Conjugate</i> Abattre, <i>to pull down,</i>	<i>on</i> battre	5.
S'abstenir, <i>to refrain,</i>	<i>on</i> tenir	43.
Abstraire, <i>to abstract,</i>	<i>on</i> traire	44.
Accourir, <i>to run to, w. être</i>	<i>on</i> courir	11.
Accroître, <i>to increase, w. être</i>	<i>on</i> connaître	11.
Accueillir, <i>to welcome,</i>	<i>on</i> cueillir	15.

## II. ACQUÉRIR, *to acquire.*

*Inf.* Acquérir, *to acquire.* *Ger.* acquérant, *acquiring.*  
*Part.* acquis, *acquired.*

### SINGULAR.

### PLURAL.

	1	2	3		1	2	3
1. J'acquie	-rs,	rs,	rt;	acqu	-érons,	érez,	ièrent.
2. J'acquér	-ais,	ais,	ait;	acquér	-ions,	iez,	aient.
3. J'acqu	-is,	is,	it;	acqu	-îmes,	îtes,	irent.
4. J'acqu	-rai,	ras,	ra;	acqu	-rons,	rez,	ront.
5. J'acqu	-rais,	rais,	rait;	acqu	-rions,	riez,	raient.
6. J'acquière	-e,	es,	e;	acqu	-érions,	ériez,	ièrent.
7. J'acqui	-isse,	isses,	it;	acqui	-issons,	issiez,	issent.
8. J'acqui	-ers,	ère,	;	acqui	-érons,	érez,	ièrent.

Adjoindre, *to join to, on* craindre 13.

Admettre, *to admit, on* mettre 23.

## III. ALLER, *to go, with être.*

*Inf.* Aller, *to go.* *Ger.* allant, *going.* *Part.* allé, *gone.*

1. Je	-vais,	vas,	va ;	allons,	allez,	vont.	
2. J'all	-ais,	ais,	ait ;	all	-ions,	iez,	aient.
3. J'all	-ai,	as,	a ;	all	-âmes,	âtes,	èrent.
4. J'i	-rai,	ras,	ra ;	i	-rons,	rez,	ront.
5. J'i	-rais,	rais,	rait ;	i	-rions,	riez,	raient.
6. J'aill	-e	es,	e ;	all	-ions,	iez,	aillent.
7. J'all	-asse,	asses,	ât ;	all	-assions,	assiez,	assent.
8. J'aill	er.	va,	aille ;	allons,	allez,	aillent.	

S'apercevoir, *to perceive, on* recevoir 35.

Appartenir, *to belong, on* tenir 43.

Apprendre, *to append, on* vendre 47.

Apprendre, *to learn, on* prendre 33.

Assaillir \*, *to assault, on* cueillir 15.

*assaillir* makes in the future and conditional *j'assaillirai, j'assaillirais.*

IV. S'ASSEOIR, *to sit down.**Inf.* S'asseoir, *to sit down.* *Ger.* s'asséyant, *sitti**Part.* assis, *sat.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
	1	2	3	1	2
<i>Pres.</i>	Je m'ass	-ieds,	ieds, ied;	asse -yons,	yez,
<i>Imp.</i>	Je m'assey-ais,	ais,	ait;	assey-ions,	iez,
<i>Pret.</i>	Je m'ass	-is,	is, it;	ass -îmes	îtes,
<i>Fut.</i>	Je m'assié-rai*	ras,	ra;	assié-rons,	rez,
<i>Cond.</i>	Je m'assié-rai*	rais,	rait;	assié-rions,	riez,
<i>S. P.</i>	Je m'assey-e,	es,	e;	asse -yions,	yiez,
<i>Pret.</i>	Je m'ass	-isse,	isses, it;	ass -issions,	issiez,
<i>Imper.</i>	ass	-ieds,	eye;	asse -yons,	yez,

Astreindre, *to subject*, *on* craindre 13.Atteindre, *to reach*, *on* craindre 13.Attendre, *to await*, *on* vendre 47.Attirer, *to attract*, *on* traire 44.Avoir, *to have.* See Ch. 5. section 3.V. BATTRE, *to beat.**Inf.* Battre, *to beat.* *Ger.* Battant, *beating.* *F*  
battu, *beaten.*

<i>Pres.</i>	Je ba	-ts,	ts,	t;	batt -ons,	ez,
<i>Imp.</i>	Je batt -ais,	ais,	ait;	batt -ions,	iez,	
<i>Pret.</i>	Je batt -is,	is,	it;	batt -îmes,	îtes,	
<i>Fut.</i>	Je batt -rai,	ras,	ra;	batt -rons,	rez,	
<i>Cond.</i>	Je batt -rais,	rais,	rait;	batt -rions,	riez,	
<i>S. P.</i>	Je batt -e,	es,	e;	batt -ions,	iez,	
<i>Pret.</i>	Je batt -isse,	isses,	it;	batt -issions,	issiez,	
<i>Imper.</i>	ba	-ts,	tte;	batt -ons,	ez,	

VI. BOIRE, *to drink.**Inf.* Boire, *to drink.* *Ger.* buvant, *drinking.* *F*  
bu, *drank.*

<i>Pres.</i>	Je boi	-s,	s,	t;	buv -ons,	ez,	b
<i>Imp.</i>	Je buv	-ais,	ais,	ait;	buv -ions,	iez,	ai

\* We also say, *je m'asseyerai, je m'asseyerai.*

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.			
	1	2	3		1	2	3
<i>Pres.</i>	Je b	-us, us,	ut ;	b	-ûmes, ûtes,	urent.	
<i>Fut.</i>	Je boi	-rai, ras,	ra ;	boi	-rons, rez,	ront.	
<i>Cond.</i>	Je boi	-rais, rais,	rait ;	boi	-rions, riez,	raient.	
<i>S. P.</i>	Je boiv-e,	es, e ;	buv-ions,	iez,	boivent.		
<i>Pret.</i>	Je b	-usse, usses,	ût ;	b	-ussions, ussiez,	ussent.	→
<i>Imper.</i>		bois, boive ;	buvons, buvez,	boivent.			

# VII. BOUILLIR, *to boil.*

*Inf.* Bouillir, *to boil.* *Ger.* bouillant, *boiling.* *Part.* bouilli, *boiled.*

<i>Pres.</i>	Je bou	-s, s,	t;	bouill	-ons, ez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je bouill	-ais, ais,	ait;	bouill	-ions, iez,	aient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je bouill	-is, is,	it;	bouill	-îmes; îtes,	irent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je bouilli	-rai, ras,	ra;	bouilli	-rons, rez,	ront.
<i>Cond.</i>	Je bouilli	-rais, rais,	rait;	bouilli	-rions, riez,	raient.
<i>S. P.</i>	Je bouill	-e, es, e;	bouill	-ions, iez,	ent.	
<i>Pret.</i>	Je bouill	-isse, isses, it;	bouill	-issions, issiez,	issent.	
<i>Imper.</i>		bous, bouille;	bouill	-ons, ez,	ent.	

Circoncire*,	<i>to circumcise,</i>	<i>on confire</i>	9.
Circonscrire,	<i>to circumscribe,</i>	<i>on écrire</i>	17.
Combattre,	<i>to fight,</i>	<i>on battre</i>	5.
Commettre,	<i>to commit,</i>	<i>on mettre</i>	23.
Se complaire,	<i>to please,</i>	<i>on plaire</i>	30.
Comprendre,	<i>to understand,</i>	<i>on pendre</i>	33.
Compromettre,	<i>to expose,</i>	<i>on mettre</i>	23.
Concevoir,	<i>to conceive,</i>	<i>on recevoir</i>	35.

# VIII. CONCLURE, *to conclude.*

*Inf.* Conclure, *to conclude.* *Ger.* concluant, *concluding.*  
*Part.* conclu, *concluded.*

<i>Pres.</i>	Je concl	-us, us,	ut;	conclu	-ons, ez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je conclu	-ais, ais,	ait;	conclu	-ions, iez,	aient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je concl	-us, us,	ut;	concl	-ûmes, ûtes,	urent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je conclu	-rai, ras,	ra;	conclu	-rons, rez,	ront.

But the participle is *circoncis*.



	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
<i>Cond.</i>	Je conclu-rai,	rais,	rait;	conclu-rions,	riez,	raient
<i>S. P.</i>	Je conclu-e,	es,	e;	conclu-ions,	iez,	ent
<i>Pres.</i>	Je concl -usse,	usses,	ût;	concl -ussions,	ussiez,	ussent
<i>Imper.</i>	concl	-us,	ue;	conclu-ons,	ez,	ent
Concourir,	<i>to compete,</i>			<i>on</i>	courir	12.
Condescendre,	<i>to condescend,</i>			<i>on</i>	vendre	47.
Conduire,	<i>to conduct,</i>			<i>on</i>	instruire	21.

IX. CONFIRE, *to pickle.*

*Inf.* Confire, *to pickle.* *Ger.* confisant, *pickling.*  
*Part.* confit, *pickled.*

<i>Pres.</i>	Je conf -is,	is,	it;	confis-ons,	ez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je confis-ais,	ais,	ait;	confis-ions,	iez,	aient.
<i>Pres.</i>	Je conf -is,	is,	it;	conf -îmes,	îtes,	irent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je confi -rai	ras,	ra;	confi -rons,	rez,	ront.
<i>Cond.</i>	Je confi -rais,	rais,	rait;	confi -rions,	riez,	raient.
<i>S. P.</i>	Je confis-e	es,	e;	confis-ions,	iez,	ent.
<i>Pres.</i>	Je conf -isse,	isses,	ît;	conf -issions,	issiez,	issent.
<i>Imper.</i>	conf	-is,	ise;	confis-ons,	ez,	ent.

Confondre,	<i>to confound,</i>	<i>on</i>	vendre	47.
Conjoindre,	<i>to conjoin,</i>	<i>on</i>	craindre	13.
Conquérir,	<i>to conquer,</i>	<i>on</i>	acquérir	2.
Consentir,	<i>to consent,</i>	<i>on</i>	sentir	41.
Construire,	<i>to construct,</i>	<i>on</i>	instruire	21.
Contraindre,	<i>to constrain,</i>	<i>on</i>	craindre	13.
Contenir,	<i>to contain,</i>	<i>on</i>	tenir	43.
Contredire, *	<i>to contradict,</i>	<i>on</i>	dire	16.
Contrefaire,	<i>to mimic,</i>	<i>on</i>	faire,	19.
Contrevenir,	<i>to contravene,</i>	<i>on</i>	tenir	43.
Convaincre,	<i>to convince,</i>	<i>on</i>	vaincre	45.
Convenir,	<i>to agree,</i>	<i>on</i>	tenir	43.
Correspondre,	<i>to correspond,</i>	<i>on</i>	vendre	47.
Corrompre,	<i>to corrupt,</i>	<i>on</i>	rompre	39.

\* But it makes in the second person plural of the indicative and of the imperative *contredisex*.

X, CONNAÎTRE, *to know*.*Inf.* Connaître, *to know*. *Ger.* connaissant, *knowing*.*Part.* connu, *known*.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

	1	2	3	1	2	3
<i>Pres.</i> Je connai	-s,	s,	t ;	connaiss-ons,	ez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i> Je connaiss-ais,	ais,	ait ;	connaiss-ions,	iez,	aient.	
<i>Pret.</i> Je conn	-us,	us,	ut ;	conn -ûmes,ûtes,	urent.	
<i>Fut.</i> Je connaît -rai,	ras,	ra ;	connaît -rons,	rez,	ront.	
<i>Cond.</i> Je connaît -rais,	rais,	rait ;	connaît -rions,	riez,	raient.	
<i>S. P.</i> Je connaiss-e,	es,	e ;	connaiss-ions,	iez,	ent.	
<i>Pret.</i> Je conn	-usse,usses,	ût ;	conn -ussions,ussiez,	ussent.		
<i>Imper.</i> connai	-s,	sse ;	connaiss-ons,	ez,	ent.	

XI. COUDRE, *to sew*.*Inf.* Coudre, *to sew*. *Ger.* cousant, *sewing*. *Part.* cousu, *sewed*.

<i>Pres.</i> Je cou	-ds,	ds,	d ;	cous -ons,	ez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i> Je cous -ais,	ais,	ait ;	cous -ions,	iez,	aient.	
<i>Pret.</i> Je cous -is,	is,	it ;	cous -îmes,	îtes,	irent.	
<i>Fut.</i> Je coud -rai,	ras,	ra ;	coud -rons,	rez,	ront.	
<i>Cond.</i> Je coud -rais,	rais,	rait ;	coud -rions,	riez,	raient.	
<i>S. P.</i> Je cous -e,	es,	e ;	cous -ions,	iez,	ent.	
<i>Pret.</i> Je cous -isse,	isses,	ît ;	cous -issions,	issiez,	issent.	
<i>Imper.</i> cou	-ds,	se ;	cous -ons,	ez,	ent.	

XII. COURIR, *to run*.*Inf.* Courir, *to run*. *Ger.* courant, *running*. *Part.* couru, *run*.

<i>Pres.</i> Je cou	-rs,	rs,	rt ;	cour -ons,	ez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i> Je cour -ais,	ais,	ait ;	cour -ions,	iez,	aient.	
<i>Pret.</i> Je cour -us,	us,	ut ;	cour -ûmes,	ûtes,	urent.	
<i>Fut.</i> Je cour -rai,	ras,	ra ;	cour -rons,	rez,	ront.	
<i>Cond.</i> Je cour -rais,	rais,	rait ;	cour -rions,	riez,	raient.	
<i>S. P.</i> Je cour -e,	es,	e ;	cour -ions,	iez,	ent.	
<i>Pret.</i> Je cour -usse,	usses,	ût ;	cour -ussions,ussiez,	ussent.		
<i>Imper.</i> cour	-s,	e ;	cour -ons,	ez,	ent.	

XIII. CRAINDRE, *to fear*.

*Inf.* Craindre, *to fear*. *Ger.* craignant, *fearing*. *Part.* craint, *feared*.

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
<i>Pres.</i> Je crai	-ns,	ns,	nt;	crai -gnons,	gnez,	gnent.
<i>Imp.</i> Je crai	-gnais,	gnais,	gnait;	crai -gnions,	gniez,	gnaient.
<i>Pret.</i> Je crai	-gnis,	gnis,	gnit;	crai -gnîmes,	gnîtes,	gnirent.
<i>Fut.</i> Je craind-	rai,	ras,	ra;	craind-rions,	rez,	ront.
<i>Cond.</i> Je craind-	rais,	rais,	rait;	craind-rions,	riez,	raient.
<i>S. P.</i> Je crai	-gne,	gnes,	gne;	crai -gnions,	gniez,	gnaient.
<i>Pret.</i> Je crai	-gnisse,	gnisses,	gnît;	crai -gnissions,	gnissiez,	gnissent.
<i>Imper.</i> crai	-ns,	gne;	crai -gnons,	gnez,	gnent.	

XIV. CROIRE, *to believe*.

*Inf.* Croire, *to believe*. *Ger.* croyant, *believing*. *Part.* cru, *believed*.

<i>Pres.</i>	Je croi	-s,	s,	t;	cro	-yons,	yez,	ient.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je croy	-ais,	ais,	ait;	croy	-ions,	iez,	aient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je cr	-us,	us,	ût;	cr	-ûmes,	ûtes,	urent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je croi	-rai,	ras,	ra;	croi	-rons,	rez,	ront.
<i>Cond.</i>	Je croi	-rais,	rais,	rait;	croi	-rions,	riez,	raient.
<i>S. P.</i>	Je croi	-e	es,	e;	cro	-yions,	yez,	ient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je cr	-usse,	usses,	ût;	cr	-ussions,	ussiez,	ussent.
<i>Imper.</i>	croi	-s,	e;	ero	-yons,	yez,	ient.	

Croître, *to grow*, on connaître 11.

Couvrir. *to cover*, on offrir 28.

XV. CUEILLIR, *to gather*.

*Inf.* Cueillir, *to gather*. *Ger.* cueillant, *gathering*. *Part.* cueilli, *gathered*.

<i>Pres.</i>	Je cueill	-e,	es,	e;	cueill	-ons,	ez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je cueill	-ais,	ais,	ait;	cueill	-ions,	iez,	aient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je cueill	-is,	is,	it;	cueill	-îmes,	îtes,	irent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je cueille-	rai,	ras,	ra;	cueille-	rons,	rez,	ront.
<i>Cond.</i>	Je cueille-	rais,	rais,	rait;	cueille-	rions,	riez,	raient.
<i>S. P.</i>	Je cueill	-e,	es,	e;	cueill	-ions,	iez,	ent.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je cueill	-isse,	isses,	ît;	cueill	-issions,	issiez,	issent.
<i>Imper.</i>	cueill	-e,	e;	cueill	-ons,	ez,	ent.	

Cuire,	to cook,	<i>on</i> instruire	21.
Décevoir,	to deceive,	<i>on</i> recevoir	35.—
Découdre,	to unsew,	<i>on</i> coudre	11.
Découvrir,	to discover,	<i>on</i> offrir	28.
Décrire,	to describe,	<i>on</i> écrire	17.
Décroître,	to decrease,	<i>on</i> connaître	10.
Dédire *,	to unsay,	<i>on</i> dire	16.
Déduire,	to deduct,	<i>on</i> instruire	21.
Défaire,	to undo,	<i>on</i> faire	19.
Défendre,	to defend,	<i>on</i> vendre	47.
Déjoindre,	to disjoin,	<i>on</i> craindre	13.
Démentir,	to belie,	<i>on</i> sentir	41.
Démettre,	to put out,	<i>on</i> mettre	23.
Se Démettre,	to resign,	<i>on</i> mettre	23.
Dépeindre,	to depict,	<i>on</i> craindre	13.
Dépendre,	to depend,	<i>on</i> vendre	47.
Déplaire,	to displease,	<i>on</i> plaire	30.
Se Déprendre,	to loose,	<i>on</i> prendre	33.
Désapprendre,	to unlearn,	<i>on</i> prendre	33.
Descendre,	to descend,	<i>on</i> vendre	47.
Desservir,	to disserve, &c.	<i>on</i> sentir	41.
Déteindre,	to discharge colour,	<i>on</i> craindre	13.
Détendre,	to unbend,	<i>on</i> vendre	47.
Détordre,	to untwist,	<i>on</i> vendre	47.
Détruire,	to destroy,	<i>on</i> instruire	21.
Devenir,	to become,	<i>on</i> tenir	43.
Dévêtir,	to divest,	<i>on</i> revêtir	37.
Devoir,	to owe,	<i>on</i> recevoir	35.

## XVI. DIRE, to say.

*Inf.* Dire, to say. *Ger.* disant, saying. *Part. dit*, said.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
<i>Pres.</i> Je d	-is,	is,	it;	di	-sons,	tes, sent.
<i>Imp.</i> Je dis	-ais,	ais,	ait;	dis	-ions,	iez, aient.
<i>Pret.</i> Je d	-is,	is,	it;	d	-îmes,	îtes, irent.
<i>Fut.</i> Je di	-rai,	ras,	ra;	di	-rons,	rez, ront.
<i>Cond.</i> Je di	-raia,	rais,	rait;	di	-rions,	riez, raient.

\* See the observation upon *contredire*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
<i>S. P.</i> Je dis -e,	es,	e ;		dis -ions,	iez,	ent.
<i>Pret.</i> Je d -isse,	isses,	ît ;		d -issions,	issiez,	issent.
<i>Imper.</i> d	-is,	ise ;		d -isons,	ites,	isent.
Disconvenir,	<i>to disagree,</i>			<i>on</i>	tenir	43.
Discourir,	<i>to discourse,</i>			<i>on</i>	courir	12.
Disjoindre,	<i>to disjoin,</i>			<i>on</i>	craindre	13.
Disparaître,	<i>to disappear,</i>			<i>on</i>	connaître	10.
Dissoudre,	<i>to dissolve,</i>			<i>on</i>	absoudre	1.
Distraire,	<i>to distract,</i>			<i>on</i>	traire	44.
Dormir,	<i>to sleep,</i>			<i>on</i>	sentir	41.
S'ébattre *,	<i>to rejoice,</i>			<i>on</i>	battre	5.
Ebouillir,	<i>to boil down,</i>			<i>on</i>	bouillir	7
Econduire,	<i>to get rid of,</i>			<i>on</i>	instruire	21

XVII. ECRIRE, *to write.*

*Inf.* Ecrire, *to write.* *Ger.* écrivant, *writing* *Part.*  
écrit, *written.*

<i>Pres.</i> J'écri	-s,	s,	t ;	écriv	-ons,	ez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i> J'écriv	-ais,	ais,	ait ;	écriv	-ions,	iez,	aient.
<i>Pret.</i> J'écriv	-is,	is,	it ;	écriv	-îmes,	îtes,	irent.
<i>Fut.</i> J'écri	-rai,	ras,	ra ;	écri	-rons,	rez,	ront.
<i>Cond.</i> J'écri	-rais,	rais,	rait ;	écri	-rions,	riez,	raient.
<i>S. P.</i> J'écriv	-e,	es,	e ;	écriv	-ions,	iez,	ent.
<i>Pret.</i> J'écriv	-isse,	isses,	ît ;	écriv	-issions,	issiez,	issent.
<i>Imper.</i> écri		-s,	ve ;	écriv	-ions,	ez,	ent.

Elire,	<i>to elect,</i>	<i>on</i>	lire	22.
Emoudre,	<i>to grind (knives),</i>	<i>on</i>	moudre	24.
Emouvoir,	<i>to stir up,</i>	<i>on</i>	mouvoir	26.
Encourir,	<i>to incur,</i>	<i>on</i>	courir	12.
Endormir,	<i>to make sleep,</i>	<i>on</i>	sentir	41.
Enfreindre,	<i>to infringe,</i>	<i>on</i>	craindre	13.
S'enfuir,	<i>to run away,</i>	<i>on</i>	fuir	20.
Enjoindre,	<i>to enjoin,</i>	<i>on</i>	craindre	13.
S'enquérir,	<i>to enquire,</i>	<i>on</i>	acquérir	2.
S'ensuivre,	<i>to follow,</i>	<i>on</i>	suiivre	42.

\* An old expression almost out of use.

Entendre,	<i>to hear,</i>	<i>on rendre</i>	47.
S'entremettre,	<i>to interpose,</i>	<i>on mettre</i>	23.
Entreprendre,	<i>to undertake,</i>	<i>on prendre</i>	33.
Entretenir,	<i>to keep,</i>	<i>on tenir</i>	43.
Entrevoir,	<i>to have a glimpse,</i>	<i>on voir</i>	49.
Entr'ouvrir,	<i>to open a little,</i>	<i>on offrir</i>	28.

XVIII. ENVOYER, *to send.*

*Inf.* Envoyer, *to send.* *Ger.* envoyant, *sending.* *Part.* envoyé, *sent.*

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.			
	1	2	3	1	2	3	
<i>Pres.</i> J'envoie	-e,	es,	e ;	envo -yons,	yez,	ient.	
<i>Imp.</i> J'envoyais	-ais,	ais,	ait ;	envoy -ions,	iez,	aient.	
<i>Pret.</i> J'envoyai	-ai,	as,	a ;	envoy -âmes,	âtes,	èrent.	
<i>Fut.</i> J'enverrai	-rai,	ras,	ra ;	enver -rons,	rez,	ront.	
<i>Cond.</i> J'enverrais	-rais,	rais,	rait ;	enver -rions ;	riez,	raient.	
<i>S. P.</i> J'envoie	-e,	es,	e ;	envo -yions ;	yiez,	ient.	
<i>Pret.</i> J'envoyasse	-asse,	asses,	ât ;	envoy -assions,	assiez,	assent.	
<i>Imper.</i> envoie	-e,	e ;	envo -yons,	yez,	ient.		
Equivaloir,	<i>to be equal,</i>			<i>on valoir</i>		46.	
Eteindre,	<i>to extinguish,</i>			<i>on craindre</i>		13.	
Etendre,	<i>to extend,</i>			<i>on vendre</i>		47.	
Etre,	<i>to be,</i>			See ch. v. sec. 3.			
Exclure,	<i>to exclude,</i>			<i>on conclure</i>		8.	
Extraire,	<i>to extract,</i>			<i>on traire</i>		44.	

XIX. FAIRE, *to do.*

*Inf.* Faire, *to do.* *Ger.* faisant, *doing.* *Part.* fait, *done.*

<i>Pres.</i> Je fais	-s,	s,	t ;	fais	-sons,	tes,	font.
<i>Imp.</i> Je fais	-ais,	ais,	ait ;	fais	-ions,	iez,	aient.
<i>Pret.</i> Je fais	-is,	is,	it ;	fais	-îmes,	îtes,	irent.
<i>Fut.</i> Je ferai	-rai,	ras,	ra ;	ferai	-rons,	rez,	ront.
<i>Cond.</i> Je ferai	-rais,	rais,	rait ;	ferai	-rions,	riez,	raient.
<i>S. P.</i> Je fais	-asse,	asses,	asse ;	fais	-assions,	assiez,	assent.
<i>Pret.</i> Je fais	-isse,	isses,	it ;	fais	-issions,	issiez,	issent.
<i>Imper.</i> fais	-ais,	asse ;	fais	-aisons,	aitez,	assent.	

Feindre,	<i>to feign,</i>	<i>on craindre</i>	13.
Fendre,	<i>to cleave,</i>	<i>on vendre</i>	47.
Fondre,	<i>to melt,</i>	<i>on vendre</i>	47.

XX. FUIR, *to shun.*

*Inf.* Fuir, *to shun.* *Ger.* fuyant, *shunning.* *Part. fui,*  
*shunned.*

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

	1	2	3	1	2	3
<i>Pres.</i> Je fu	-is,	is,	it;	fu -yons,	yez,	ient.
<i>Imp.</i> Je fuy	-ais,	ais,	ait;	fuy -ions,	iez,	aient.
<i>Pret.</i> Je fu	-is,	is,	it;	fu -îmes,	îtes,	irent.
<i>Fut.</i> Je fui	-rai,	ras,	ra;	fui -rons,	rez,	ront.
<i>Cond.</i> Je fui	-rais,	rais,	rait;	fui -rions,	riez,	raient.
<i>S. P.</i> Je fui	-e,	es,	e;	fu -yions,	yez,	ient.
<i>Pret.</i> Je fu	-isse,	isses,	ît;	fu -issions,	issiez,	issent.
<i>Imper.</i> fu		-is,	ie;	fu -yons,	yez,	ient.

Inscrire, *to inscribe,* *on écrire* 17.

XXI. INSTRUIRE, *to instruct.*

*Inf.* Instruire, *to instruct.* *Ger.* instruisant, *instructing.*  
*Part.* instruit, *instructed.*

<i>Pres.</i> J'instrui	-s,	s,	t;	instrui -sons,	sez,	sent.
<i>Imp.</i> J'instruis	-ais,	ais,	ait;	instrui -sions,	siez,	saient.
<i>Pret.</i> J'instruis	-is,	is,	it;	instruis -îmes,	îtes,	irent.
<i>Fut.</i> J'instrui	-rai,	ras,	ra;	instrui -rons,	rez,	ront.
<i>Cond.</i> J'instrui	-rais,	rais,	rait;	instrui -rions,	riez,	raient.
<i>S. P.</i> J'instruis	-e,	es,	e;	instruis -ions,	iez,	ent.
<i>Pret.</i> J'instruis	-isse,	isses,	ît;	instruis -issions,	issiez,	issent.
<i>Imper.</i> instrui		-s,	se;	instrui -sons,	sez,	sent.

Interdire \*, *to forbid,* *on dire* 16.  
 Interrompre, *to interrupt,* *on rompre,* 39.  
 Intervenir, *to intervene,* *on tenir* 43.  
 Introduire, *to introduce,* *on instruire* 21.  
 Joindre, *to join,* *on craindre* 13.

\* See the observation upon *contredire*, p. 84.

## XXII. LIRE, to read.

*Inf.* Lire, to read. *Ger.* lisant, reading. *Part.* lu, read.

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
<i>Pres.</i>	Je l -is,	is,	it;	lis -ons,	ez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je lis -ais,	ais,	ait;	lis -ions,	iez,	aient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je l -us,	us,	ut;	l -ûmes,	ûtes,	urent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je li -rai,	ras,	ra;	li -rons,	rez,	ront.
<i>Cond.</i>	Je li -rais,	rais,	rait;	li -rions,	riez,	raient.
<i>S. P.</i>	Je lis -e,	es,	e;	lis -ions,	iez,	ent.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je l -usse,	usses,	ût;	l -ussions,	ussiez,	ussent.
<i>Imper.</i>	l	-is,	ise;	lis -ons,	ez,	ent.
<i>Luire</i> *,		<i>to shine,</i>		<i>on instruire</i>		21.
<i>Maintenir,</i>		<i>to maintain,</i>		<i>on tenir</i>		43.
<i>Maudire</i> †,		<i>to curse,</i>		<i>on dire</i>		16.
<i>Méconnaître,</i>		<i>to mistake,</i>		<i>on connaître</i>		10.
<i>Médire</i> ‡,		<i>to slander,</i>		<i>on dire</i>		16.
<i>Mentir,</i>		<i>to tell lies,</i>		<i>on sentir</i>		41
<i>Se méprendre,</i>		<i>to mistake,</i>		<i>on prendre</i>		33.
<i>mésosfrir,</i>		<i>to bid too low.</i>		<i>on offrir</i>		28

## XXIII. METTRE, to put.

*Inf.* Mettre, to put. *Ger.* mettant, putting. *Part.* mis, put.

<i>Pres.</i>	Je me -ts,	ts,	t;	mett -ons,	ez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je mett -ais,	ais,	ait;	mett -ions,	iez,	aient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je m -is,	is,	it;	m -îmes,	îtes,	irent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je mett -rai,	ras,	ra;	mett -rons,	rez,	ront.
<i>Cond.</i>	Je mett -rais,	rais,	rait;	mett -rions,	riez,	raient.
<i>S. P.</i>	Je mett -e,	es,	e;	mett -ions,	iez,	ent.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je m -isse,	isses,	ît;	m -issions,	issiez,	issent.
<i>Imper.</i>	me	-ts,	-tte;	mett -ons,	ez,	ent.
	Mordre,	to bite,		on vendre	47.	

\* But the *Part.* is *lui*, unlike *instruit*; and it has no preterite tenses.

† *Maudire* makes in the Gerund, *maudissant*; in the plural of the Indicative present, *nous maudissons, vous maudissez, ils maudissent*; in the Imperfect, *j'é maudissais*, in the Pres. and Pret. Subj. *je maudisse*; and in the Imperative *qu'il maudisse, maudissons, maudissez, qu'ils maudissent*, like a regular verb in 12.

‡ See the observation upon *contredire*.



## XXIV. MOUDRE, to grind.

*Inf.* Moudre, to grind. *Ger.* moulant, grinding.  
moulu, ground.

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.		
	1	2	3	1	2	
<i>Pres.</i>	Je mou	-ds,	ds,	d ;	moul -ons,	ez,
<i>Imp.</i>	Je moul	-ais,	ais,	ait ;	moul -ions,	iez,
<i>Pret.</i>	Je moul	-us,	us,	ut ;	moul -ûmes,	ûtes,
<i>Fut.</i>	Je moud	-rai,	ras,	ra ;	moud -rons,	rez,
<i>Cond.</i>	Je moud	-rais,	rais,	rait ;	moud -rions,	riez,
<i>S. P.</i>	Je moul	-e,	es,	e ;	moul -ions,	iez,
<i>Pret.</i>	Je moul	-usse,	usses,	ût ;	moul -ussions,	ussiez,
<i>Imper.</i>	mou		-ds,	le ;	moul -ons,	ez,

## XXV. MOURIR, to die.

*Inf.* Mourir, to die. *Ger.* mourant, dying.  
mort, dead.

<i>Pres.</i>	Je meu	-rs,	rs,	rt ;	mour -ons,	ez,	m
<i>Imp.</i>	Je mour	-ais,	ais,	ait ;	mour -ions,	iez,	ai
<i>Pret.</i>	Je mour	-us,	us,	ut ;	mour -ûmes,	ûtes,	u
<i>Fut.</i>	Je mour	-rai,	ras,	ra ;	mour -rons,	rez,	re
<i>Cond.</i>	Je mour	-rais,	rais,	rait ;	mour -rions,	riez,	re
<i>S. P.</i>	Je meur	-e,	es,	e ;	mour -ions,	iez,	m
<i>Pret.</i>	Je mour	-usse,	usses,	ût ;	mour -ussions,	ussiez,	u
<i>Imper.</i>	meur		-s,	e ;	mour -ons,	ez,	m

## XXVI. MOUVOIR, to move.

*Inf.* Mouvoir, to move. *Ger.* mouvant, moving.  
mu, moved.

<i>Pres.</i>	Je m	-eus,	eus,	eut ;	mouv -ons,	ez,	m
<i>Imp.</i>	Je mouv	-ais,	ais,	ait ;	mouv -ions,	iez,	ai
<i>Pret.</i>	Je m	-us,	us,	ut ;	m -ûmes,	ûtes,	u
<i>Fut.</i>	Je mouv	-rai,	ras,	ra ;	mouv -rons,	rez,	re
<i>Cond.</i>	Je mouv	-rais,	rais,	rait ;	mouv -rions,	riez,	re
<i>S. P.</i>	Je meuv	-e,	es,	e ;	mouv -ions,	iez,	m
<i>Pret.</i>	Je m	-usse,	usses,	ût ;	muss -ions,	iez,	er
<i>Imper.</i>	meu		-s,	ve ;	mouv -ons,	ez,	m

XXVII. NAITRE, *to be born.**Inf.* Naître, *to be born.* *Ger.* naissant, *being born.**Part.* né, *born.*

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
<i>Pres.</i> Je nai	-s,	s,	t ;	naiss-ons,	ez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i> Je naiss	-ais,	ais,	ait ;	naiss-ions,	iez,	aient.
<i>Pret.</i> Je naqu	-is,	is,	it ;	naqu-îmes,	îtes,	irent.
<i>Fut.</i> Je naît	-rai,	ras,	ra ;	naît -rons,	rez,	ront.
<i>Cond.</i> Je naît	-rais,	rais,	rait ;	naît -rions,	riez,	raient.
<i>S. P.</i> Je naiss	-e,	es,	e ;	naiss-ions,	iez,	ent.
<i>Pret.</i> Je naqu	-isse,	isses,	ît ;	naqu-issions,	issiez,	issent.
<i>Imper.</i> nai		-s,	sse ;	naiss-ons,	ez,	ent.
Nuire,*		<i>to hurt,</i>		<i>on instruire</i>		21.
Obtenir,		<i>to obtain,</i>		<i>on tenir</i>		43.

XXVIII. OFFRIR, *to offer.**Inf.* Offrir, *to offer.* *Ger.* offrant, *offering.* *Part.* offert, *offered.*

<i>Pres.</i> J'offr	-e,	es,	e ;	offr -ons,	ez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i> J'offr	-ais,	ais,	ait ;	offr -ions,	iez,	aient.
<i>Pret.</i> J'offr	-is,	is,	it ;	offr -îmes,	îtes,	irent.
<i>Fut.</i> J'offri	-rai,	ras,	ra ;	offri -rons,	rez,	ront.
<i>Cond.</i> J'offri	-rais,	rais,	rait ;	offri -rions,	riez,	raient.
<i>S. P.</i> J'offr	-e,	es,	e ;	offr -ions,	iez,	ent.
<i>Pret.</i> J'offr	-isse,	isses,	ît ;	offr -issions,	issiez,	issent.
<i>Imper.</i> offr		-e,	e ;	offr -ons,	ez,	ent.
Omettre,		<i>to omit,</i>		<i>on mettre</i>		23.
Ouvrir,		<i>to open,</i>		<i>on offrir</i>		28.

XXIX. PAÎTRE, *to graze.**Inf.* Paître, *to graze.* *Ger.* paissant, *grazing.* *Part.* pu, *grazed.*

<i>Pres.</i> Je pai	-s,	s,	t ;	paiss -ons,	ez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i> Je paiss	-ais,	'ais,	ait ;	paiss -ions,	iez,	aient.
<i>Pret.</i> None						

\* But the Participle is *nui*, unlike *instruit*.

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.	
	1	2	3	1	2
<i>Fut.</i>	Je paît	-rai,	ras, ra;	paît	-rons, rez,
<i>Cond.</i>	Je paît	-rais,	rais, rait;	paît	-rions, riez,
<i>S. P.</i>	Je paiss	-e,	es, e;	paiss	-ions, iez,
<i>Pret. None.</i>					
<i>Imper.</i>	pai		-s, sse;	paiss	-ons, ez,
Paraître,		<i>to appear,</i>		<i>on connaître</i>	
Parcourir,		<i>to run over,</i>		<i>on courir</i>	
Partir,		<i>to set out,</i>		<i>on sentir</i>	
Parvenir,		<i>to arrive at</i>		<i>on tenir</i>	
Peindre,		<i>to paint,</i>		<i>on craindre</i>	
Pendre,		<i>to hang,</i>		<i>on vendre</i>	
Perdre,		<i>to lose,</i>		<i>on vendre</i>	
Permettre,		<i>to permit,</i>		<i>on mettre</i>	
Plaindre,		<i>to lament,</i>		<i>on craindre</i>	

XXX. PLAIRE, *to please.*

*Inf.* Plaire, *to please.* *Ger.* plaisant, *pleasing.* *Part.* *pleased.*

<i>Pres.</i>	Je plai	-s,	s,	t,	plais-ons,	ez,	e
<i>Imp.</i>	Je plais	-ais,	ais,	ait;	plais-ions,	iez,	a
<i>Pret.</i>	Je pl	-us,	us,	ut;	pl	-ûmes,	ûtes, u
<i>Fut.</i>	Je plai	-rai,	ras,	ra;	plai	-rons,	rez, r
<i>Cond.</i>	Je plai	-rais,	rais,	rait;	plai	-rions,	riez, r
<i>S. P.</i>	Je plai	-se,	ses,	se;	plais-ions,	iez,	e
<i>Pret.</i>	Je pl	-usse,	usses,	ût;	pl	-ussions,	ussiez, u
<i>Imper.</i>	plai		-s,	sse;	plais-ons,	ez,	e

Pondre,	<i>to lay eggs,</i>	<i>on vendre</i>
Poursuivre,	<i>to pursue,</i>	<i>on suivre</i>

XXXI. POURVOIR, *to provide.*

*Inf.* Pourvoir, *to provide.* *Ger.* pourvoyant. *Part.* pourvu.

<i>Pres.</i>	Je pourvoi	-s,	s,	t;	pourvo	-yons,	yez,
<i>Imp.</i>	Je pourvoy	-ais,	ais,	ait;	pourvoy	-ions,	iez,

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

	1	2	3	1	2	3
<i>Prët.</i> Je pourv	-us, us,	ut;		pourv -ûmes, ûtes,	urent.	
<i>Pât.</i> Je pourvoi-rai,	ras, ra;			pourvoi-rons, rez,	ront.	
<i>Cond.</i> Je pourvoi-rai,	rais, rait;			pourvoi-rions, riez,	raient.	
<i>S. P.</i> Je pourvoi-e,	es, e;			pourvoi-ions, iez,	ient.	
<i>Prët.</i> Je pourv	-usse, usses, ût;			pourv -ussions, ussiez, ussent.		
<i>Imper.</i> pourvoi	-s, e;			pourvo-yons, yez,	ient.	

XXXII. *POUVOIR, to be able.*

*Inf.* Pouvoir, *to be able.* *Ger.* pouvant. *Part.* pu.

<i>Prët.</i> Je peu	-x *, x,	t;	pouv-ons,	ez,	peuvent.
<i>Imp.</i> Je pouv	-ais, ais,	ait;	pouv-ions,	iez,	aient.
<i>Prët.</i> Je p	-us, us,	ut;	p -ûmes, ûtes,	ûrent.	
<i>Pât.</i> Je pour	-rai, ras,	ra;	pour -rons, rez,	ront.	
<i>Cond.</i> Je pour	-ras, rais,	rait;	pour -rions, riez,	raient.	
<i>S. P.</i> Je puiss	-e, es,	e;	puiss -ions, iez,	ent.	
<i>Prët.</i> Je p	-usse, usses, ût;	p	-ussions, ussiez,	ent.	
<i>Imper.</i> None.					

*Prédire* †, *to foretel,* *on dire* 16.

XXXIII. *PRENDRE, to take.*

*Inf.* Prendre, *to take.* *Ger.* prenant, *taking.* *Part.* pris, *taken.*

<i>Prët.</i> Je pren	-ds, ds,	d;	pren -ons,	ez,	nent.
<i>Imp.</i> Je pren	-ais, ais,	ait;	pren -ions, iez,	aient.	
<i>Prët.</i> Je pr	-is, is,	it;	pr -îmes, îtes,	îrent.	
<i>Pât.</i> Je prend	-rai, ras,	ra;	prend-rons, rez,	ront.	
<i>Cond.</i> Je prend	-rais, rais,	rait;	prend-rions, riez,	raient.	
<i>S. P.</i> Je pren	-e, es,	e;	pren -ions, iez,	nent.	
<i>Prët.</i> Je pr	-isse, isses, ît;	pr	-issions, issiez, issent.		
<i>Imper.</i> pren	-ds, ne;	pren	-ons, ez,	nent.	

*Prescrire,* *to prescribe* *on écrire* 17.

*Pressentir,* *to forebode,* *on sentir* 41.

*Prétendre,* *to pretend,* *on vendre* 47.

*Prévaloir* †, *to prevail,* *on valoir* 46.

*Prévoir,* *to anticipate,* *on tenir* 43.

We say more commonly *je puis*, instead of *je peux*.

† See the observation upon *contredire*.

‡ But it makes in the Subj. *pres. je prévale, tu prevales, &c.*

XXXIV. PREVOIR, *to foresee.*

*Inf.* Prévoir, *to foresee.* *Ger.* prévoyant. *Part.* prévu

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.			
	1	2	3	1	2	3	
<i>Pres.</i>	Je prévoi	-s,	s,	t ; prévo	-yons,	yez,	ient.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je prévoy	-ais,	ais,	ait ; prévoy	-ions,	iez,	aient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je prév	-is,	is,	it ; prév	-îmes,	îtes,	irent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je prévoi	-rai,	ras,	ra ; prévoi	-rons,	rez,	ront.
<i>Cond.</i>	Je prévoi	-rais,	rais,	rait ; prévoi	-rions,	riez,	raient.
<i>S. P.</i>	Je prevoi	-e,	es,	e ; prévo	-yions,	yiez,	ient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je prév	-isse,	isses,	it ; prév	-issions,	issiez,	issent.
<i>Imper.</i>	prévoi	-s,	e ; prévo	-yons,	yez,	ient.	

Produire,	<i>to produce,</i>	<i>on instruire</i>	21.
Promettre,	<i>to promise,</i>	<i>on mettre</i>	23.
Promouvoir,	<i>to promote,</i>	<i>on mouvoir</i>	26.
Proscrire,	<i>to proscribe,</i>	<i>on écrire</i>	17.
Provenir,	<i>to proceed,</i>	<i>on tenir</i>	43.
Rabattre,	<i>to abate,</i>	<i>on battre</i>	5.
Rapprendre,	<i>to learn again,</i>	<i>on prendre</i>	33.
Se rasseoir,	<i>to sit down again,</i>	<i>on s'asseoir</i>	4.
Rebattre,	<i>to beat again,</i>	<i>on battre</i>	5.
Reboire,	<i>to drink again,</i>	<i>on boire</i>	6.
Rebouillir,	<i>to boil again,</i>	<i>on bouillir</i>	7.

XXXV. RECEVOIR, *to receive.*

*Inf.* Recevoir, *to receive.* *Ger.* recevant, *receiving.* *Part.* reçu, *received.*

<i>Pres.</i>	Je reç	-ois, ois, oit ; re	-cevons, cevez, çoivent
<i>Imp.</i>	Je recev-	ais, ais, ait ; recev-	ions, iez, aient.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je reç	-us, us, ut ; reç	-ûmes, ûtes, urent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je recev-	rai, ras, ra ; recev-	rons, rez, ront.
<i>Cond.</i>	Je recev-	rais, rais, rait ; recev-	rions, riez, raient.
<i>S. P.</i>	Je reç	-oive, oives, oive ; rec	-evions, eviez, oivent.
<i>Pret.</i>	Je reç	-usse, usses, ût ; reç	-ussions, ussiez, ussent.
<i>Imper.</i>	reç	-ois, oive ; re	-cevons, cevez, çoivent.
Reconduire,	<i>to lead back,</i>	<i>on instruire</i>	21.
Reconnaître,	<i>to recognize,</i>	<i>on connaître</i>	10.

Reconquérir,	<i>to reconquer,</i>	<i>on acquérir</i>	2.
Recoudre,	<i>to sew again,</i>	<i>on coudre</i>	11.
Recourir,	<i>to have recourse,</i>	<i>on courir</i>	12.
Recouvrir,	<i>to cover over,</i>	<i>on offrir</i>	28.
Récrire,	<i>to write anew,</i>	<i>on écrire</i>	17.
Recueillir,	<i>to gather,</i>	<i>on cueillir</i>	15.
Recuire,	<i>to cook again,</i>	<i>on instruire</i>	21.
Redéfaire,	<i>to undo again,</i>	<i>on faire</i>	19.
Redescendre,	<i>to come down again,</i>	<i>on vendre</i>	47.
Redevoir,	<i>to owe still,</i>	<i>on recevoir</i>	35.
Redire,	<i>to say again,</i>	<i>on dire</i>	16.
Redormir,	<i>to sleep again,</i>	<i>on sentir</i>	41.
Réduire,	<i>to reduce,</i>	<i>on instruire</i>	21.
Refaire,	<i>to do again,</i>	<i>on faire</i>	19.
Befondre,	<i>to melt over,</i>	<i>on vendre</i>	47.
Rejoindre,	<i>to rejoin,</i>	<i>on craindre</i>	13.
Relire,	<i>to read over,</i>	<i>on lire</i>	22.
Reluire *,	<i>to glitter,</i>	<i>on instruire</i>	21.
Remettre,	<i>to replace,</i>	<i>on mettre</i>	23.
Remoudre,	<i>to grind again,</i>	<i>on moudre</i>	24.
Renaitre †,	<i>to be born again,</i>	<i>on naître</i>	27.
Rendormir,	<i>to make sleep again,</i>	<i>on sentir</i>	41.
Rendre,	<i>to return,</i>	<i>on vendre</i>	47.
Renduire,	<i>to plaster anew,</i>	<i>on instruire</i>	21.
Rentraire,	<i>to fine-draw,</i>	<i>on traire</i>	44.
Renvoyer,	<i>to send back,</i>	<i>on envoyer</i>	18.
Repâitre ‡,	<i>to feed,</i>	<i>on pâitre</i>	29.
Répandre,	<i>to spread,</i>	<i>on vendre</i>	47.
Reparaître,	<i>to reappear,</i>	<i>on connaître</i>	10.
Repartir,	<i>to set off again,</i>	<i>on sentir</i>	41.
Se repentir,	<i>to repent,</i>	<i>on sentir</i>	41.
Répondre,	<i>to answer,</i>	<i>on vendre</i>	47.
Reprendre,	<i>to take again,</i>	<i>on prendre</i>	21.
Reproduire,	<i>to reproduce,</i>	<i>on instruire</i>	33.
Requérir,	<i>to require,</i>	<i>on acquérir</i>	2.

\* See note on *luire*.

† But it has no Participle, and consequently no compound tenses.

‡ It makes in the Preterit of the Ind. *je repus*, and in the Pret. of the Subj. *je repusse*.

XXXVI. RESOUDRE, *to resolve*.*Inf.* Résoudre, *to resolve*. *Ger.* résolvant. *Part. p.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
	1	2	3	1	2
<i>Pres.</i>	Je résou -ds,	ds,	d ;	résolv -ons,	ez,
<i>Imp.</i>	Je résolv -ais,	ais,	ait ;	résolv -ions,	iez,
<i>Pret.</i>	Je résol -us,	us,	ut ;	résol -ûmes,	ûtes,
<i>Fut.</i>	Je résoud -rai,	ras,	ra ;	résoud -rons,	rez,
<i>Cond.</i>	Je résoud -rais,	rais,	rait ;	résoud -rions,	riez,
<i>S. P.</i>	Je résolv -e,	es,	e ;	résolv -ions,	iez,
<i>Pret.</i>	Je résol -usse,	usses,	ût ;	résol -ussions,	ussiez,
<i>Imper.</i>	réso	-uds,	lve ;	résolv -ons,	ez,

Ressentir,	<i>to feel,</i>	<i>on sentir</i>
Ressortir,	<i>to go out again,</i>	<i>on sentir</i>
Se ressouvenir,	<i>to remember,</i>	<i>on tenir</i>
Restreindre,	<i>to restrain,</i>	<i>on craindre</i>
Retenir,	<i>to retain,</i>	<i>on tenir</i>
Retordre,	<i>to twist again,</i>	<i>on vendre</i>
Retraire,	<i>to redeem,</i>	<i>on traire</i>
Revaloir,	<i>to return like for like,</i>	<i>on valoir</i>
Revendre,	<i>to sell again,</i>	<i>on vendre</i>
Revenir,	<i>to come back,</i>	<i>on tenir</i>

XXXVII. REVETIR, *to invest*.*Inf.* Revêtir, *to invest*. *Ger.* revêtant. *Part. p.*

<i>Pres.</i>	Je revê -ts,	ts,	t ;	revêt -ons,	ez,	e
<i>Imp.</i>	Je revêt -ais,	ais,	ait ;	revêt -ions,	iez,	a
<i>Pret.</i>	Je revêt -is,	is,	it ;	revêt -îmes,	îtes,	i
<i>Fut.</i>	Je revêti -rai,	ras,	ra ;	revêti -rons,	rez,	r
<i>Cond.</i>	Je revêti -rais,	rais,	rait ;	revêti -rions,	riez,	r
<i>S. P.</i>	Je revêt -e,	es,	e ;	revêt -ions,	iez,	e
<i>Pret.</i>	Je revêt -isse,	isses,	ît ;	revêt -issions,	issiez,	is
<i>Imper.</i>	revêt	-s,	e ;	revêt -ons,	ez,	e

Revivre,	<i>to revive,</i>	<i>on vivre</i>
Revoir,	<i>to see again,</i>	<i>on voir</i>

XXXVIII. RIRE, *to laugh.*

Rire, *to laugh.* Ger. riant, *laughing.* Part. ri, *laughed.*

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.			
	1	2	3		1	2	3
Je r	-is,	is,	it ;	ri	-ons,	ez,	ent.
Je ri	-ais,	ais,	ait ;	ri	-ions,	iez,	aient.
Je r	-is,	is,	it ;	r	-îmes,	îtes,	irent.
Je ri	-rai,	ras,	ra ;	ri	-rons,	rez,	ront.
Je ri	-rais,	rais,	rait ;	ri	-rions,	riez,	raient.
Je ri	-e,	es,	e ;	ri	-ions,	iez,	ent.
Je r	-isse,	isses,	ît ;	r	-issions,	issiez,	issent.
r.	r	-is,	ie ;	ri	-ons,	ez,	ent.

XXXIX. ROMPRE, *to break.*

Rompre, *to break.* Ger. rompant, *breaking.* Part. rompu, *broken.*

Je romp	-s,	s,	t;	romp	-ons,	ez, ent.
Je romp	-ais,	ais,	ait;	romp	-ions,	iez, aient.
Je romp	-is,	is,	it;	romp	-îmes,	îtes, irent.
Je romp	-rai,	ras,	ra;	romp	-rons,	rez, ront.
Je romp	-rais,	rais,	rait;	romp	-rions,	riez, raient.
Je romp	-e,	es,	e;	romp	-ions,	iez, ent.
Je romp	-isse,	isses,	ît;	romp	-issions,	issiez, issent.
r.	romp	-s,	e;	romp	-ons,	ez, ent.

ouvrir,	<i>to open again,</i>	<i>on offrir</i>	28.
satisfaire,	<i>to satisfy,</i>	<i>on faire</i>	19.

XL. SAVOIR, *to know.*

Savoir, *to know.* Ger. sachant, *knowing.* Part. su, *known.*

Je sai	-s,	s,	t;	sav	-ons,	ez, ent.
Je sav	-ais,	ais,	ait;	sav	-ions,	iez, aient.
Je s	-us,	us,	ut;	s	-ûmes,	ûtes, urent.
Je sau	-rai,	ras,	ra;	sau	-rons,	rez, ront.
Je sau	-rais,	rais,	rait;	sau	-rions,	riez, raient.
Je sach	-e,	es,	e;	sach	-ions,	iez, ent.
Je s	-usse,	usses,	ût;	s	-ussions,	ussiez, ussent.
r.	sach	-e,	e;	sach	-ons,	ez, ent.



Secourir,	<i>to relieve,</i>	<i>on courir</i>	12.
Séduire,	<i>to seduce,</i>	<i>on instruire</i>	21.
S'ensuivre,	<i>to follow,</i>	<i>on suivre</i>	42.

XLI. SENTIR, *to smell or feel.*

*Inf.* Sentir, *to feel.* *Ger.* sentant, *feeling.* *Part.* senti, *felt.*

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
<i>Pres.</i> Je sen	-s,	s,	t ;	sent- ons,	ez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i> Je sent	-ais,	ais,	ait ;	sent- ions,	iez,	aient
<i>Pret.</i> Je sent	-is,	is,	it ;	sent- îmes,	îtes,	irent.
<i>Fut.</i> Je senti	-rai,	ras,	ra ;	sent- rons,	rez,	ront.
<i>Cond.</i> Je senti	-rais,	rais,	rait ;	sent- rions,	riez,	raient
<i>S. P.</i> Je sent	-e,	es,	e ;	sent- ions,	iez,	ent.
<i>Pret.</i> Je sent	-isse,	isses,	ît ;	sent- issions,	issiez,	issent
<i>Imper.</i> sen	-s,	te ;	sent-	ons,	-ez,	ent.

Servir,	<i>to serve,</i>	<i>on servir</i>	41.
Sortir,	<i>to go out,</i>	<i>on sortir</i>	41.
Souffrir,	<i>to suffer,</i>	<i>on sentir</i>	41.
Soumettre,	<i>to submit,</i>	<i>on mettre</i>	23.
Sourire,	<i>to smile,</i>	<i>on rire</i>	38.
Souscrire,	<i>to subscribe,</i>	<i>on écrire</i>	17.
Soustraire,	<i>to subtract,</i>	<i>on traire</i>	44.
Soutenir,	<i>to sustain,</i>	<i>on tenir</i>	43.
Se souvenir	<i>to remember,</i>	<i>on tenir</i>	43.
Subvenir,	<i>to succour,</i>	<i>on tenir</i>	43.
Suffire *,	<i>to suffice,</i>	<i>on confire</i>	9.

XLII. SUIVRE, *to follow.*

*Inf.* Suivre. *to follow.* *Ger.* suivant, *following.* *Part.* suivi, *followed.*

<i>Pres.</i> Je sui	-s,	s,	t ;	suiv -ons,	ez,	ent.
<i>Imp.</i> Je suiv	-ais,	ais,	ait ;	suiv -ions,	iez,	aient.
<i>Pret.</i> Je suiv	-is,	is,	it ;	suiv -îmes,	îtes,	irent.
<i>Fut.</i> Je suiv	-rai,	ras,	ra ;	suiv -rons,	rez,	ront.

\* But the participle is suffi.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
1	2	3	1	2	3
1. Je suiv -rais, rais, rait ;			suiv -rions, riez, raient.		
2. Je suiv -e, es, e ;			suiv -ions, iez, ent.		
3. Je suiv -isse, isses, ît ;			suiv -issions, issiez, issent.		
pr. sui	-s, ve ;		suiv -ons, ez, en*		
surfaire,	<i>to ask too much,</i>		on faire	19.	
surprendre,	<i>to surprise,</i>		on prendre	33.	
surseoir*,	<i>to supersede,</i>		on prévoir	34.	
survivre,	<i>to outlive,</i>		on vivre	48.	
suspendre,	<i>to suspend,</i>		on vendre	47.	
taire,	<i>to keep silent,</i>		on plaire	30.	
teindre,	<i>to dye,</i>		on craindre	13.	
tendre,	<i>to stretch,</i>		on vendre	47.	

XLIII. TENIR, *to hold.*

Tenir, *to hold.* Ger. tenant, *holding.* Part. tenu, *held.*

Je t	-iens, iens, ient ;	t	-enons, enez, iennent.
Je ten	-ais, ais, ait ;	ten	-ions, iez, aient.
Jet	-ins, ins, int ;	t	-inmes, intes, inrent.
Je tiend-rai,	ras, ra ;	tiend -rons,	rez, ront.
Je tiend-rai,	rais, rait ;	tiend -rions,	riez, raient.
Jet	-ienne, iennes, ienne ;	t	-enions, eniez, iennent.
Jet	-insse, insses, int ;	t	-inssions, inssiez, inssent.
r. t	-iens, ienne ;	t	-enons, enez, iennent.
l'ordre,	<i>to twist,</i>	on vendre	47.
traduire,	<i>to translate,</i>	on instruire	21.

XLIV. TRAIRE, *to milk.*

Traire, *to milk.* Ger. trayant, *milking.* Part. trait, *milked.*

1. Je trai	-s, s, t ;	tra	-yons, yez, yent.
2. Je tray	-ais, ais, ait ;	tray	-ions, iez, aient.
3. None.			
Je trai	-rai, ras, ra ;	tra	-rons, rez, ront.
4. Je trai	-rais, rais, rait ;	tra	-rions, riez, aient.

\* But its participle is *sursis*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
	1	2	3	1	2
<i>S. P.</i>	Je tray -e,	es,	e ;	tra -yons,	yez,
<i>Pret.</i>	<i>None.</i>				
<i>Imper.</i>	tra	-is,	ye ;	tra -yons,	yez,
	Transcrire,	<i>to transcribe,</i>		<i>on écrire</i>	
	Transmettre,	<i>to transmit,</i>		<i>on mettre</i>	
	Tressaillir *,	<i>to start,</i>		<i>on cueillir</i>	

XLV. VAINCRE, *to vanquish.*

*Inf.* Vaincre, *to vanquish.* *Ger.* vainquant, *vanqu*  
*Part.* vaincu, *vanquished.*

*Pres.* Je vain -cs, cs, c ; vainqu-ons, ez,  
*Imp.* Je vainqu-ais, ais, ait ; vainqu-ions, iez,  
*Pret.* Je vainqu-is, is, it ; vainqu-îmes, îtes,  
*Fut.* Je vainc -rai, ras, ra ; vainc -rons, rez,  
*Cond.* Je vainc -rais, rais, rait ; vainc -rions, riez,  
*S. P.* Je vainqu-e, es, e ; vainqu-ions, iez,  
*Pret.* Je vainqu-isse, isses, ît ; vainqu-issions, issiez,  
*Imper.* vain -cs, que ; vainqu-ons, ez,

XLVI. VALOIR, *to be worth.*

*Inf.* Valoir, *to be worth.* *Ger.* valant, *being worth.*  
*valu, been worth.*

*Pres.* Je vau -x, x, t ; val -ons, ez, e  
*Imp.* Je val -ais, ais, ait ; val -ions, iez, a  
*Pret.* Je val -us, us, ut ; val -ûmes, ûtes, u  
*Fut.* Je vaud-rai, ras, ra ; vaud-rons, rez, r  
*Cond.* Je vaud-rai, ras, rait ; vaud-rions, riez, r  
*S. P.* Je vaill-e, es, e ; val -ions, iez, v  
*Pret.* Je val -usse, usses, ût ; val -ussions, ussiez, u  
*Imper.* *None.*

XLVII. VENDRE, *to sell.*

*Inf.* Vendre, *to sell.* *Ger.* vendant, *selling.* *Part.*  
*sold.*

*Pres.* Je ven -ds, ds, d ; vend-ons, ez, e  
*Imp.* Je vend-ais, ais, ait ; vend-ions, iez, a

\* It makes in the future, *je tressaillirai*, and in the conditional, *tressaillirais*.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
1	2	3	1	2	3
e vend-is,	is,	it ;	vend-îmes,	îtes,	irent.
e vend-rai,	ras,	ra ;	vend-rions,	rez,	ront.
e vend-rai,	rais,	rait ;	vend-rions,	riez,	raient.
e vend-e,	es,	e ;	vend-ions,	iez,	ent.
e vend-isse,	isses,	ît ;	vend-issions,	issiez,	issent.
ven	-ds,	de ;	vend-ons,	ez,	ent.
r,	to come,		on tenir		43.

XLVIII. VIVRE, *to live.*

re, *to live.* Ger. vivant, *living.* Part. vécu, *lived.*

e v	-is,	is,	it ;	viv	-ons,	ez,	ent.
e viv	-ais,	ais,	ait ;	viv	-ions,	iez,	aient.
e véc	-us,	us,	ut ;	véc	-ûmes,	ûtes,	urent.
e viv	-rai,	ras,	ra ;	viv	-rons,	rez,	ront.
e viv	-rais,	rais,	rait ;	viv	-rions,	riez,	raient.
e viv	-e,	es,	e ;	viv	-ions,	iez,	ent.
e véc	-usse,	usses,	ût ;	véc	-ussions,	ussiez,	ussent.
	vis,	vive ;	viv	-ons	ez,	ent.	

XLIX. VOIR, *to see.*

oir, *to see.* Ger. voyant, *seeing.* Part. vu, *seen.*

e voi	-s,	s,	t ;	voy	-ons,	ez,	voient.
e voy	-ais,	ais,	ait ;	voy	-ions,	iez,	aient.
e v	-is,	is,	it ;	v	-îmes,	îtes,	irent.
e ver	-rai,	ras,	ra ;	ver	-rons,	rez,	ront.
e ver	-rais,	rais,	rait ;	ver	-rions,	riez,	raient.
e voi	-e,	es,	e ;	vo	-yions,	yez,	ient.
e v	-isse,	isses,	ît ;	v	-issions,	issiez,	issent.
voi	s,	e ;	vo	-yons,	yez,	voient.	

L. VOULOIR, *to be willing.*

loir, *to be willing.* Ger. voulant, *being willing.*

Part. voulu, *been willing.*

e veu	-x,	x,	t ;	voul	-ons,	ez,	veulent.
e voul	-ais,	ais,	ait ;	voul	-ions,	iez,	aient.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
<i>Pret.</i> Je vout	-us,	us,	ut;	vout -ûmes,	ûtes,	urent.
<i>Fut.</i> Je vout	-rai,	ras,	ra;	vout -rons,	rez,	ront.
<i>Cond.</i> Je vout	-rais,	rais,	rait;	vout -rions,	riez,	raient.
<i>S. P.</i> Je veuill	-e,	es,	e;	voul -ions,	iez,	veuillent.
<i>Pret.</i> Je vout	-usse,	usses,	ût;	voul -ussions,	ussiez,	ussent.
<i>Imper.</i> veuill	-e,	e;	veuill -ons,	ez,	ent.	

*The following Verbs are of common Use only in the Tense and Persons hereafter mentioned.*

*Inf.* braire, to bray like an ass. *Pres.* il brait, ils braient. *Fut.* il braira, ils brairont. *Cond.* il brairait, ils brairaient.

*Inf.* bruire, to rustle. *Ger.* bruyant. *Imp.* il bruysait, ils bruysaient.

*Inf.* Choir, to fall. *Part.* chu.

*Inf.* échoir, to expire, to fall by lot, to happen. *Ger.* échéant. *Part.* échu. *Pres.* il échoit. *Pret.* j'échus, &c. *Fut.* j'écherrai, &c. *Cond.* j'écherrais, &c.

*Inf.* déchoir, to decay; like échoir, except *Ind. pres.* je déchois, &c. *Imper.* déchois, &c. *Sub. pres.* je déchoie, &c.

*Inf.* clorre, to close. *Part.* clos. *Pres. ind.* je clos, tu clos, il clot. *Fut.* je clorraï, tu clorras, il clorra. *Cond.* je clorraï, tu clorraï, il clorraï.

*Inf.* enclorre, to inclose, is conjugated like clorre.

*Inf.* éclore, to be hatched. *Part.* éclos. *Pres. ind.* il éclot, ils éclosent. *Fut.* il éclora, ils écloront. *Cond.* il éclorait, ils écloraient. *Pres. subj.* qu'il éclore, qu'ils éclosent.

*Inf.* faillir, to fail. *Part.* failli. *Preter. ind.* je faillis, &c. Défaillir, to faint, is conjugated in the same manner, and makes besides *Ind. pres.* nous défaillons. *Imp.* je défaillais, &c.

*frir*, to fry. *Part.* frit. *Pres. ind.* je fris, tu fris,  
*Fut.* je frirai, tu friras, il frira; nous frirons, vous  
ils friront. *Cond.* je fri-rai, rais, rait; fri-rions, riez,

other tenses, we make use of the verb *faire*, and of  
infinitive *frir*, as *je faisais frir*, *tu faisais frir*, &c.

*Gésir*, to lie. *Ger.* gisant. *Pres. ind.* il git, nous  
ils gisent. *Imp.* il gisait.

*ouïr*, to hear. *Part.* ouï, heard. The participle is  
followed by *dire*, as *j'ai ouï dire*.

*quérir*, to fetch, is used, in the infinitive, only after  
verbs *aller*, *envoyer*, and *venir*.

*seoir*, to become. *Pres. ind.* il sied, ils siéent. *Imp.*  
il, ils seyaient. *Fut.* il siéra, ils siéront. *Cond.* il  
ils siéraient.

*Saillir*, to project. *Ger.* saillant. *Part.* sailli.  
*Ind.* il saille. *Imp.* il saillait. *Fut.* il saillera.  
il saillerait. *Pres. subj.* qu'il saille. *Pret.* qu'il

*vêtir*, to clothe. *Part.* vêtu, clothed.

## SECTION THE SIXTH.

### *Conjugation of Impersonal Verbs.*

NEIGER, to snow.

*neiger*, *ger.* neigeant, *part.* neigé, *comp.* avoir neigé,  
neigé.

*s. ind.* il neige, *imp.* il neigeait, *pret.* il neigea, *fut.*  
neigera, *cond.* il neigerait, *pres. subj.* il neige, *pret.* il  
neigea, *comp. tenses*, il a neigé, il avait neigé, &c.

*geler*, to freeze, *éclairer*, to lighten, *tonner*, to thunder,  
*éclater*, to hail, are conjugated on *neiger*.

PLEUVOIR, *to rain.*

*Inf.* pleuvoir, *ger.* pleuvant, *part.* plu, *comp.* avoir ayant plu.

*Pres. ind.* il pleut, *imp.* il pleuvait, *pret.* il plut, pleuvra, *cond.* il pleuvrait, *pres. subj.* il pleuve, *pret. i comp. tenses*, il a plu, il avait plu, &c.

FALLOIR, *to be necessary*

*Inf.* falloir, *part.* fallu, *comp.* avoir fallu, ayant fallu

*Pres. ind.* il faut, *imp.* il fallait, *pret.* il fallut, faudra, *cond.* il faudrait, *pres. subj.* il faille, *pret. i comp. tenses*, il a fallu, il avait fallu, &c.

Y AVOIR, *to be there.*

*Inf.* y avoir, *ger.* y ayant, *comp.* y avoir eu, y ayant

*Pres. ind.* il y a, *there is*, *imp.* il y avait, *there was* il y eut, *there was*, *fut.* il y aura, *there shall be*, *cond.* aurait, *there would be*, *pres. subj.* il y ait, *there may be* il y eût, *there might be*, *comp. tenses*, il y a eu, *there been*, il y avait eu, *there had been*, &c.

## SECTION THE SEVENTH.

*Several ways of using a verb.*

1. WITH NEGATION. Infinitive present : *donner*, not to give ; *ne donnant pas*, not giving.

*Ind. pres.* *Je ne donne pas*, I do not give ; *tu ne pas*, thou dost not give ; *il ne donne pas*, he does not ; *nous ne donnons pas*, we do not give ; *vous ne donne* you do not give ; *ils ne donnent pas*, they do not give so on for all the other tenses of the indicative and junctive moods.

*Compound tenses* : *je n'ai pas donné*, I have not (

*n'as pas donné*, thou hast not given; *il n'a pas donné*, has not given, &c. and so on for all compound tenses 1 persons.

2. WITH INTERROGATION. Imperfect of the indicative: *Punissais-je*, did I punish? *punissais-tu*, didst thou punish? *punissait-il*, did he punish? *punissions-nous*, did we punish? *punissiez-vous*, did you punish? *punissent-ils*, did they punish?

Compound tenses: *Ai-je puni*, have I punished? *as-tu puni*, hast thou punished? *a-t-il puni*, has he punished? and so on for other tenses.

3. WITH NEGATION AND INTERROGATION. Future of the indicative: *Ne marchai-je pas*, did I not walk? *ne marchas-tu pas*, didst thou not walk? *ne marchait-il pas*, did he not walk? *ne marchâmes-nous pas*, did we not walk? *ne marchâtes-vous pas*, did you not walk? *ne marchèrent-ils pas*, did they not walk?

Compound tenses: *N'ai-je pas marché*, have I not walked? *n'as-tu pas marché*, hast thou not walked? *n'a-t-il pas marché*, has he not walked? and so on for all other persons.

4. WITH PRONOUNS. Future: *Je les vendrai*, I will sell them; *tu les vendras*, thou wilt sell them; *il les vendra*, he will sell them; *nous les vendrons*, we will sell them; *vous les vendrez*, you will sell them; *ils les vendront*, they will sell them.

Compound tenses: *Je les ai vendus*, I have sold them; *les as vendus*, thou hast sold them; *il les a vendus*, he has sold them, &c.

5. WITH NEGATION AND PRONOUNS. Conditional: *Je ne le connaîtrais pas*, I should not know him; *ne le connaîtrais pas*, thou shouldst not know him; *il ne le connaîtrait pas*, he should not know him; *nous ne le connaîtrions pas*, we should not know him; *vous ne le connaîtriez pas*, you should not know him; *ils ne le connaîtraient pas*, they should not know him.

Compound tenses: *Je ne l'ai pas connu*, I have not known him; *tu ne l'as pas connu*, thou hast not known him; *il ne l'a pas connu*, he has not known him, &c.

6. WITH INTERROGATION AND PRONOUNS. Future indicative: *Les verrai-je*, shall I see them? *les*



*verras-tu*, shalt thou see them? *les verra-t-il*, shall he see them? *les verrons-nous*, shall we see them? *les verrez-vous*, shall you see them? *les verront-ils*, shall they see them?

Compound tenses: *Les ai-je vus*, have I seen them? *les as-tu vus*, hast thou seen them? *les a-t-il vus*, has he seen them?

This method of conjugating verbs will serve to familiarise the learner with the important distinctions of nominative and accusative, and prepare for understanding the rules of the syntax; therefore I recommend it particularly to children.

## SECTION THE EIGHTH.

### *Conjugation of a reflected verb.*

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present tense,</i>	se lever,	<i>to rise.</i>
<i>Gerund,</i>	se levant,	<i>rising.</i>
<i>Participle,</i>	levé,	<i>risen.</i>
<i>Compound of the present,</i>	s'être levé,	<i>to have risen.</i>
<i>Compound of the gerund,</i>	s'étant levé,	<i>having risen.</i>

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

##### PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Je me lève,	<i>I rise.</i>	Nous nous levons,	<i>we rise.</i>
tu te lèves,	<i>thou risest.</i>	vous vous levez,	<i>you rise.</i>
il se lève,	<i>he rises.</i>	ils se lèvent,	<i>they rise.</i>

##### IMPERFECT.

Je me levais, <i>I was</i>	} <i>rising.</i>	Nous nous levions, <i>we were</i>	} <i>rising.</i>
tu te levais, <i>thou wast</i>		vous vous leviez, <i>you were</i>	
il se levait, <i>he was</i>		ils se levaient, <i>they were</i>	

##### PRETERITE.

Je me levai, <i>I rose.</i>	Nous nous levâmes, <i>we rose.</i>
tu te levas, <i>thou didst rise.</i>	vous vous levâtes, <i>you rose</i>
il se leva, <i>he rose.</i>	ils se levèrent, <i>they rose.</i>

## FUTURE.

Je me leverai, *I shall rise.* Nous nous leverons, *we shall rise.*  
 tu te leveras, *thou shalt rise.* vous vous leveriez, *you shall rise.*  
 il se levera, *he shall rise.* ils se leveront, *they shall rise.*

## CONDITIONAL.

Je me leverais, *I would rise.* Nous nous leverions, *we would.*  
 tu te leverais, *thou wouldst rise.* vous vous leveriez, *you would.*  
 il se leverait, *he would rise.* ils se leveraient, *they would.*

## COMPOUND TENSES.

## COMPOUND OF THE PRESENT.

Je me suis levé, *I have risen.* Nous nous sommes levés, *we, &c.*  
 tu t'es levé, *thou hast.* vous vous êtes levés, *you have.*  
 il s'est levé, *he has risen.* ils se sont levés, *they have risen.*  
 elle s'est levée, *she has risen.* elles se sont levées, *they have, &c.*

## COMPOUND OF THE IMPERFECT.

Je m'étais levé, *I had risen.* Nous nous étions levés, *we had.*  
 tu t'étais levé, *thou hadst.* vous vous étiez levés, *you had.*  
 il s'était levé, *he had risen.* ils s'étaient levés, *they had, &c.*

## COMPOUND OF THE PRETERITE.

Je me fus levé, *I had risen.* Nous nous fûmes levés, *we had.*  
 tu te fus levé, *thou hadst risen.* vous vous fûtes levés, *you had.*  
 il se fut levé, *he had risen.* il se furent levés, *they had, &c.*

## COMPOUND OF THE FUTURE.

Je me serai levé, *I shall have.* Nous nous serons levés, *we shall.*  
 tu te seras levé, *thou shalt.* vous vous serez levés, *you shall.*  
 il se sera levé, *he shall have.* ils se seront levés, *they shall.*

## COMPOUND OF THE CONDITIONAL.

Je me serais levé, *I should, &c.* Nous nous serions levés, *we, &c.*  
 tu te serais levé, *thou shouldst.* vous vous seriez levés, *you, &c.*  
 il se serait levé, *he should, &c.* ils se seraient levés, *they should.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

Que *That*

Je me lève, *I may rise.* Nous nous levions, *we may rise.*  
 tu te lèves, *thou mayst rise.* vous vous levez, *you may rise*  
 il se lève, *he may rise.* ils se lèvent, *they may rise*

## PRETERITE.

Je me levasse, *I might rise.* Nous nous levassions, *we might*  
 tu te levasses, *thou mightst.* vous vous levassiez, *you might*  
 il se levât, *he might rise.* ils se levassent, *they might rise*

## COMPOUND TENSES.

## COMPOUND OF THE PRESENT.

Je me sois levé, *I may, &c.* Nous nous soyons levés, *we, &c.*  
 tu te sois levé, *thou mayst.* vous vous soyez levés, *you, &c.*  
 ils se soient levé, *he may, &c.* ils se soient levés, *they, &c.*

## COMPOUND OF THE PRETERITE.

Je me fusse levé, *I might, &c.* Nous nous fussions levés, *we, &c.*  
 tu te fusse levé, *thou, &c.* vous vous fussiez levés, *you, &c.*  
 il se fût levé, *he might, &c.* ils se fussent levés, *they, &c.*

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Levons nous, *let us rise.*  
 2. lève-toi, *rise thou.* levez-vous, *rise you.*  
 3. qu'il se lève, *let him rise.* qu'ils se lèvent, *let them rise.*

## OBSERVATIONS.

1. All reflected verbs are conjugated with the auxiliary *être* in French, and *to have* in English, in their compound tenses.

2. They are also conjugated with two pronouns relating to the same object; *je me* is used for the first person of the singular number; *tu te* for the second; *il* or *elle se*, for the third; *nous nous*, for the first of the plural number; *vous*

for the second; *ils* or *elles* *se*, for the third, as

most passive verbs, which have an inanimate object in the nominative case, are reflected in French: as, *les nouvelles se répandent plus promptement que les*; bad news are sooner spread about than good.

The verbs which are followed in English by the pronouns *myself*, *thyself*, *himself*, &c. answer exactly to the reflected. The following have no pronouns in English, and, as they cannot be easily distinguished, must be distinguished by context: —

#### VERBS REFLECTED IN FRENCH.

se joindre, to compound.	s'enrichir, to grow rich.
se retenir, to abstain.	s'entretenir, to discourse with.
se conformer, to agree.	s'envoler, to fly away.
se pencher, to lean upon.	s'épanouir, to blow.
se rasseoir, to sit down.	s'esquiver, to steal away.
se cramponner, to stick.	s'étonner, to wonder.
se baigner, to bathe.	s'évanouir, to faint away.
se courber, to stoop.	s'évaporer, to evaporate.
se cantonner, to canton.	s'évertuer, to strive.
se coucher, to go to bed.	se farder, to paint.
se débattre, to struggle.	se fier, to trust.
se déverser, to flow over.	se figurer, to fancy.
se retirer, to retract.	se flétrir, to fade away.
se défier, to distrust.	se fondre, to melt.
se méfier, to make haste.	se formaliser, to find fault.
se remettre, to resign.	se glisser, to creep in.
se désister, to desist.	se hâter, to make haste.
se plaindre, to cry out.	s'imaginer, to fancy.
se lever, to leap upon.	s'ingérer, to intermeddle.
se retirer, to go away.	s'insinuer, to steal in.
se saisir, to seize upon.	se lever, to rise.
se presser, to be eager.	se liquéfier, to liquefy.
se coucher, to fall asleep.	se marier, to marry.
se sauver, to run away.	se méfier, to distrust.
se hardir, to grow bold.	se méprendre, to mistake.
se enraciner, to take root.	se moquer, to laugh at.
se refroidir, to catch cold.	se mutiner, to mutiny.

se piquer, *to pretend to.*  
 se plaindre, *to complain.*  
 se promener, *to walk.*  
 se réjouir, *to rejoice.*  
 se repentir, *to repent.*  
 se reposer, *to rest.*

se ressouvenir, *to remember.*  
 se révolter, *to rebel.*  
 se saisir, *to seize upon.*  
 se soumettre, *to submit.*  
 se souvenir, *to remember.*  
 se vanter, *to boast.*

### *An easy Method to learn Verbs.*

This method is divided into two sections: the first teaches how to form the tenses of a verb, and the second how to form the persons of a tense.

#### § 1. *Rules for the Formation of the Tenses of Regular Verbs.*

The PRESENT *of the infinitive*, the GERUND, the PARTICIPLE, the PRESENT, and the PRETERITE *of the indicative*, are called the primitive tenses, because all others are formed from them according to the following rules;

RULE I. From the *present infinitive* are formed, 1. The *future*, by adding *ai* to the final of those which end with a consonant: as, *donner, dormir*, infinitive; *je donnerai, je dormirai*, future; and by changing the final *e* into *ai*, in those which end with a vowel: as, *lire, vendre*, infinitive; *je lirai, je vendrai*, future. 2. The *conditional*, by adding *ais* to the final of those which end with a consonant: as, *chanter, punir*, infinitive; *je chanterais, je punirais*, conditional; and by changing *e* mute into *ais* in those which end with a vowel: as, *plaire, répondre*, infinitive; *je plaisais, je répondrais*, conditional.

RULE II. From the *gerund* are formed, 1. The *three persons plural of the present of the indicative*, by changing *ant* into *ons, ez, ent*: as, *parlant, agissant*, gerund, *nous parlons, vous parlez, ils parlent; nous agissons, vous agissez, ils agissent*. 2. The *imperfect of the indicative*, by changing *ant* into *ais*: as, *venant, connaissant*, gerund, *je venais, je connaissais*. 3. The *present of the subjunctive*,

by changing *ant* into *e*: as, *réduisant, écrivant, gerund, je réduise, j'écrive.*

RULE III. With the *participle* are formed, in all verbs, regular or irregular, all the *compound tenses*, by means of the auxiliary verbs *avoir* or *être*; *aimé, fini, ouvert, venu, repent*, participle; *j'ai aimé, j'avais fini, j'aurai ouvert, je serais venu, je me sois repent*: no exceptions to this rule.

RULE IV. From the *present of the indicative* is formed the *second person of the imperative*, by suppressing the pronoun *je*: as, *j'aime, je viens, je connais*, pres. ind. *aime, viens, connais*. The *first and second persons plural of the imper.* are similar to the same persons in the *pres. ind.* only suppressing the pronouns *nous, vous*: as, *nous finissons, vous croyez*, ind. pret. *finissons, croyez*, imperative.

RULE V. From the *preterite of the indicative* is formed the *subjunctive preterite*, by changing the final *ai* into *asse*, for the verbs of the first conjugation: as, *je donnai, j'aimai*, pret. ind. *je donnasse, j'aimasse*, pret. subj. and by adding *se* to all those which end in *s*: as, *j'agis, je lus, je tins*, pret. ind. *j'agisse, je lusse, je tinsse*, pret. subj. This fifth rule has no exceptions, not even in the irregular verbs.

The exceptions to rule the first are, the verbs which change *enir* of the *present infinitive* into *iendrai* for the future, and into *iendrais* for the conditional: as, *tenir, je tiendrai, je tiendrais*; and the verbs which change *oir* of the *present infinitive* into *rai* for the future, and into *rais* for the conditional: as, *recevoir, je recevrai, je recevrais*.

The exceptions to rule the second are the same verbs of the preceding exception, which do not form from the gerund the *third person plural of the pres. ind.* nor the *three persons singular and third person plural of the pres. subj.* But they form them from the *first person singular of the pres. ind.* by changing *s* into *nent, ne, nes, ne*, and *nent* for the verbs in *enir*; and into *vent, ve, ves, ve, vent*, for the verbs in *evoir*: as, *je viens, ils viennent, que je vienne, que tu viennes, qu'il vienne, qu'ils viennent; je reçois, ils reçoivent, que je reçoive, que tu reçoives, qu'il reçoive, qu'ils reçoivent.*

Verbs whose gerunds end in *oyant*, *uyant*, change *y* into *i* before an *e* mute : as, *nettoyant*, *ils nettoient*; *appuyant*, *que j'appuie*.

To exercise the learner in applying the foregoing rules, we subjoin a table of the primitive tenses of the twelve verbs following :

<i>Inf. pres.</i>	<i>Gerund.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i>	<i>Pres.</i>
Parler,	parlant,	parlé,	je parle,	je parlai.
Agir,	agissant,	agi,	j'agis,	j'agis.
Sentir,	sentant,	senti,	je sens,	je sentis.
Ouvrir,	ouvrant,	ouvert,	j'ouvre,	j'ouvris.
Tenir,	tenant,	tenu,	je tiens,	je tins.
Recevoir,	recevant,	reçu,	je reçois,	je reçus.
Plaire,	plaisant,	plu,	je plais,	je plus.
Craindre,	craignant,	craint,	je crains,	je craignis.
Connaître,	connaissant,	connu,	je connais,	je connus.
Instruire,	instruisant,	instruit,	j'instruis,	j'instruisis.
Vendre,	vendant,	vendu,	je vends,	je vendis.
Ecrire,	écrivait,	écrit	j'écris,	j'écrivis.

## § 2. Rules for the Formation of Persons

### RULE 1. PRES. IND.

The first person ends either in *e*, *s*, or *x*. When it ends in *e*, the second adds an *s*, and the third is like the first : as, *je parle*, *tu parles*, *il parle*.

When it ends in *s* or *x*, the second is like the first, and the third changes the final *s* or *x* into *t* : as, *je lis*, *tu lis*, *il lit*; *je veux*, *tu veux*, *il veut*.

However, *s* is left out in the third person of verbs which end in *cs*, *ds*, or *ts*, in the first : as, *je vaincs*, *tu vaincs*, *il vainc*; *je perds*, *tu perds*, *il perd*; *je mets*, *tu mets*, *il met*.

The three persons plural end in *ons*, *ez*, *ent* : as, *parlant*, ger. *nous parlons*, *vous parlez*, *ils parlent*; plural of the pres. of the indicative.

*The Exceptions are :*

1. The verb *aller*, which makes *je vais, tu vas, il va ; nous allons, vous allez, ils vont*.

2. The verb *avoir*, which makes *j'ai, tu as, il a ; nous avons, vous avez, ils ont*.

3. *Etre*, which makes *je suis, tu es, il est ; nous sommes, vous êtes, ils sont*.

4. *Dire*, and *redire*, which make *vous dites*, and *vous redites*.

5. *Faire*, and its compounds, which make *vous faites, ils font*.

## RULE II.

When the first person of any other tense is known, the other persons are formed, either in regular or irregular verbs, by changing the final as follows :

## IMPERFECT OF THE INDICATIVE.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
1	2	3	1	2	3
ais,	ais,	ait.	ions,	iez,	aient.

## PRETERITE OF THE INDICATIVE.

ai,	as,	a ;	ames,	âtes,	èrent.
is,	is,	it ;	îmes,	îtes,	irent.
ins,	ins,	int ;	îmes,	îtes,	inrent.
us,	us,	ut ;	ûmes,	ûtes,	urent.

## FUTURE.

rai.	ras,	ra ;	rons,	rez,	ront.
------	------	------	-------	------	-------

## CONDITIONAL.

rais,	rais,	rait ;	rions,	riez,	raient.
-------	-------	--------	--------	-------	---------

## SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

e,	es,	e ;	ions,	iez,	ent.
----	-----	-----	-------	------	------



## PRETERITE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
1	2	3	1 -	2	3
asse,	asses,	ât ;	assions,	assiez,	assent.
isse,	isses,	ît ;	issions,	issiez,	issent.
insse,	insses,	înt ;	inssions,	inssiez,	inssent.
usse,	usses,	ût ;	ussions,	ussiez,	ussent.

The only exceptions are the verb *être*, which makes in the subjunctive present, *je sois, tu sois, il soit, nous soyons, vous soyez, ils soient*; and the verb *avoir*, which makes *j'aie, tu aies, il ait, nous ayons, vous ayez, ils aient*.

## OF ADVERBS.

*The word Adverb signifies joined to a Verb.*

*The Adverb* is a word indeclinable, which modifies a verb, a participle, or an adjective, and may be considered as a substitute for an additional phrase by way of explanation. Example :

Dieu est *infiniment* juste ; il punira *sévèrement* les impies.  
*God is infinitely just ; he will punish severely the impious.*

Most of the French adjectives become adverbs by altering their final according to the three following rules :

## RULE I.

Adjectives which end in *ant* or *ent* become adverbs by changing the final *ant* into *amment*, and *ent* into *emment* : as, *constant, prudent, patient*, adjectives ; *constamment, prudemment, patiemment*, adverbs. The only exceptions are *lentement*, and *présentement*, from the adjectives *lent* and *présent*.

## RULE II.

Adjectives which end in a vowel, become adverbs, by adding *ment* to the final : as, *sage, poli, ingénu*, adjectives ; *sagement, poliment, ingénument*, adverbs. The adjectives *beau, fou, nouveau*, and *mou*, become adverbs by adding

*ment* to their feminine *belle, folle, nouvelle*, and *molle*: *belle-ment, follement, nouvellement, mollement*.

## RULE III.

Adjectives which end neither in a vowel, nor in *ant* or *ent* in the masculine singular, become adverbs by adding *ment* to their feminine termination: as, *grand, doux, heureux*, adjectives masculine; *grande, douce, heureuse*, adjectives feminine\*: *grandement, doucement, heureusement*, adverbs.

The *e* which precedes *ment* is mute in all adverbs formed from adjectives, except in the following, in which it takes an acute accent: *aisément, assurément, aveuglement, commodément, communément, conformément, délibérément, démesurément, désespérément, désordonnement, déterminément, effrontément, énormément, expressément, figurément, importunément, impunément, incommodément, inconsidérément, indéterminément, inespérément, inopinément, malaisément, modérément, nommément, obscurément, obstinément, opiniâtrément, passionnément, posément, précisément, prématurément, privément, profondément, profusément, proportionnement, sensément, séparément, serrément, subordonnement*.

## DIFFERENT SORTS OF ADVERBS

Besides the great number of adverbs formed from adjectives according to the three preceding rules, there are many others, which may be divided into nine classes, according to their signification; they are as follows:

1. ADVERBS OF ORDER: as, *premièrement*, first; *secondement*, secondly; *troisièmement*, thirdly, &c. *de-avant*, before; *derrière*, behind; *après*, after; *ensuite*, afterwards, &c.

2. ADVERBS OF PLACE: as, *où*, where; *d'où*, from whence; *ici*, here; *là*, there; *dedans*, within; *dehors*, without; *en haut*, above; *en bas*, below; *loin*, far; *près*, near, &c.

\* For the formation of the feminine of adjectives, see pages 45—48.

3. ADVERBS OF TIME : as, *à présent*, now ; *aujourd'hui*, to-day ; *hier*, yesterday ; *autrefois*, formerly ; *bientôt*, soon ; *dans peu*, shortly ; *désormais*, hereafter, &c.

4. ADVERBS OF QUANTITY : as, *combien*, how much ; *beaucoup*, much ; *peu*, little ; *assez*, enough ; *tant*, so much ; *autant*, as much ; *trop*, too much ; *trop peu*, too little, &c.

5. ADVERBS OF COMPARISON : as, *comme*, as ; *de même*, in the same manner ; *aussi*, as ; *autant*, as much ; *plus* more ; *moins*, less ; *pareillement*, likewise, &c.

6. ADVERBS OF AFFIRMATION : as, *oui*, yes ; *à la vérité*, indeed ; *vraiment*, truly ; *sans doute*, without doubt ; *assurément*, assuredly ; *certainement*, certainly, &c.

7. ADVERBS OF NEGATION : as, *non*, no ; *ne pas*, not ; *point du tout*, not at all ; *nullement*, by no means, &c.

8. ADVERBS OF INTERROGATION : as, *quand*, when ; *pourquoi*, why ; *combien*, how much ; *comment*, how ; *où*, where, &c.

9. ADVERBS OF DOUBT : as, *peut-être*, perhaps ; *probablement*, very likely, &c.

## PREPOSITIONS.

Prepositions are indeclinable words, so called from the Latin verb *præponere* (which signifies to place before), because they are always put in French before the word they govern. Example : *Ce qui se fait dans la passion, se fait souvent contre la raison, et nous donne dans la suite de grands sujets de repentir*. What is done in passion is often done against reason, and gives us in time great cause of repentance.

Prepositions are indeclinable. They serve to denote the several relations of nouns, pronouns, or adverbs, with one another. They are the following :

### *Prepositions which denote the Genitive Case.*

à cause de, on account of.	à couvert de, secure from.
à côté de, by.	à fleur de, even with.

le, <i>by dint of.</i>	au moyen de, <i>by means of.</i>
e, <i>sheltered from.</i>	au niveau de, <i>even to.</i>
ar de, <i>by means of.</i>	au péril de, <i>at the peril of.</i>
ère de, <i>after the fashion</i>	auprès de, <i>near,</i>
rve de, <i>excepting that.</i>	au prix de, <i>at the expense of.</i>
de, <i>with regard to.</i>	au risque de, <i>at the danger of.</i>
tion de, <i>excepted.</i>	autour de, <i>around.</i>
sion de, <i>excepting.</i>	au travers de, <i>through.</i>
e, <i>unknown to.</i>	aux dépens de, <i>at the expense of.</i>
ite de, <i>over against.</i>	aux environs de, <i>round about.</i>
de, <i>under.</i>	en deçà de, <i>on this side.</i>
de, <i>at the rate of.</i>	en dépit de, <i>in spite of.</i>
de, <i>contrary to.</i>	en présence de, <i>in presence of.</i>
de, <i>on this side.</i>	ensuite de, <i>after.</i>
s de, <i>within.</i>	faute de, <i>for want of.</i>
s de, <i>without.</i>	hors de, <i>out of.</i>
le, <i>on that side.</i>	le long de, <i>along.</i>
re de, <i>behind.</i>	loin de, <i>far from.</i>
is de, <i>under.</i>	pour l'amour de, <i>for the sake of.</i>
s de, <i>upon.</i>	près de, <i>near.</i>
t de, <i>before.</i>	proche de, <i>nigh.</i>
e, <i>instead.</i>	tout auprès de, <i>close to.</i>
de, <i>in the middle of.</i>	vis-à-vis de, <i>opposite to.</i>

*Prepositions which denote the Accusative Case.*

after.	environ, <i>about.</i>
ars, <i>through.</i>	excepté, <i>except.</i>
before.	hormis, <i>except, but.</i>
with.	malgré, <i>in spite of.</i>
it.	moyennant, <i>for.</i>
, <i>against.</i>	nonobstant, <i>notwithstanding.</i>
n.	outre, <i>besides.</i>
, <i>since.</i>	par, <i>by.</i>
e, <i>behind.</i>	parmi, <i>among.</i>
om.	pendant, <i>during.</i>
, <i>before.</i>	pour, <i>for.</i>
, <i>during.</i>	proche, <i>near.</i>
	sans, <i>without.</i>
between.	sauf, <i>safe.</i>
, <i>towards.</i>	selon, <i>according to.</i>

sous, *under.*

suiuant, *according to.*

sur, *upon.*

touchant, *concerning.*

vers, *towards.*

Observe, that the prepositions formed with *à*, *au*, *aux*, and a noun, require the genitive case, and that others require the accusative after them.

These four, *conformément à*, according to; *jusqu'à*, as; *par rapport à*, with respect to; *quant à*, as for; note the dative case.

### *Prepositions joined to a Verb.*

Many prepositions come in English after a verb, make a part of its signification; such are the follow which are not expressed in French:

abattre, *to pull down.*

abandonner, *to give up.*

cacheter, *to seal up.*

combler, *to fill up.*

déchirer, *to tear off.*

déraciner, *to root out.*

s'envoler, *to fly away.*

époudrer, *to wipe off.*

s'évanouir, *to faint away.*

expulser, *to turn out.*

extirper, *to root out.*

se lever, *to get up.*

mander, *to send for.*

ôter, *to take away.*

paraphraser, *to comment u*

ramener, *to bring back.*

trouver, *to find out.*

monter, *to go up.*

descendre, *to go down.*

entrer, *to come in.*

sortir, *to go out.*

regarder, *to look at.*

chercher, *to look for.*

admirer, *to wonder at.*

attendre, *to wait for.*

### VERBS COMPOSED WITH A PREPOSITION.

The English give to the most part of their verbs a signification quite opposite to the primitive one, by prefix to them the preposition *un* or *dis*. The French give by prefixing *dés* to the words which begin with a *vow* *h* mute; and *dé* to those which begin with a consonant. Example:

border, *to border.*

déborder, *to unborder.*

paver, *to pave.*

dépaver, *to unpave.*

, to load.	plaire, to please.
er, to unload.	déplaire, to displease.
do.	posséder, to possess.
to undo.	déposséder, to dispossess.
re, to learn.	tromper, to deceive.
endre, to unlearn.	détromper, to undeceive.
, to dress.	voiler, to veil.
ller, to undress.	dévoiler, to unveil.
, curl.	tordre, to twist.
, to uncurl.	détordre, to untwist.
lace.	approuver, to approve.
to unlace.	désapprouver, to disapprove.
ie.	armer, to arm.
o untie.	désarmer, to disarm.
; to count.	honorer, to honour.
ter, to discount.	déshonorer, to dishonour.
to trust.	obéir, to obey.
r, to distrust.	désobéir, to disobey.
to cover.	unir, to unite.
ir, to uncover.	désunir, to disunite.

English put the word *again*, after a verb, to express iteration of a thing. The French express the re- by prefixing the preposition *re* to the verb, when s with a consonant, and *r* only when it begins with or *h* mute. Thus we say

to call.	faire, to do.
, to call again.	refaire, to do again.
; to seal up.	embarquer, to embark.
ter, to seal up again.	rembarquer, to embark again.
rr, to compose.	lire, to read.
user, to compose again.	relire, to read again.
er, to ask.	mesurer, to measure.
ider, to ask again.	remesurer, to measure again.

paraître, <i>to appear.</i>	trouver, <i>to find.</i>
reparaître, <i>to appear again.</i>	retrouver, <i>to find again.</i>
plisser, <i>to plait.</i>	vendre, <i>to sell.</i>
replisser, <i>to plait again.</i>	revendre, <i>to sell again.</i>
prendre, <i>to take.</i>	venir, <i>to come.</i>
reprendre, <i>to take again.</i>	revenir, <i>to come again.</i>
tomber, <i>to fall.</i>	
retomber, <i>to fall again.</i>	

There are many other prepositions which come immediately after a verb in English, and change its signification; such are *away, back, upon, out, for, with, off, &c.* but these cannot be reduced to rules, and can be learned by practice only.

## OF CONJUNCTIONS.

Conjunctions are indeclinable words, used in a sentence to join together the different parts of speech. Example:

*Parlez peu et pensez bien, si vous voulez qu'on vous regarde comme un homme d'esprit.*

Speak little *and* think much, *if* you would be looked upon as a man of sense.

In this sentence, *et* and *si* are two conjunctions, which show the dependency and conjunction of the clauses which compose it.

Conjunctions are simple or compound; the simple consist of one word, as *et, ou, ni, &c.*; the compound are formed of two or more words, such as *afin que, au lieu que, si ce n'est que.* Both simple and compound may be shown to have been borrowed from other classes of words. The simple ones are mostly directing words, independent of the subject meant to be told, but introduced for the purpose of enabling us to understand a complicated statement or sentence.

The above explanation being too abstract for many young students, I will dispose the conjunctions in three alphabetical lists. *The first* contains the conjunctions

govern the infinitive mood ; *the second* enumerates which govern the subjunctive ; and *the third* commands all others.

1. *Conjunctions which govern the Infinitive.*

de, <i>in order to.</i>	faute de, <i>for want of.</i>
is de, <i>unless.</i>	jusqu'à, <i>till.</i>
de, <i>before.</i>	loin de, <i>far from.</i>
i de, <i>instead of.</i>	plutôt que de, <i>rather than.</i>
inte de, <i>for fear of.</i>	pour, <i>for.</i>
ir de, <i>for fear of.</i>	sans, <i>without.</i>

2. *Conjunctions which govern the Subjunctive.*

que, <i>that.</i>	malgré que, <i>for all that.</i>
is que, <i>unless.</i>	nonobstant que, <i>for all that.</i>
que, <i>before.</i>	non pas que, <i>not that.</i>
que, <i>in case that.</i>	posé que, <i>suppose that.</i>
ue, <i>though.</i>	pourvu que, <i>provided.</i>
inte que, <i>for fear.</i>	quoique, <i>though.</i>
ir que, <i>lest.</i>	sans que, <i>without.</i>
que, <i>if.</i>	soit que, <i>whether.</i>
que, <i>though.</i>	supposé que, <i>suppose that.</i>
à ce que, <i>till.</i>	Dieu veuille que, <i>God grant.</i>
ie, <i>far from.</i>	pour que, <i>that.</i>

*Conjunctions which govern neither the Infinitive nor the Subjunctive.*

se que, <i>because.</i>	c'est pourquoi, <i>therefore.</i>
lition que, <i>provided.</i>	comme, <i>as.</i>
thus.	d'abord que, <i>as soon as.</i>
que, <i>as.</i>	d'ailleurs, <i>besides.</i>
que, <i>after.</i>	d'autant que, <i>whereas.</i>
i que, <i>whereas.</i>	de façon que, <i>so that.</i>
ins, <i>at least.</i>	depuis que, <i>since.</i>
also.	de plus, <i>moreover.</i>
ien que, <i>as well as.</i>	de sorte que, <i>so that.</i>
ôt que, <i>as soon as.</i>	dès que, <i>as soon as.</i>
plus, <i>moreover.</i>	donc, <i>then.</i>
que, <i>as much.</i>	durant que, <i>during.</i>
r.	et, <i>and.</i>
ant, <i>however.</i>	en effet, <i>indeed.</i>



enfin, *in short*.  
 ensuite, *afterwards*.  
 joint à cela, *moreover*.  
 lorsque, *when*.  
 mais, *but*.  
 même, *even*.  
 néanmoins, *nevertheless*.  
 ni, *nor*.  
 non plus, *neither*.  
 non-seulement, *not only*.  
 or, *now*.  
 ou bien, *or else*.  
 ou, *or*.  
 outre, *besides*.  
 outre cela, *add to that*.  
 parce que, *because*.  
 pendant que, *while*.  
 pour lors, *then*.

pourquoi, *why*.  
 pourtant, *however*.  
 puis, *then*.  
 puisque, *since*.  
 quand, *when*.  
 quand même, *although*.  
 selon que, *according as*.  
 si, *if*.  
 si bien que, *so that*.  
 si ce n'est que, *except that*.  
 sinon, *else*.  
 sitôt que, *as soon as*.  
 suivant que, *according as*.  
 sur quoi, *whereupon*.  
 surtout, *especially*.  
 tandis que, *whilst*.  
 tant que, *as long as*.  
 toutefois, *however*.

OBSERVE, that many adverbs become prepositions, when they govern a noun, a pronoun, or a verb: as, *marchez devant*, walk before, adverb; *marchez devant moi*, walk before me, preposition. Some prepositions in their turn become conjunctions, when they are used to join different parts of speech: as, *faites cela pour moi*, do it for me, preposition; *je le ferai pour vous plaire*, I will do it to please you, conjunction.

### OF INTERJECTIONS.

Interjections are some indeclinable words used to express the affections of the mind, either of *joy*, *grief*, *fear*, *aversion*, *derision*, *surprise*, &c.

- |                       |   |
|-----------------------|---|
| 1. Of joy, as         | bon ! <i>well</i> ! vive la joie ! <i>huzza</i> !           |
| 2. Of grief, as       | hélas ! <i>alas</i> ! ah ! <i>ah</i> ! &c.                  |
| 3. Of fear, as        | ah ! <i>ah</i> ! hélas ! <i>alas</i> ! hé ! <i>oh</i> ! &c. |
| 4. Of aversion, as    | fi ! <i>fie upon</i> ! fi donc ! <i>fie upon</i> !          |
| 5. Of derision, as    | oh ! <i>oh</i> ! zest ! <i>pshaw</i> !                      |
| 6. Of surprise, as    | bon Dieu ! <i>Good God</i> ! eh ! <i>lack a day</i> !       |
| 7. Of encouraging, as | allons ! <i>come on</i> ! courage ! <i>cheer up</i> !       |
| 8. To stop, as        | holà ! <i>hold</i> ! tout beau ! <i>softly</i> !            |

## PART III.

## OF SYNTAX.\*

**SYNTAX** is the regular construction of the different parts of speech, conformably to the rules of grammar, and the genius of a language.

Construction supposes three things in every tongue: the *choice* of words, their *concord*, and their *arrangement*: these objects are fully explained in the following Rules, which point out the different genius of the two languages with accuracy and precision.

Syntax is here divided into twenty-four chapters: the chapters are again divided into sections when occasion requires it.

## CHAP. I.

## USE OF THE FRENCH ARTICLES.

This chapter is divided into *four* sections: *The First* explains the several circumstances in which articles are used in both languages; *the second* enumerates the cases in which the article is used in French, and not in English; *the third* describes those in which it is used in English, and not in French; *the fourth* contains all the circumstances in which both languages take no article.

\* The learner must not begin the second chapter of the syntax, till he understands the rules of the first; nor the third, before he knows the second; and so on for all others. It is also proper that he should repeat at least once a week the principal rules which he has already learnt, lest he should forget them.

## SECTION THE FIRST.

*Article used in French and in English.*

## RULE 1.—un, une, a, an.

The indefinite article (*un*, masc. *une*, fem. in English, *a* or *an*) is used in both languages before a substantive common in the singular, to denote one individual of a class, without specifying which one. Examples :

<i>A</i> book,	<i>a</i> house,	<i>a</i> friend,	<i>a</i> philosopher.
Un livre,	une maison,	un ami,	un philosophe.
England is <i>a</i> fruitful country.			<i>A</i> wise man.
<i>L'Angleterre est un pays fertile.</i>			Un homme sage.

## RULE 2.—le, la, les, the.

The definite article (*le*, masc. *la*, fem. *l'*, of both genders before a vowel or *h* mute, *les* for the plural of both genders, in English *the*) is used in both languages before a substantive, taken in a particular and specified sense. Examples :

<i>The</i> house of my father.	<i>The</i> book which I read.
La maison de mon père.	Le livre que je lis.
<i>The</i> horse which I have sold to you is excellent.	
Le cheval que je vous ai vendu est excellent.	

RULE 3.—*a* or *an* rendered by *le, la, les*.

The English make use of the indefinite article *a* or *an* before nouns of *measure, weight, and number, when they want to express how much a thing is worth, or sold for*: the French, on the contrary, use the definite article *le, la, les*, in such cases. Examples :

<i>Measure.</i>	{	That lace is worth a crown <i>a</i> yard.
		<i>Cette dentelle vaut un écu la verge.</i>
		Coals cost two shillings <i>a</i> bushel.
		<i>Le charbon coûte deux schellings le boisseau.</i>

- Weight.* { Butter is sold for ten-pence a pound.  
               { *Le beurre se vend dix sous la livre.*
- Number.* { Eggs are worth fifteen-pence a dozen.  
               { *Les œufs valent quinze sous la douzaine.*
- 

## SECTION THE SECOND.

*Article used in French and not in English.*RULE 4. — *le, la, les, not the.*

The definite article (*le, la, les,*) is used in French and not in English, before substantives common, taken in the whole extent of their signification. Examples :

Men are mortal ;	<i>Les hommes sont mortels.</i>
God hates sinners ;	<i>Dieu hait les pécheurs.</i>
Virtue is amiable ;	<i>La vertu est aimable.</i>
Vice is odious ;	<i>Le vice est odieux.</i>

The words *men, sinners, virtue, and vice,* are taken in a general sense ; because all men are mortal, God hates all sinners, all virtues are amiable, and all vices odious.

RULE 5. — *le, la, les, not the.*

The definite article (*le, la, les,*) is used in French and not in English, before the names of kingdoms, countries, and provinces. Examples :

France and England are two powerful kingdoms.  
*La France et l'Angleterre sont deux puissans royaumes.*  
 I have passed through Spain, Switzerland, and Germany  
*J'ai passé par l'Espagne, la Suisse, et l'Allemagne.*

These nouns usually take no article, when they are in the genitive or ablative case, or after the preposition *en*. Examples :

*Les royaumes de France et d'Angleterre sont puissans.*  
*J'ai voyagé en Italie. J'arrive d'Allemagne. Je viens de Russie.*

However, the names of distant countries take always the article; such are *le Bengal, le Canada, le Japon, le Mexique, le Pérou*, &c. Some names of provinces follow the same rule: as, *le Dauphiné, le Maine, le Perche, le Mantouan, le Gévaudan*, &c. Thus we say, *je vais au Japon*, and not *en Japon*; *j'arrive du Canada, l'or du Pérou*.

N. B. When the names of kingdoms and republics are the same as those of their capital towns, they have a less definite use, and in either sense take no article; of this sort are *Naples, Venise*, and *Gènes*: thus we say, *Venise est une république*; not *la Venise est une république*.

RULE 6.—*le, la, les*.

The definitive article (*le, la, les*;) is used in French before the adjectives substantively used, whether it is used or not in English. Examples:

The industrious are praised, and the slothful punished;  
*Les diligens sont loués et les paresseux punis.*  
 Black and white are two opposite colours;  
*Le noir et le blanc sont deux couleurs opposées.*

RULE 7.—*du, de la, des*, some.

The partitive article (*du*, m. sing. *de la*, f. *de l'* before a vowel or *h*, m. and *des*, plur. of both genders) is used in French before a substantive, when we want to express an indeterminate number, or a portion of a thing: this article answers to the English word *some*, expressed or understood. Examples:

Give me *some* bread, *some* meat, and *some* eggs;  
*Donnez-moi du pain, de la viande, et des œufs*  
 I have bought paper, ink, and pens;  
*J'ai acheté du papier, de l'encre, et des plumes.*

RULE 8.—*de* instead of *du, de la, des*.

If a substantive, taken in a partitive sense as before, is preceded in French by an adjective, the preposition *de* is used for both genders and numbers, instead of the partitive article *du, de la, des*. Examples:

*Donnez-moi de bon pain, de bonne viande, et de bons œufs.*  
*J'ai acheté de mauvais papier, et de mauvaise encre.*

N. B. Every time the words *some* or *any*, are, or can be used in English before a substantive, the partitive article *du, de la, des*, or the preposition *de*, must be used in French, according to the distinction of the two preceding rules.

RULE 9. — *Where the Article is required.*

Every noun which is *the nominative*, or *the term* of a verb, must have in French one of the three articles, *definite, indefinite, or partitive*, of which before. Examples :

Gold and silver cannot render man happy ;

*L'or et l'argent ne sauraient rendre l'homme heureux.*

Spain produces wine, oranges, and olives ;

*L'Espagne produit du vin, des oranges, et des olives.*

N. B. I do not comprehend in this rule the proper names of persons and towns, the substantives preceded by a pronoun or an adjective of number, neither of which has any article, as we shall see in the rules 14th and 15th.

RULE 10. — *Repetition of the Articles.*

The articles are repeated in French before every substantive, and agree with them in gender and number ; in English, on the contrary, they are indeclinable. Examples :

The genius of the French tongue consists in clearness, purity, elegance, and strength ;

*Le génie de la langue Française consiste dans la clarté, la pureté, l'élégance, et la force.*

I have bought meat, cheese, and fruits ;

*J'ai acheté de la viande, du fromage, et des fruits.*

SECTION THE THIRD.

*Articles used in English and not in French.*

RULE 11. — *the, not le, la, les.*

The definite article (*the*) is used in English, and not in French, before the ordinal numbers, *the first, the second, the third, the fourth*, &c. used in quotations. Examples :

Book *the* first, chapter *the* sixth, section *the* ninth ;  
*Livre premier, chapitre six, section neuvième.*

No article is used in French before the ordinal numbers which come after the Christian names of sovereigns. Examples :

Charles *the* first, Philip *the* second, George *the* third : \*  
*Charles premier, Philippe second, George trois.*

RULE 12.—*a*, not *un* or *une*.

The indefinite article (*a* or *an*) is used in English, and not in French, before nouns which express the *titles, professions, trade, country*, or any other attribute of the substantive antecedent. Examples :

My father was *a* nobleman ; *Mon père était noble.*  
 Your brother is *a* physician ; *Votre frère est médecin.*  
 Are you *a* Frenchman ? *Etes-vous Français ?*

RULE 13.—*a*, not *un* or *une*.

The indefinite article (*a* or *an*) is also used in English, and not in French, in the four following cases :

1. Before a substantive used to qualify another. Example :

The King was received in triumph, *an* honour he deserved  
*Le Roi fut reçu en triomphe, honneur qu'il méritait bien.*

2. Before a substantive which specifies or explains the thing spoken of. Example :

I have read to-day the Busy Body, *an* esteemed comedy ;  
*J'ai lu aujourd'hui l'Empressé, comédie estimée.*

3. In the title of a book, or of any performance. Example :

*A Grammar of the French tongue ;*  
*Grammaire de la langue Française.*

4. After the word *what*, used to express surprise. Example :

What *a* noise you make !  
*Quel bruit vous faites !*

\* Observe, by the preceding examples, that the ordinal numbers (the two first excepted) are rendered in French by the cardinal, after the names of sovereigns, and also often in quotations.

## SECTION THE FOURTH.

*No Article used in French or in English.*

**RULE 14.**—*No Article in either Language.*

No article is used in French or English before the word *God (Dieu)*, nor before the proper names of *heathen deities*, of *men, women, towns, villages, days, or months*.  
Examples :

God is present every where ;

*Dieu est présent partout.\**

Cicero and Demosthenes were two great orators ;

*Cicéron et Démosthènes étaient deux grands orateurs.*

London and Paris are two large capital cities ;

*Londres et Paris sont deux grandes capitales.*

Jupiter and Venus were heathen divinities ;

*Jupiter et Vénus étaient des divinités païennes.*

Some (but few) proper names of persons take an article in French : such are, *l'Arioste, le Tasse, l'Arétin, le Titien, &c.†*

Some names of towns take also an article : such are, *la Haye, l'Aigle, la Rochelle, le Havre, le Mans, &c.*

**RULE 15.**—*No Article in either Language.*

No article is used in French or in English, before a substantive preceded by any pronoun-whatever. Examples :

My friend will come *Mon ami viendra demain.*  
to-morrow ;

This house is new ; *Cette maison est neuve.*

What's o'clock now ? *Quelle heure est-il à présent ?*

**RULE 16.**—*The Preposition de.*

No article (but the preposition *de*) is used in French after the words *espèce, sorte, genre, mélange*, or any other of the same signification. Examples :

\* The definite article should be used before the proper names, if they were in the plural, or particularized. Examples : *le Dieu des Chrétiens est tout-puissant. Les Cicérons sont rares.*

† Before French proper names of persons, preceded by the article *le*, the prepositions *de* and *à* are never contracted with that article ; thus we say, *les tableaux de le Brun*, and not *du Brun* ; except *le Poussin, les tableaux du Poussin.*



Man is exposed to all sorts of infirmities ;  
*L'homme est sujet à toutes sortes d'infirmités.*  
 Jealousy is a mixture of love and hatred, of fear and  
 despair ;  
*La jalousie est un mélange d'amour et de haine, de crainte  
 et de désespoir.*

RULE 17. — *Transposition of Words.*

No article (but the preposition *de*) is used before the latter of two substantives, when it expresses the *nature, matter, species, quality, or country* of the first. Examples :

A head-ach, a tooth-ach ;	<i>Un mal de tête, un mal de dent.</i>
A gold watch, silk stockings ;	<i>Une montre d'or, des bas de soie.</i>
Spanish wool, Burgundy wine ;	<i>De la laine d'Espagne, du vin de Bourgogne.</i>

The English often make a transposition of words, and place the genitive case the first ; this transposition is not allowed in French, and the order must be reversed : thus we say,

The king's guards ;	<i>les gardes du roi.</i>
A chambermaid ;	<i>une fille de chambre.</i>
Diana's anger was the cause of Acteon's death ;	
<i>La colère de Diane causa la mort d'Actéon.</i>	

RULE 18. — *The Preposition de.*

No article (but the preposition *de*) is used in French after words of quantity, measure, scarcity, or exclusion ; as, *abondance*, plenty ; *assez*, enough ; *aune ell* ; *autant*, as much ; *beaucoup*, much ; *boisseaux*, bushel ; *combien*, how many ; *liore*, pound ; *nombre*, number ; *jamais*, never ; *moins*, less ; *pas or point*, no ; *peu*, little ; *pinte*, pint ; *pot*, pot ; *plus*, more ; *quantité*, quantity ; *rien*, nothing ; *tant*, so many ; *trop*, too much ; *verge*, yard, &c. Examples :

You have much wit ;	<i>Vous avez beaucoup d'esprit.</i>
He has no prudence ;	<i>Il n'a point de prudence.</i>
You make too much noise ;	<i>Vous faites trop de bruit.</i>
I have but little money ;	<i>Je n'ai que peu d'argent.</i>

*Note 1.* The words *que* and *quoi*, used in a sentence of admiration, are also followed by *de*. Examples :

How many sorrows ! *Que de chagrins !*  
 What more sad ! *Quoi de plus triste !*

*Note 2.* The word *bien* is always followed by an article, and *beaucoup* is never.

He has a great many friends ;  
*Il a bien des amis, il a beaucoup d'amis.*

RULE 19. — *The Preposition de.*

No article (but the preposition *de*) is used in French, when the substantive is taken in a general sense.

1. After an adjective which governs the genitive case  
 Examples :

You are praise-worthy ; *Vous êtes digne de louanges.*  
 Human life is full of disappointments ;  
*La vie humaine est pleine de revers.*

2. After the verbs and participles which are followed in English by the word *with*. Examples :

You are puffed up with pride ; *Vous êtes bouffi d'orgueil.*  
 Fill up the bottle with wine ; *Emplissez la bouteille de vin.*

But when the substantive is specified, the article must be used. Examples :

He deserves the praises which are given to him ;  
*Il est digne des louanges qu'on lui donne.*  
 His life was filled up with the most dreadful misfortunes.  
*Sa vie fut remplie des plus affreux revers.*

RULE 20. — *Cases where no Article is used.*

1. No article is used in either language before nouns which form but one idea with the verb which precedes them : such may be discriminated by observing that they are, or could be expressed by one word in English, as in the following examples :

To pity the unfortunate ; *Avoir pitié des malheureux.*  
 To envy the happiness of others ;  
*Porter envie au bonheur d'autrui.*  
 To visit a friend ; *Rendre visite à un ami.*

2. The article is not used after the prepositions *avec*, *avec*, or *par*, when the noun following forms with them a kind of adverb. Examples :

You speak elegantly; *Vous parlez avec élégance.*  
 To vanquish without danger, is to triumph without glory;  
*A vaincre sans péril, on triomphe sans gloire.*  
 I have travelled by land and by sea ;  
*J'ai voyagé par terre et par mer.*

3. The article is not used before the cardinal numbers, *un*, one ; *deux*, two ; *trois*, three, &c. Examples : —

Lend me twenty pounds; *Prêtez-moi vingt livres.*  
 I have six oranges ; *J'ai six oranges.*

Nevertheless, the definite article masculine (*le, les*) is used in French as in English before the cardinal numbers, when speaking of cards, of things which have a fixed number, of the date of the month, or of a particular number specified by a relative pronoun : thus we say, with an article in both languages, *le huit de cœur*, the eight of hearts ; *les quatre saisons*, the four seasons ; *rendez-moi les vingt livres que je vous prêtai le dix de Mars*, return me the twenty pounds I lent you on the tenth of March.

## CHAP. II.

### SYNTAX OF SUBSTANTIVES.

#### RULE 21. — *Two Substantives in the same Case.*

When there is a conjunction between two nouns, they must be put in the same case ; and if a substantive is preceded by a preposition, that preposition is usually repeated in French before all other substantives governed by it. Examples :

Your advice pleased the king, the minister, and the parliament ;  
*Votre conseil plut au roi, au ministre, et au parlement.*

A man without religion is in a state of doubt and confusion, fear, and distrust ;

*Un homme sans religion est dans un état de doute et de confusion, de crainte et de défiance.*

RULE 22. — *The latter of two Substantives is put in the Genitive.*

The latter of two substantives relating to each other is generally put in the genitive case in French, whether it is in the genitive or dative in English. Examples :

Impious men are enemies to virtue ;

*Les impies sont ennemis de la vertu.*

The dog is a friend to man ; *Le chien est l'ami de l'homme*

RULE 23. — *Noun in the Dative.*

When two substantives make a compound word in English, their order is inverted in French, and the preposition *à* intervenes, when the one expresses the use of the other ; as,

Gun-powder ; *De la poudre à canon.*

Fire-arms ; *Des armes à feu.*

A dining-room ; *Une salle à manger.*

It is preceded by *au*, *à la*, or *aux*, when it signifies something proper to drink, or to eat : as,

Call the oyster-woman ; *Appelez la femme aux huîtres.*

Where is the rabbit-man ? *Où est l'homme aux lapins ?*

RULE 24. — *A Noun collective general.*

A noun collective general (that is to say, representing the whole object, such as the words, *peuple*, *nation*, *armée*, *flotte*, &c.) requires that the *adjectives*, *pronouns*, and *verbs*, to which it has reference, should always be in the singular. Examples :

The great French army was totally defeated ;

*La grande armée Française fut entièrement défaite.*

The whole fleet is at sea, it set sail yesterday morning ;

*Toute la flotte est en mer, elle partit hier matin.*

RULE 25. — *A Noun collective partitive.*

A noun collective partitive (that is, which represents only a part of the whole object, such as *foule, nombre, multitude, &c.*) followed by a genitive plural, governs the verb and the pronoun in the singular, if it is preceded by a definite article or demonstrative pronoun; but if not, it governs them in the plural. Examples :

The multitude of foreigners make bread dear ;

*La multitude des étrangers rend le pain cher ;* — singular.

A multitude of christians are led astray every day ;

*Une multitude de chrétiens s'égarant tous les jours ;* — plural.

These few plants deserve your attention ;

*Ce peu de plantes mérite votre attention ;* — singular.

The reason of this difference is, that the collective is a substantive when preceded by *le, la, les*, and a kind of adjective when not : in the first case the verb agrees with the collective, and in the second with the substantive which comes after the collective.

N. B. The verb is always put in the plural after the words *la plupart, beaucoup, nombre*, unless they are followed by a substantive singular. Example : *la plupart le croient ; la plupart du monde le croit.*

---

## CHAP. III.

### SYNTAX OF ADJECTIVES.\*

This Chapter, for the sake of order and perspicuity, is divided into four sections. *The first* explains the concord and the right placing of adjectives ; *the second* treats of their government ; *the third* has for object the adjectives of dimension ; and *the fourth* comprehends whatever concerns the construction of comparatives and superlatives.

\* For the formation of the feminine of adjectives, see pages 46 to 49 : their plural is formed from the singular, like that of substantives, of which before, page 49.

## SECTION THE FIRST.

*Of the Concord and right Position of Adjectives.*RULE 26. — *All Adjectives are declinable.*

All adjectives are declinable in French, and agree in gender and number with the substantive or pronoun which they qualify : in English, on the contrary, they are all indeclinable. Examples :

*pious* man ;      a *pious* woman ;      *pious* girls ;  
*un homme pieux. une femme pieuse. des filles pieuses.*  
 This picture cost me dear, but it is *fine* ;  
*ce tableau me coûte cher, mais il est beau.*  
 This house cost me dear, but it is *fine* ;  
*cette maison me coûte cher, mais elle est belle.*

RULE 27. — *Adjectives agree with the last Substantive.*

When an adjective or a participle is applied to qualify several substantives, it is put after them in French, if it be not one of those mentioned in Rule 30, and it may agree with the last, especially if they are nearly synonymous, or may be considered as parts of some whole ; but if the adjective were any of those mentioned in Rule 30, it must be repeated before every substantive, and agrees with each. Examples :

I have found the door and the window *shut* ;  
*J'ai trouvé la porte et la fenêtre fermée ;* — singular.  
 He has an *absolute* power and authority ;  
*Il a un pouvoir et une autorité absolue.*  
 She has a *pretty* bird, and a *pretty* cage ;  
*Elle a un joli oiseau, et une jolie cage.*

RULE 28. — *Adjectives relating to Nouns of different Genders.*

When an adjective refers to several substantives or persons, or even to several substantives of things, but is separated from them, it is always put in the plural feminine if the substantives are feminine ; but if they are both masculine, or of different genders, it is put in the plural masculine. Examples :

He made his father and mother *happy* ;  
*Il rendit son père et sa mère heureux.*  
 His courage and boldness seem *astomishing* to me ;  
*Son courage et sa hardiesse me paraissent étonnans ;—*  
 Your mother and sister are *learned* ;  
*Votre mère et votre sœur sont savantes ; — pl. f.*  
 My brother and sister are *dead* ;  
*Mon frère et ma sœur sont morts ; (not sont mortes).*

RULE 29. — *Where Adjectives ought to be placed.*

When two or more adjectives refer to the same substantive, they usually follow it in French. Examples :

An ingenious sensible man ; *Un homme ingénieux et sensible.*  
 A long tedious book ; *Un livre long et ennuyeux.*  
 A wise and virtuous woman ; *Une femme sage et vertueuse.*  
 A young liberal prince ; *Un prince jeune et libéral.*

RULE 30. — *Adjectives placed before the Substantive*

The adjectives, *beau*, fine ; *bon*, good ; *grand*, great ; *gros*, big ; *jeune*, young ; *mauvais*, bad ; *méchant*, wicked ; *meilleur*, better ; *moindre*, less ; *petit*, little ; *saint*, holy ; *vieux*, old ; those of number, and all the *possessive*, *demonstrative*, or *indeterminate* pronouns (which some grammarians consider as mere adjectives), precede in French the substantive to which they are joined. Examples :

We have lost a *great* general in this war ;  
*Nous avons perdu un grand général dans cette guerre.*  
 Young men believe they shall live long ;  
*Les jeunes gens croient qu'ils vivront long-temps.*

Note 1. The adjective *cher*, dear, comes before the substantive, when it denotes affection, as *mon cher père*, my dear father ; *ma chère mère*, my dear mother : it comes after when it denotes the price of a thing, as *un livre cher*, a dear book ; *une maison chère*, a dear house.

Note 2. We say *un grand homme*, for a great man ; *un homme grand*, for a tall man ; *une grosse femme*, a fat woman ; and *une femme grosse*, for a woman with a

*une sage-femme*, for a midwife ; and *une femme sage*, for a modest or wise woman ; *un galant homme*, for a man of honour, and *un homme galant*, for a courtier.

**RULE 31.** — *Adjectives placed after the Substantive.*

The adjectives not mentioned in the preceding Rule, are usually placed in French after the substantive which they qualify ; in English, on the contrary, they are always placed before. Examples :

*Grateful* people are like those *fruitful* lands which give more than they receive.

*Les personnes reconnaissantes ressemblent à des terres fertiles, qui donnent plus qu'elles ne reçoivent.*

*Public* good is preferable to *private* interest.

*Le bien public est préférable à l'intérêt particulier.*

**Note.** Adjectives which express some moral qualities may sometimes be placed before or after the substantive : we may say, for instance, *un ami fidèle*, or *un fidèle ami*, a faithful friend ; but this is not often the case, therefore I advise the learner to put them after.

**Observe.** We always put after the substantives, 1. The participles considered as adjectives : as, *des idées embrouillées*, confused ideas. 2. Those of figure or colour : as, *une table ronde*, a round table ; *un habit noir*, a black coat. 3. Those which end in *ique*, *esque*, *ile*, *ule*, or *able* : as, *un esprit pacifique*, a pacific mind ; *une figure grotesque*, an odd figure ; *une tâche facile*, an easy task ; *une femme crédule*, a credulous woman. 4. Those of nations : as, *la constitution Anglaise*, the constitution of England. 5. Those which may be substantively used, and in general all those not mentioned in Rule 30.

## SECTION THE SECOND.

### *Of the Government of Adjectives.*

**RULE 32.** — *Adjectives which govern the Genitive Case.*

1. Adjectives and participles which denote *plenty* or *scarcity*, and in general all those which are followed in



English by the prepositions *of*, *from*, *with*, or *by*, govern in French the genitive or ablative case. Examples :

I am deprived of every thing ; *Je suis privé de tout.*

• The queen is loaded with honour ;

*La reine est comblée d'honneur.*

Your sisters are arrived from France ;

*Vos sœurs sont arrivées de France.*

2. The following, *accusé, aisé, avide, capable, content, digne, fatigué, furieux, incapable, indigne, joyeux, las, libre, mécontent, plein, ravi, vide*, govern also the genitive case. Example : he is praise-worthy ; *il est digne de louanges.*

### RULE 33. — *Adjectives which govern the Dative.*

1. Adjectives which denote *aptness, fitness, inclination, ease, readiness*, or *any habit*, govern in French the noun in the dative case, and most commonly the verb in the infinitive with *à*. Examples :

He is fit for any thing ; *il est propre à tout.*

That is easy to say ; *Cela est facile à dire.*

A disturbed mind is not fit to discharge its duties ;

*Un esprit trouble n'est pas propre à remplir son devoir.*

2. The following, *adroit, agréable, aisé, ardent, beau, bon, conforme, contraire, enclin, facile, habile, ingénieux, inutile, lent, prêt, propre, semblable, sujet, utile*, govern the noun in the dative case, and the verb in the infinitive with *à*. Example : he is liable to mistake ; *il est sujet à se tromper.*

3. Some adjectives govern the dative in French, and the genitive in English : such are, *attentif à*, heedful of ; *sensible à*, sensible of ; *insensible à*, insensible of. Example : I am sensible of your kindness ; *je suis sensible à vos bontés.* A

### RULE 34. *Adjectives followed by à or envers.*

Some adjectives are followed in French by the preposition *à*, and in English by the preposition *in* ; such are, *curieux à*, curious in ; *exact à*, precise in ; *habile à*, skilful in ; *patient à*, patient in ; *zélé à*, zealous in. Examples :

You are skilful *in* doing every thing ;

*Vous êtes habile à tout faire.*

I am precise *in* my engagements ;

*Je suis exact à mes engagements.*

Others are often followed in French by the preposition *envers*, and in English by the preposition *to* : such are, *affable envers*, affable to ; *bon envers*, good to ; *cruel envers*, cruel to ; *poli envers*, civil to. Example :

We must be civil *to* every body.

*Il faut être poli envers tout le monde.*

## SECTION THE THIRD.

### *Adjectives of Dimension.*

RULE 35. — *De haut*, or *de hauteur*, high.

The adjectives of dimension can be rendered in French by an adjective, or by a substantive : thus, *high* can be expressed by *de haut*, or *de hauteur* ; *long*, by *de long*, or *de longueur* ; *broad*, by *de large*, or *de largeur* ; *deep* must be expressed by *de profondeur*, not by *de profond*, and in general the substantive is more elegantly used than the adjective.

It must be remembered always to put the preposition *de* before the words of dimension and number, if they are not preceded by a verb. Examples :

A tower two hundred feet high ;

*Une tour de deux cents pieds de haut, or de hauteur.*

A table six feet long ;

*Une table de six pieds de long, or de longueur.*

A river twenty feet deep ;

*Une rivière de vingt pieds de profondeur (not de profond).*

RULE 36. — *Avoir*, instead of *to be*, before the *Adjectives of Dimension*.

To express the *height*, *depth*, or *breadth* of an object, the English make use of the verb *to be*, and the French of the verb *avoir*, as they always do before a word of number.

N. B. The preposition *de*, is left out after the verb *avoir*, but it remains before the word of dimension. Examples :

This tower is two hundred feet high ;

*Cette tour a deux cents pieds de hauteur.*

That table is six feet long ;

*Cette table a six pieds de longueur.*

That river is twenty feet deep ;

*Cette rivière a vingt pieds de profondeur.*

## SECTION THE FOURTH.

### *Of Comparatives and Superlatives.\**

RULE 37. — *As*, expressed by *que*, after a Comparative.

The word *as*, used in English after a comparative of equality or inferiority, is always expressed in French by *que*, and never by *comme*. Examples :

You are as rich as I am ; *Vous êtes aussi riche que moi.*

I am not so learned as you ;

*Je ne suis pas si savant que vous.*

I have as many books as they have ;

*J'ai autant de livres qu'eux.*

And not, *J'ai autant de livres comme eux ;* nor *je ne suis pas si savant comme vous.*

N. B. The comparatives and superlatives agree in French in gender and number with the substantive which they qualify, in the same manner as adjectives. Example :

The most learned man ; the most learned woman ;

*L'homme le plus savant. La femme la plus savante.*

RULE 38. — *By*, expressed by *de*, after a Comparative.

The word *by*, which is often used after a comparative, to denote how much a thing exceeds another, is always expressed by *de*, and never by *par*. Examples :

\* See page 50. for the different kinds of comparatives and superlatives, and the mode of forming them from adjectives.

I am taller than you *by* the whole head ;  
*Je suis plus grand que vous de toute la tête* (not *par*).  
 You are younger than I am *by* four years.  
*Vous êtes plus jeune que moi de quatre ans* (not *par*).

RULE 39. — Than, expressed by *que* or *de*, after a Comparative.

The word *than*, used after a comparative, is expressed by *que*, when it is followed by a noun or a pronoun. Examples :

Asia is greater *than* Europe ;  
*L'Asie est plus grande que l'Europe.*  
 He is more fortunate *than* you ;  
*Il est plus heureux que vous.*

The word *than* is always expressed by *de* before the ordinal numbers *un, deux, trois, &c.* instead of *que*, as in comparison of objects. Examples :

I am more *than* fifteen years of age ; *J'ai plus de quinze ans.*  
 I have more *than* a hundred guineas ;  
*J'ai plus de cent guinées.*  
 I am not *more than* fifteen years of age ; nor have you more *than* a hundred guineas ;  
*Je n'ai pas plus que quinze ans ; nor vous avez plus que cent guinées.*

RULE 40. — Than expressed by *que de*, or *que ne*, after a Comparative.

The word *than*, used in comparatives, is usually expressed by *que de* before an infinitive mood, and by *que ne* before a verb in the indicative. Examples .

It is more noble to forgive *than* to revenge ;  
*Il est plus noble de pardonner que de se venger.*  
 Riches are more dangerous *than* poverty is troublesome ;  
*Les richesses sont plus dangereuses que la pauvreté n'est commode.*

Note 1. If the first infinitive is preceded by the preposition *à*, then the word *than* is expressed by *qu'à*. Example :

He is more inclined to hurt *than* to oblige you ;  
*Il est plus disposé à vous nuire qu'à vous obliger.*

Note 2. The word *than* is expressed by *que* before an indicative mood, only when there is a conjunction between the word *than* and the verb. Examples :

You learn better *than* when you were in France ;  
*Vous apprenez mieux que quand vous étiez en France.*  
 My brother recovers sooner *than* if he was in town ;  
*Mon frère se rétablit plus tôt que s'il était à la ville.*

RULE 41. — The more, *expressed by plus, and not by le plus.*

The English make use of the definite article before the comparatives of proportion, and the French never : thus, *the more* is expressed by *plus*, *the less*, by *moins*, and not by *le plus* or *le moins*, which are used only in superlatives. Examples :

*The more* you will study, *the more* you will improve ;  
*Plus vous étudierez, plus vous profiterez, (not le plus).*  
*The more* I know mankind, *the more* I love them ;  
*Plus je connais les hommes, plus je les aime.*  
*Not le plus je connais les hommes, le plus je les aime.*

RULE 42. — *Precedency of plus and moins.*

If a comparative of proportion is made with two substantives or two adjectives, they are placed before the verb in English, and after in French.

The words of this sort of sentence are disposed in the following order : 1. We put *plus* or *moins*. 2. The nominative of the verb. 3. The verb. 4. The adjective or substantive ; the rest as in English. Examples :

*The more* difficult a thing is, *the more* honourable ;  
*Plus un chose est difficile, plus elle est honorable*  
*The less* money he gets, *the more* expenses he incurs ;  
*Moins il gagne d'argent, plus il fait de dépense.*

In these and sentences of the like sort, the substantive is preceded by *de*, and the adjective is not.

RULE 43. — *The Superlative governs the Genitive and the Subjunctive.*

The superlative always governs, in French, the noun following in the genitive case, and most commonly the verb in the subjunctive mood. See Rule 155. Examples :  
 The navy of England is the most powerful *in the world* ;  
*a marine d' Angleterre est la plus puissante du monde*—gen.  
 You are the most accomplished lady *I know* ;  
*vous êtes la dame la plus aimable que je connaisse* — subj.

RULE 44. — *Of the Superlative.*

If the substantive precedes the superlative, both take the definite article, *le, la, les* ; but the superlative alone takes an article, if it precedes the substantive. Examples :

The most pleasing company is seldom the best company.  
*a compagnie la plus agréable est rarement la meilleure compagnie.*

This is the most beautiful walk ;  
*voilà la plus belle promenade, ou la promenade la plus belle.*

Note 1. The comparatives and superlatives agree in gender and number with the substantive or pronoun to which they refer, as may be observed from the preceding examples.

Note 2. *Le* is indeclinable before *plus* and *moins* followed by an adverb, and also by an adjective, when there is no comparison of objects. Example :

Nous devons parler *le plus* clairement qu'il nous est possible ; and not *les plus clairement* — adv

Nous ne pleurons pas toujours quand nous sommes *le plus* affligés ; and not *les plus affligés* — adj.

## CHAP. IV.

## OF PERSONAL AND IMPERSONAL PRONOUNS.

This Chapter is divided into five sections : enumerates the circumstances in which the personal pronouns are conjunctive or disjunctive, and shows express them in both cases : *the second* treats of personal pronouns *it, they, or them*, when they are English with reference to animals or things : *it* ascribes to the conjunctive personal pronouns their place in a sentence, and explains the order in which they must be disposed, when they meet together : *it* teaches when the pronouns are or are not to be placed before the verb which they govern or are governed by : *the fifth* informs us when the pronouns must be expressed by *lui* or *soi*, and shows their difference with accuracy.

## SECTION THE FIRST.

*When the Personal Pronouns are Conjunctive or Disjunctive.*

RULE 45. — *How to express the Personal Pronouns in the Nominative Case.*

The personal pronouns *I, thou, he, she, we, you* are *conjunctive*, and expressed by *je, tu, il, elle, nous, ils, elles*, when they are the nominative case of a noun provided they are not joined to another noun or by a conjunction. Examples :

I read, thou speakest, he owes, she comes, we have  
*Je lis, tu parles, il doit, elle vient, nous*

Observe, to use always *il* or *ils*, with reference to a noun masculine, and *elle* or *elles* with reference to a noun feminine : thus, *they are rich*, is expressed in French *sont riches*, speaking of men ; and by *elles sont riches* speaking of women.

The personal pronouns are *disjunctive*, and expressed by *moi, toi, lui, elle, nous, vous, eux, or elles*, under the following circumstances :

1. When they come before or after the words *qui, que, and seul*. Examples :

It is I who say so ; *C'est moi qui le dis*, (not *c'est je*.)

He is more learned than I ; *il est plus savant que moi*.

I am younger than he ; *Je suis plus jeune que lui*.

They alone were present there ; *Eux seuls y étaient présents*

2. When they are used in an answer to a question. Examples :

Who has done that ? I, he, they ;

*Qui a fait cela ? C'est moi, c'est lui, ce sont eux*.

3. When they are joined to a noun or a pronoun by a conjunction. Example :

We learn French, my brother and I ;

*Mon frère et moi nous apprenons le Français*.

4. When they come before a noun, or a verb used in opposition to, or distinction from the first. Example :

You will return to town, and I will go into the country.

*Vous reviendrez à la ville, et moi j'irai à la campagne*.

Observe to repeat *nous* or *vous* before the verb, when it has two or more nominative cases which are not both of the third person : as, *vous et moi nous irons*. *Vous et lui vous danserez ensemble*.

**RULE 46.** — *How to express the Personal Pronouns in the Genitive Case.*

When the personal pronouns are in the genitive case, they are *disjunctive*, and expressed by *de moi, de toi, de lui, d'elle, de nous, de vous, d'eux, d'elles*. Examples :

He complains of me, I do not speak of him ;

*Il se plaint de moi, je ne parle pas de lui*.

They are sometimes, but seldom, *conjunctive*, and expressed by *en*. Examples :



You love my cousin, you speak often of her ;  
*Vous aimez ma cousine, vous en parlez souvent.*  
 Were you speaking of me? Yes, ye were ;  
*Parliez-vous de moi? Oui, nous en parlions.*

**RULE 47.** — *How to express the Personal Pronouns in Dative Case.*

When the personal pronouns are in the dative case they are most commonly *conjunctive*, and expressed *me, te, lui, nous, vous, leur*, before the verb. Example:  
 He pleases *me* ; I will do *him* good ; I will speak to *the*  
*Il me plaît. Je lui ferai du bien. Je leur parlerai.*

They are *disjunctive*, and expressed by *à moi, à toi, à lui, à elle, à nous, à vous, à eux, à elles*, after the verb in three cases.

1. When they come after a noun or a pronoun to which they are joined by a conjunction. Example :

I speak to you as well as to *them* ;  
*Je vous parle aussi-bien qu'à eux.*

2. When they are governed by a reflected verb. Examples :

He applies to *me* ; I do not trust *him* ;  
*Il s'adresse à moi ; je ne me fie pas à lui.*  
 Not, *il me s'adresse, je ne me lui fie pas.*

3. When they are governed by any of the following verbs : *aller*, to go ; *courir*, to run ; *accourir*, to run ; *boire*, to drink ; *penser*, *songer*, to think ; *venir*, to come. Examples :

He comes to us, go to him, I think of you ;  
*Il vient à nous, allez à lui, je pense à vous.*  
 And not *il nous vient, allez lui, je vous pense.*

**RULE 48.** — *Personal Pronouns in the Accusative Case.*

When the personal pronouns governed by a verb are in the accusative, they are generally *conjunctive*, and expressed by *me, te, nous, vous, le, la, les*. Examples :

I know *him* ; I will see *her* ; I esteem *them* ;  
*Je le connais. Je la verrai. Je les estime.*  
 And not *je connais lui, je verrai elle, j'estime eux.*

N. B. When *le, la, les*, stand for the English word *the*, and come before a noun, they are articles : as, the father, mother, and children are dead ; *le père, la mère, et les fans sont morts* : but when *le, la, les*, stand for *him, her, them*, and come before a verb, they are personal pronouns : I know *him*, I know *her*, I know *them* ; *je le connais, je la connais, je les connais.*

RULE 49. — *Personal Pronouns after a Preposition.*

When the personal pronouns are preceded by a preposition, they are always *disjunctive*, and expressed by *moi, lui, elle*, &c. Examples :

As for *me*, I think so ; *Pour moi je pense ainsi.*  
 You will speak after *them* ; *Vous parlerez après eux.*  
 And not *pour me je pense ainsi ; vous parlerez après les.*

## SECTION THE SECOND.

*Of the Pronouns, it, they, them.*

RULE 50. — *The Pronouns, it they, or them.*

The pronouns *it* and *they*, which the English use with reference to animals or things, are expressed in French by *il*, m. or *elle*, f. for the singular, and by *ils*, m. or *elles*, f. for the plural, when they are the nominative of a verb, and *them* are expressed by *le*, m. *la*, f. *les*, pl. when they are governed by a verb in the accusative case : thus, in speaking of a house, we say,

*It* is fine, I will not sell *it*, I will keep *it* ;  
*Elle est belle, je ne la vendrai pas, je la garderai.*

Observe, that these pronouns are expressed in French in the same manner for the nominative and accusative as the

personal pronouns, of which we have already treated; that they also agree in gender and number with the substantive to which they have reference.

**RULE 51.** — *En* used in the Genitive, for it or then

The pronouns *it* and *them*, used with reference to inanimate objects, are expressed by *en*, when the French governs the genitive case, whether they be preceded in English by the prepositions *of*, *from*, *with*, *about*, *for*, or any other. Examples :

Do not speak any more *of it*; *N'en parlez plus.*

You have done me a service, I thank you *for it*;

*Vous m'avez rendu service, je vous en remercie.*

You have got a good place, I congratulate you *upon*

*Vous avez obtenu une bonne place, je vous en félicite.*

When the words *some* and *any* come after a verb, refer to a substantive antecedent, they are also expressed by *en*. Examples :

I have some apples, will you have *any*? Give me a *pile of them*.

*J'ai des pommes, en voulez-vous? Donnez m'en couple.*

Take *some* more. What shall I do *with them*? You give *some* to your sisters.

*Prenez-en davantage. Qu'en ferai-je? Vous en nerez à vos sœurs.*

**RULE 52.** — *lui* or *y*, for it or them, in the Dative C

The pronouns *it* and *them*, governed by a verb which requires the dative in French, are expressed by *lui* or as the personal pronouns, when they refer to animate plants, and usually by *y*, when they refer to other inanimate objects not personified. Examples :

Your horses are hungry, give *them* some oats ;

*Vos chevaux ont faim, donnez-leur de l'avoine.*

This tree is fine, do not hurt *it* ;

*Cet arbre est beau, ne lui faites point de mal.*

There is a fine picture, put a frame *to it* ;

*Voilà un beau tableau, mettez-y une bordure.*

It is a difficult undertaking, you will not succeed *in it* ;  
*C'est une entreprise difficile, vous n'y réussirez pas.*  
 And not *mettez-lui une bordure*, nor *vous ne lui réussirez pas.*

If, however, the impersonal pronouns are used for inanimate objects personified, or preceded by the verb *to owe*, or *to be indebted*, they should be expressed by *lui* or *leur*, (and not by *y*). Thus *lui* and *y* may be said of the same object, joined to different verbs. Example :

This house is well situated, have some repairs done *to it*,  
 you are indebted *to it* for your health ;  
*Cette maison est bien située, faites y faire des réparations, vous lui devez votre santé ;* (not *vous y devez, &c.*)

The words *en* and *y*, of which mention is made in the two preceding rules, are also two adverbs of place ; *en* stands for the words *hence, from thence* ; and *y* for *there, or thither*. Examples :

Will you go to London ? No, I come from *thence* ;  
*Voulez-vous venir à Londres ? Non, j'en viens.*  
 Have you been to France ? No, I have never been *there* ;  
*Avez-vous été en France ? Non, je n'y ai jamais été.*

**RULE 53.** — *When it or them comes after a Preposition it is not expressed in French.*

When the pronouns *it, them* are preceded by a preposition, they cannot be expressed by *lui* or *elle, eux* or *elles*, which in this case are said only of persons or personified objects ; but they are usually left out, and the preposition used in English becomes an adverb when it conveys the idea sufficiently. Examples :

The king was for the war, but the parliament was *against it* ;

*Le roi était pour la guerre, mais le parlement fut contre.*

Come near the fire ; I am *near it* ;

*Approchez-vous du feu. Je suis tout auprès.*

If the preposition cannot become an adverb, we must give the sentence another turn. Example :

At first the house was burnt, and *after it* the church;  
*D'abord la maison fut brûlée, et ensuite l'église.*

RULE 54. — *Use of the supplementary Pronouns, le, la, les.*

The supplementary pronouns, *le, la, les*, are always used in French before the verb *être*, in answer to a question, though there be no pronoun expressed in English.

*Le* is indeclinable: 1. With reference to adjectives of both genders and numbers. Examples: Are your brothers learned? No, they are not; *Vos frères sont-ils savans? Non, ils ne le sont pas.* Are your sisters sick? Yes, they are? *Vos sœurs sont-elles malades? Oui, elles le sont.*

2. With reference to verbs. Example: Do you think they will come? Yes, we do; *Croyez-vous qu'ils viennent? Oui, nous le croyons.*

3. With reference to substantives adjectively used. Example: *Mesdames, êtes-vous parentes? Oui, nous le sommes.\**

*Le* indeclinable is also used with reference to adjectives or verbs, for the word *it* or *so*, sometimes expressed in English, but for the most part understood. Examples: You are happy, and I am not; *Vous êtes heureuse, et moi je ne le suis pas.* I said so, but you would not believe it; *Je le disais, mais vous ne vouliez pas le croire.*

But *le, la, les*, are declinable, and used according to the gender or number, when they have reference to individuals. Examples: Are you Peter's brother? Yes, I am; *Etes-vous le frère de Pierre? Oui, je le suis.* Are you Peter's wife? Yes, I am; *Etes-vous la femme de Pierre? Oui, je la suis.* Are these your books? Yes, they are; *Sont-ce là vos livres? Oui, ce les sont.* Are these your houses? No, they are not †; *Sont-ce là vos maisons? Non, ce ne les sont pas.*

If the adjectives be substantively used, *la* should be used for the feminine singular, and *les* for the plural. Ex-

\* We may also answer, *oui, Monsieur; oui, Madame, &c.* without repeating the verb the question is asked by.

† *Ce* is used in answer to a question asked by *est-ce là*, or *sont-ce là*. Example: *Est-ce là votre chapeau? Oui, ce l'est.*

amples : *Etes-vous la malade pour laquelle on a fait venir le médecin ? Oui, je la suis. Mesdemoiselles, êtes-vous les parentes de monsieur ? Oui, nous les sommes.*

### SECTION THE THIRD.

#### *The right placing of Personal Pronouns.*

##### RULE 55. — *Place of the Personal Pronouns.*

The personal pronouns, *je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils, or elles*, usually precede the verb of which they are the nominative case. Examples : *Je lis*, I read ; *tu lis*, thou readest, &c.

They may be separated from it by the particle *ne*, and the governed pronouns, if there are any ; but never by any adverb. Examples :

He has not seen them ; I will not speak to them *of it* ;  
*Il ne les a pas vus. Je ne leur en parlerai pas.*  
 You always speak the truth ; He often speaks of you ;  
*Vous dites toujours la vérité. Il parle souvent de vous.*  
 Not *vous toujours dites la vérité. Il souvent parle de vous.*

The personal pronouns, *je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils, or elles*, are placed immediately after the verb, or its auxiliary, in three cases.

##### 1. In an interrogative sentence. Examples :

Do you speak French ? Have you learnt it long ?  
*Parlez-vous Français ? L'avez-vous appris long-temps ?*

##### 2. When they are the nominative case of the verbs *dire, répondre, répliquer, continuer, poursuivre, or s'écrier*, used in a sentence as by parenthesis. Examples :

You see, said he, the condition I am reduced to ;  
*Vous voyez, dit-il, l'état où je suis réduit.*  
 Why, did I answer him, have you not told it me before ?  
*Pourquoi, lui répondis-je, ne me l'avez-vous pas dit plutôt ?*

3. Most frequently when the verb is preceded conjunctions *au moins*, *aussi*, *ainsi*, *en vain*, *peut-être*, and some others. Examples :

*In vain* you seek for excuses ; *Perhaps* he will  
*En vain cherchez-vous des excuses. Peut-être viend-*

RULE 56. — *The governed Pronouns placed after the*

When the verb is in the imperative affirmative, the governed pronouns are put after it in French as in English. Examples :

Speak to them ; write to him ; answer us ; see them  
*Parlez-leur ; écrivez-lui ; répondez-nous ; voyez-les*

But if there are two imperatives joined by a conjunction, the governed pronouns are put after the first and before the second. Examples :

Lend or sell it me ; *prêtez-le-moi, ou me le vendez*  
 Forgive or punish them ; *pardonnez-leur, ou les pun-*

If the verb which is in the imperative affirmative governs two pronouns, the accusative goes first. Example :

Give it me, sell it them ; *donnez-le-moi, vendez-le-*

When the pronouns *y* or *en* meet with another pronoun, they go last : as, *menez-les-y, menez-nous-y, donnez-leur-en*, &c. : however, *y* is placed before *moi*, and *en* used instead of *moi en*. Examples : .

Carry me thither ; *menez-y-moi* ; give me some  
*nez-m'en*.

(Not *menez-moi-s-y, donnez-moi-s-en*, as said incorrectly by some persons).

But an *s* is inserted after an imperative in the imperative, joined to *en* pronominal : as, *trouvés-en*, find *cherches-en*, seek some ; also *vas-y*, go there : but *Italie*, where *en* is a preposition.

But if the verb were in the imperative negative, the governed pronouns should go before it, as they do in all tenses. Examples :

Do not sell it him ; do not give it them ;  
*Ne le lui vendez pas ; ne le leur donnez pas.*

**RULE 57.** — *The governed Pronouns placed before the Verb.*

When the verb is not in the imperative affirmative, the governed pronouns are always put immediately before it in a simple tense, and before its auxiliary in a compound one. Examples :

You do not know them ; you have not seen them.  
*Vous ne les connaissez pas ; vous ne les avez pas vus.*

The governed pronouns do not precede any other verbs than those they are governed by, or their auxiliaries : thus we say,

I wanted to speak to them ; he could do it ;  
*Je voulais leur parler ; il pouvait le faire.*  
 (Not *il le voulais parler* ; nor *il le pouvait faire.*)

**RULE 58.** — *Order in which Pronouns are put before the Verb.*

When two or more pronouns are governed by a verb, those of the first and second persons precede those of the third ; and if they are both of the third person, the accusative is placed before the dative ; *y* and *en* go the last ; or, what is the same, the governed pronouns are invariably placed before the verb, in the following order : —

Me, te, se, nous, vous,	<i>go before every other.</i>
Le, la, les,	<i>go before lui, leur, y or en.</i>
Lui, leur,	<i>go before y or en.</i>
Y,	<i>goes before en.</i>

Examples :

He gives it me, he has lent it you, he has sent them to us ;  
*Il me le donne, il vous l'a prêté, il nous les a envoyés.*

When he sends them to me, I shall bring them to you ;

*Quand il me les enverra, je vous les porterai.*

He gives it to him, he will lend it to them, he has sent them to him ;

*Il le lui donne, il le leur prêtera, ils les lui a envoyés.*

I will carry you some thither, I have carried some thither to them ;

*Je vous y en porterai, je leur y en ai porté.*



## SECTION THE FOURTH.

*When the Pronouns are or are not to be repeated in French.*

RULE 59. — *The Personal Pronouns, je, tu, il, &c. repeated.*

The personal pronouns of the first and second persons, such as *je, tu, nous, vous*, are usually repeated in French before every verb of which they are the nominative case, whether they are repeated or not in English. Example:

You should love God with all your heart, forgive your enemies, and pray for those who persecute you ;

*Vous aimerez Dieu de tout votre cœur ; vous pardonnerez à vos ennemis, et vous prierez pour vos persécuteurs.*

The pronouns of the third person are usually repeated—  
1. When they belong to different tenses. 2. When the second is preceded by any other conjunction than *et, ni, or ou*. 3. When the first is affirmative and the second negative, or *vice versâ*. 4. When the second verb is separated from the preceding by many words. Examples :

1. She is and will always be modest, I am sure ;

*Elle est modeste, et elle le sera toujours, je suis sûr.*

2. They are lovely, since they please you ;

*Elles sont aimables, puisqu'elles vous plaisent.*

3. He says so, but he does not believe it ;

*Il le dit, mais il ne le croit pas.*

4. He spoke yesterday to his father about his sister's marriage, and obtained his consent ;

*Il parla hier à son père du mariage de sa sœur, et il obtint son consentement.*

In other circumstances, the pronouns *il* or *elle, ils* or *elles*, are not usually repeated before verbs which are in the same tense. Thus we say : —

He took towns, conquered provinces, and subdued nations ;

*Il prit des villes, conquit des provinces, et subjuguâ des nations.*

RULE 60.— *The governed Pronouns are always repeated.*

The pronouns, *me, te, le, nous, vous, lui, leur, le, la, les*, are always repeated in French before every verb they are governed by, whether they are repeated or not in English. Examples :

A son well educated never rebels against his father ; he loves, honours, and respects him ;

*Un fils bien élevé ne s'arme jamais contre son père ; il l'aime, l'honore, et le respecte.*

I love him, and always shall, if he behave well ;

*Je l'aime, et je l'aimerai toujours, s'il se conduit bien.*

## SECTION THE FIFTH.

*Distinction between lui, elle, se, and soi.*

RULE 61.—himself, herself, expressed by *se, lui, elle, or soi.*

The compound pronouns, *himself, herself, themselves*, joined to a verb, are generally expressed by *se*, if it is reflected ; but if not, *himself* is expressed by *lui-même*, and *herself* by *elle-même* ; *themselves* by *eux-mêmes*, for the masculine, by *elles-mêmes*, for the feminine. Examples :

He submits himself to your orders, but he is not satisfied ;

*Il se soumet à vos ordres, mais il n'est pas content.*

She always speaks of herself, and never of others ;

*Elle parle toujours d'elle-même, et jamais des autres.*

They are come of their own accord into the country ;

*Ils sont venus d'eux-mêmes à la campagne.*

The compound pronouns, *himself* and *herself*, are expressed by *soi*, speaking of persons in general, and after the indeterminate pronouns, *on, chacun, quelqu'un, quiconque, celui, or celle qui*. Examples :

The man who loves nobody but *himself* is not fit for society ;

*L'homme qui n'aime que soi n'est pas propre pour la société.*

Every one acts for *himself* in this world

*Chacun agit pour soi en ce monde.*

Whoever thinks only of *himself* is unworthy to live;

*Quiconque ne pense qu'à soi est indigne de vivre.*

The word *soi* is not used with reference to a noun plural.

RULE 62.—*itself* is rendered by *lui* or *soi*.

The impersonal pronoun, *itself*, is usually expressed by *soi*, and not by *lui*, when it has reference to a pronoun, or to a substantive singular, taken in a general sense, which represents an inanimate object. Examples:

That is good in itself; *cela est bon en soi*.

Loadstone attracts iron to itself; *l'aimant attire le fer à soi*.

When *itself* has a reference to an animate object, it is expressed by *lui-même* or *elle-même*. It is also expressed by *lui-même*, *elle-même*, and not by *soi*, when it refers to an inanimate object, considered as a person. Example:

*La terre est fertile d'elle-même*—(not *de soi*.)

Earth is fruitful of itself.

## CHAP. V.

### OF POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

RULE 63.—*The Possessive Pronouns agree with and are repeated before all their Substantives.*

The possessive pronouns are repeated in French before all their substantives, and agree with them in gender and number; they are indeclinable in English, and need not to be repeated. Example:

My father, mother, and brothers are in the country;

*Mon père, ma mère, et mes frères sont à la campagne.*

We nevertheless use the pronouns *mon*, *ton*, *son*, masc. before a noun feminine which begins with a vowel or an *h* mute, in order to avoid the *hiatus* which would result from the meeting of two vowels. Examples :

*Mon âme*, f. *ton* ambition, f. *son* humeur, f.  
(Not *ma âme*, *ta* ambition, *sa* humeur).

The English make the pronouns *his* and *her* agree with the noun antecedent ; the French, on the contrary, make always *son*, *sa*, *ses*, agree with the noun which follows. Examples :

*Her* husband is young ; *his* wife is handsome ;  
*Son* époux est jeune ; *sa* femme est belle.

**RULE 64.**— *The Possessive Pronouns are used in speaking to one's Relations.*

When we speak to our relations or friends, we use, in French, the possessive pronouns *mon*, *tu*, *mes*, before the words *fil*s, *fil*le, *frère*, *sœur*, *père*, *mère*, *oncle*, *tante*, &c. though they are not used in English. Examples :

Where are you, daughter ? *Où êtes-vous, ma fille ?*  
Here I am, father ; *me voici, mon père.*  
Brother, will you come with me ? Yes, sister ;  
*Mon frère, voulez-vous venir avec moi ? Oui, ma sœur.*

**RULE 65.**— *When the Qualifications of Mr. and Mde. &c. are used.*

When we speak to any person respecting their relations or friends, and we mean to pay them some respect, the qualifications of *Monsieur*, *Madame*, *Mademoiselle*, &c. are usually prefixed, in French, to the possessive pronouns *votre* or *vos*. Examples :

How does your uncle do ?  
*Comment se porte Monsieur votre oncle ?*  
Are your sisters at home ?  
*Mesdemoiselles vos sœurs sont-elles à la maison ?*  
I met with your mother, who told me that your father was not well.  
*J'ai rencontré Madame votre mère, qui m'a dit que Monsieur votre père ne se portait pas bien.*

Observe, The possessive pronouns, *mon, ma*, of which these words, *monsieur, madame, mademoiselle*, are composed, are changed into *mes* for the plural: so we say, *messieurs, mesdames, mesdemoiselles*.

• *Monsieur* and *messieurs* are employed as substantives, and may be preceded by an article or another pronoun: as, *le monsieur que j'ai vu*, the gentleman I have seen; *je parlerai à ces messieurs*, I will speak to these gentlemen. But the possessive pronoun is always left out before *dame, demoiselle*, used substantively: *cette dame*, or *cette demoiselle*, *est belle*, that lady is handsome; and not *cette madame, cette mademoiselle*.

RULE 66.— *When the Possessive Pronouns are rendered by the Personal.*

The possessive pronouns (*my, thy, his, her, &c.*) are expressed in French by the personal pronouns, *me, te, se, nous, vous, lui, leur*, in the dative; and not by *mon, ton, son, &c.* when they are joined with the name of any part of the body to which the verb relates; and in this case an article definite takes the ordinary place of the pronoun. Examples:

You have broke his arm; *Vous lui avez rompu le bras.*

He has cut his finger; *Il s'est coupé le doigt.*

You tread upon their feet; *Vous leur marchez sur les pieds.*

You hurt my hand; *Vous me blessez la main.*

As if it were: you *to him* have broken the arm; he *to him* has cut the finger; you *to them* tread upon the feet; you *to me* hurt the hand; and so on for all other like sentences.

Observe, to express *his, her, and their*, by *se*, when the verb is reflected; and by *lui, or leur*, when it is not.

RULE 67.— *When the Possessive Pronouns are, or are not to be left out in French.*

If the verb does not express an action over any part of the body, the possessive pronouns (*my, thy, his, her, &c.*) are usually left out in French, and the definite article (*le, la, les*) is used instead of them. Example:

I have a pain in my side ; *J'ai mal au côté.*  
 His eyes are sore ; *Il a mal aux yeux.*

But if the sense become obscure by leaving out the possessive pronoun, or for the sake of distinction and contrast, employ the possessive pronouns : as,

I see that my arm swells ; *Je vois que mon bras enfle.*  
 Do you think my hand will ever be cured ?  
*Pensez-vous que ma main se guérisse jamais ?*

Observe, I put *mon bras, ma main*, in the latter sentences, because I can see another person's arm swelling as well as mine ; but I put *au côté, aux yeux*, not *à mon côté, à ses yeux*, because I cannot feel pains in any other side than mine, nor can he have other eyes sore than his own. This distinction is a nice point, and must be particularly attended to.

**RULE 68.**—*When its or their is to be expressed by son, and when by en.*

When the possessive pronouns *its, their*, are used with reference to an inanimate object, they are expressed by *son, sa, ses, leur*, or by *en*, according to the following distinction :

They are expressed by *son, sa, ses, leur, or leurs*, First, when they relate to the nominative of the preceding verb, as personified. Secondly, when they are in the genitive or dative, or preceded by any preposition whatsoever. Thirdly, when, being in the nominative, they are joined to a substantive, qualified by an adjective, or specified by some other words. Fourthly, when in the nominative, the next verb, or its government, is immediately or may be followed by the preposition *de*. Examples :

1. London has *its* beauties ; *Londres a ses beautés.*
2. I admire the size of *its* streets ;  
*J'admire la grandeur de ses rues.*
3. *Its* regular buildings please at the first sight ;  
*Ses bâtimens réguliers plaisent au premier coup-d'œil.*
4. *Its* trade produces immense resources ;  
*Son commerce produit d'immenses ressources.*

*Its ships bring the riches of all countries ;  
 Ses vaisseaux apportent les richesses de tous les pays.*

Except on these occasions, *its* or *their* is expressed by *en* before the verb ; and the article, *le, la, les*, before the substantive. So we should say, speaking still of London :

*Its situation is agreeable ;  
 Le site en est agréable.  
 Its squares appear to me beautiful ;  
 Les places m'en paraissent superbes.  
 I particularly admire its rich warehouses ;  
 J'en admire surtout les riches magasins*

When *its* and *their* have reference to an animate object, they are always expressed by *son, sa, ses, leur, leurs*.  
 Example.

Your horse lost its shoe ; *votre cheval a perdu son fer.*

RULE 69.— *Of the Possessive Pronouns, mine, thine, &c.*

The possessive pronouns (*mine, thine, his, hers, &c.*) agree, in French, both in gender and number, with the substantive antecedent to which they have reference, and are always preceded by the definite article, *le, la, les*.  
 Example :

Many houses have been destroyed during the siege ;  
*yours* and *mine* have been burnt, but *theirs* has not suffered ;  
*Beaucoup de maisons ont été détruites pendant le siège ;  
 la vôtre et la mienne ont été brûlées, mais la leur n'a point souffert.*

These pronouns form their feminine according to Rule 5. page 48.

RULE 70. — *mine is sometimes expressed by mes.*

When the disjunctive pronouns (*mine, thine, his, hers, &c.*) preceded by *of*, are placed after a substantive to which they relate, they are expressed in French by *mes, tes, ses, nos, vos, leurs*, placed before the substantive, and not by *le mien, le tien, le sien, &c.* Examples :

A friend of mine ; *un de mes amis* — (not *un ami des miens*).  
 A book of yours ; *un de vos livres* — (not *un livre des vôtres*).

As if it were : one *of my* friends ; one *of your* books ;  
 and in the same way all sentences of this sort.

RULE 71.— mine, thine, *expressed by à moi, à toi.*

The disjunctive, *mine, thine, &c.* are expressed by *à moi, à toi, à lui, à elle, à nous, à vous, à eux, or à elles*, when they come after the verb, *to be*, which has for its nominative case a substantive, or a personal pronoun. Examples :

That book is mine ; *Ce livre est à moi.*  
 It is not yours, I think ; *Il n'est pas à vous, je crois.*

If, however, the verb *être* is preceded by *ce*, then *mine, thine, &c.* should be expressed by *le mien, le tien, le sien, &c.*  
 Example :

Is that your watch ? Yes, it is mine ;  
*Est-ce là votre montre ? Oui, c'est la mienne.*

N. B. If a substantive come after, or a relative pronoun come before the verb *être*, signifying *to belong*, they are put in the dative case in French, and in the genitive in English. Examples :

This horse is my father's ; *Ce cheval est à mon père.*  
 Whose house is that ? *A qui est cette maison ?*

## CHAP. VI.

### OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

RULE 72.— *ce, cet, cette*, that ; *ces*, those.

The demonstrative pronouns (*this* and *that*) are expressed in French by *ce* before a substantive singular and masculine, when it begins with a consonant or *h* aspirated : as, *ce jardin*, this garden ; *ce héros*, that hero ; and by *cet*, when it begins with a vowel or *h* mute : as, *cet oiseau*, this



bird; *cet homme*, this man; by *cette*, before a substantive feminine: as, *cette maison*, that house: *these* and *those* are expressed by *ces*, before a substantive plural of both genders: as, *ces hommes*, these men; *ces femmes*, these women.

The demonstrative pronouns are repeated before every substantive, and agree with each in gender and number. Example:

This garden, this tree, this house, and all this furniture, are not worth three hundred guineas;

*Ce jardin, cet arbre, cette maison, et tous ces meubles, ne valent pas trois cents guinées.*

To determine more precisely the subject we are speaking of, we add often in French the particle *ci* or *là* to the substantive preceded by *ce*, *cet*, *cette*, or *ces*. Examples:

That man is a rogue; *cet homme-là est un coquin.*

These pens are good for nothing.

*Ces plumes-ci ne valent rien.*

RULE 73.—*ceci, cela*, this, that.

The demonstrative pronouns (*this* and *that*) are expressed in French by *ceci* and *cela*, when they are used to point at some object, without specifying what it is; when *ceci* and *cela* meet in the same sentence, *ceci* denotes the nearest object, and *cela* the most distant. Examples:

This is good, that is bad; *ceci est bon, cela est mauvais.*

You always ask, what is this for, what is that for?

*Vous demandez toujours, pourquoi ceci, pourquoi cela?*

Why did you do that without my leave?

*Pourquoi avez-vous fait cela sans ma permission?*

RULE 74.—*ce qui*, or *ce que*; what, or that which.

The pronouns, *that which*, or *what*, signifying *that thing which*, are expressed in French by *ce qui*, for the nominative case; *ce dont*, for the genitive; *ce à quoi*, for the dative; and *ce que*, for the accusative; which are always singular and masculine. Examples:

*What* is agreeable to the taste, is often prejudicial to the health ;

*Ce qui est agréable au goût, est souvent contraire à la santé.*

I do not know *of what* he is accused ;

*Je ne sais pas ce dont on l'accuse.*

You see *to what* you engage yourself ;

*Vous voyez ce à quoi vous vous engagez*

You give me *that which* you do not like

*Vous me donnez ce que vous n'aimez point.*

N. B. When *ce qui* or *ce que* begins a sentence of two parts, the word *ce* is repeated before the auxiliary *être*, if it is followed by a substantive, a pronoun, or a verb. Examples :

*What* I fear most is treason ;

*Ce que je crains le plus, ce sont les trahisons.*

*What* I wish for most, is that peace may be made ;

*Ce que je désire le plus, c'est qu'on fasse la paix.*

The demonstrative *ce* must not be repeated, when the verb *être* is followed by an adjective without a substantive. Example :

*What* I have eaten was very good ;

*Ce que j'ai mangé était excellent—(not c'était excellent).*

#### RULE 75. — *celui-ci, celui-là* ; this or that.

When the demonstrative pronouns have reference to several substantives, *this* and *these* refer to the objects nearest or last spoken of ; and are expressed, *this* by *celui-ci*, or *celle-ci* ; *these* by *ceux-ci*, or *celles-ci* ; *that* and *those* have reference to the most distant objects, and are expressed, *that*, by *celui-là*, or *celle-là* ; *those*, by *ceux-là*, or *celles-là* ; according to the gender and number of the substantive to which they have reference. Examples :

The body perishes, the soul is immortal : however, we neglect *this*, and sacrifice every thing for *that* ;

*Le corps périt, l'âme est immortelle : cependant nous négligeons celle-ci, et nous sacrifions tout pour celui-là.*

Here are good books : which do you like best, *these* or *those* ?

*Voici de bons livres : lesquels aimez-vous le mieux, de ceux-ci, ou de ceux-là ?*

N. B. *The former* is also expressed by *celui-là* or *celle-là* ; and *the latter* by *celui-ci*, or *celle-ci*.

RULE 76. — *celui de*, or *celle de*, &c. that of ; *celui qui*, that which.

When the demonstrative pronouns are followed immediately by the preposition *of*, they are expressed, *that of*, by *celui de*, or *celle de*, and *those of*, by *ceux de*, or *celles de*.  
Examples :

He spends all his fortune, and *that of* his wife ;

*Il dépense tout son bien, et celui de sa femme.*

Take these horses, or *those of* my son ;

*Prenez ces chevaux, ou ceux de mon fils.*

When the demonstrative pronouns are followed by *which*, expressed or understood, they are expressed, *that* by *celui* or *celle*, *those* by *ceux* or *celles*, and *which* by the relative pronoun *qui*. Examples :

This house is larger than *that which* I have sold ;

*Cette maison est plus grande que celle que j'ai vendue.*

These books are better than *those* you have lent me ;

*Ces livres valent mieux que ceux que vous m'avez prêtés.*

When the word *which* is used in answer to a question, it is also expressed by *celui*, or *celle qui*, if the question is asked by the word *which*. Example :

*Which* of these oranges will you have? Which you please.  
*Laquelle de ces oranges voulez-vous ? Celle qu'il vous plaira.*

*Observe.* In this and the two following rules, the relative pronoun *qui* is changed into *dont*, for the genitive, *à qui* or *auquel*, for the dative, and *que*, for the accusative, according to the case governed by the following verb.

After a preposition, *qui* or *que* are only used when speaking of persons. See the next Chapter.

RULE 77. — *he who expressed in French by celui qui.*

When the personal pronouns (*he, she, they, or those*) are the antecedent of *who, that, or which*, they are not expressed by *il* or *elle*, as before ; but *he who* is rendered by *celui qui*, *she who* by *celle qui*, *they who* by *ceux qui*, or *celles qui*. Examples :

*He who* cannot keep a secret, is incapable of governing ;  
Celui qui ne saurait garder un secret, est incapable de gouverner.

*They whom* you protect, betray you with indignity ;  
Ceux que vous protégez, vous trahissent indignement.

RULE 78. — *celui qui, he who, must be joined in French.*

When in an English sentence the pronouns, *he, she, or they*, are separated from the relative pronouns, *who* or *which*, they must be joined in French, and the second part of the sentence is expressed the first. Examples :

*He* is a bad citizen *who* rebels against his country ;  
Celui qui se révolte contre sa patrie est un mauvais citoyen.

*Those* are mistaken *who* believe that kings are happy ;  
Ceux qui croient que les rois sont heureux, se trompent.

These pronouns can, however, be separated as in English, by adding the particle *là* to *celui* or *celle*. Examples :

*He* is a bad citizen *who* rebels against his country ;  
Celui-là est un mauvais citoyen qui se révolte contre sa patrie.

*They* are mistaken *who* think that kings are happy ;  
Ceux-là se trompent qui croient que les rois sont heureux

## CHAP. VII.

## OF RELATIVE PRONOUNS. \*

RULE 79. — *qui, que, who, that, or which.*

The relative pronouns, *who, that, or which*, are expressed by *qui*, for all sorts of objects, when they are in the nominative case ; and by *que* when they are in the accusative. Examples :

The man *who* speaks ; The book *which* is on the table ;  
*L'homme qui parle. Le livre qui est sur la table.*

The woman *whom* I have seen ; The lesson *which* I have learnt ;

*La femme que j'ai vue. La leçon que j'ai apprise.*

N. B. The word to which the relative pronouns have reference is called the *antecedent*.

RULE 80. — *dont or de qui, of whom, whose, or of which.*

The relative pronouns, *whose, of whom, or of which*, are usually expressed by *dont*, for all sorts of objects, when they follow immediately their antecedent. Examples :

I have seen the person *of whom* you speak ;

*J'ai vu la personne dont vous parlez.*

It is an illness, the cause *of which* is unknown ;

*C'est une maladie dont on ne connaît pas la cause.*

But if the relative pronouns be separated from their antecedent by another substantive, then *whose, or of whom*, are expressed by *de qui*, and *of which* by *duquel, de laquelle, desquels, or desquelles*, according to the gender and number of the substantive to which they have reference. Examples :

He is a man to *whose* discretion I dare not trust ;

*C'est une personne à la discrétion de qui je n'oserais me fier.*

\* See the definition and declension of relative pronouns, page 64.

It is an illness to the progress of *which* one cannot apply too quick remedies ;

*C'est une maladie aux progrès de laquelle on ne peut apporter de trop prompts remèdes* — not *aux progrès de qui* or *dont*.

N. B. The relative pronoun *from whom*, which answers to the Latin ablative, is always expressed by *de qui*, and never by *dont*. Thus we say :

The man *from whom* I received a letter yesterday is sick ;

*L'homme de qui (not dont) j'ai reçu hier une lettre est malade.*

RULE 81. — *qui* or *lequel, laquelle* ; whom, which.

When the relative pronouns are in the dative case, or after any preposition, they are usually expressed by *qui*, speaking of persons ; and always by *lequel* or *laquelle*, singular, *lesquels* or *lesquelles*, plural, speaking of animals and things. Examples :

Your father is a man to *whom* I am much obliged ;

*Votre père est un homme à qui j'ai beaucoup d'obligation.*

The glory to *which* heroes sacrifice, is a false glory ;

*La gloire à laquelle les héros sacrifient est une fausse gloire.*

It is a reason to *which* there is no reply ;

*C'est une raison à laquelle il n'y a point de réplique.*

RULE 82. — *When où can be used for lequel.*

When the relative pronouns are in the genitive, dative, ablative, or after a preposition, and refer to an inanimate object, they are almost indifferently expressed by *où* or by *lequel, laquelle*, &c. if the verb denotes some motion or rest, at least figuratively. Examples :

Avoid the faults into *which* I have fallen ;

*Évitez les fautes où (or dans lesquelles) je suis tombé.*

I know the principle *from which* all your system is derived ;

*Je connais le principe d'où (or duquel) découle tout votre système.*

Note, *Où* and *d'où* are also adverbs of place, and stand for the words *where* or *whence*. Examples :

*Where* are you going?      *Où allez-vous ?*  
 From *whence* do you come?      *D'où venez-vous ?*  
*Where* have you passed?      *Par où avez-vous passé ?*

RULE 83.— *The Relative Pronouns are never omitted in French.*

The relative pronouns, *who*, *whom*, *that*, and *which*, and also the conjunction *that*, are often understood in English; but *qui* and *que*, which answer to them, are never understood in French. Examples :

I think you are in the wrong;      *Je crois que vous avez tort.*  
 The man I was speaking to;      *L'homme à qui je parlais.*  
 The lesson I have learnt;      *La leçon que j'ai apprise.*  
 The book you read is mine;      *Le livre que vous lisez est à moi.*

RULE 84.— *Place and Concord of the Relative Pronouns.*

The relative pronouns are placed in French immediately after the nouns or pronouns to which they have reference; and agree with them in gender and number. Examples :

He rejected an *advice*, the utility of *which* he knew ;  
*Il rejeta un avis dont il connaissait l'utilité.*  
 The *books* for *which* I have subscribed are very good ;  
*Les livres pour lesquels j'ai souscrit sont très-bons.*

## CHAP. VIII.

### OF INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

The interrogative pronouns are, in English, these three: *who*, *which*, and *what*: they are expressed in French as follows :

RULE 85.—*qui* ? or *qui est-ce qui* ? who ?

The interrogative pronouns, *who*, *whose*, *to whom*, &c. which are said of persons only, are expressed in French by *qui*, or *qui est-ce qui*, when they are the nominative case of a verb; they are expressed by *qui* in all other cases, and never by *que* or *dont*, as the relative pronouns, of which before. Examples :

*Who* is there? *Qui est là ?* or *qui est-ce qui est là ?*  
*Of whom* do you speak? *De qui parlez-vous ?*—not *dont*.  
*With whom* do you live? *Avec qui demeurez-vous ?*  
*To whom* do you write? *A qui écrivez-vous ?*  
*Whom* have you seen? *Qui avez-vous vu ?*

RULE 86.—*lequel*, *laquelle*, &c. which.

When the word *which* is interrogatively used, it is always expressed by *lequel* or *laquelle* for the singular, and by *lesquels* or *lesquelles* for the plural. Examples :

*Which* of my sisters will you marry?  
*Laquelle des mes sœurs voulez-vous épouser ?*  
*Which* of these horses do you advise me to buy?  
*Lequel de ces chevaux me conseillez-vous d'acheter ?*  
*Which* of your brothers learns French and Latin?  
*Lequel de vos frères apprend le Français et le Latin ?*

RULE 87.—*quel*, *quelle* ? what ?

When the pronoun *what* is interrogatively used, it is expressed in French by *quel*, m. or *quelle*, f. before a substantive singular, and by *quels*, m. or *quelles*, f. before a substantive plural. Examples :

*What* crime has this man committed to punish him so?  
*Quel crime cet homme a-t-il commis pour le punir ainsi ?*  
*To what* passion is he inclined?  
*A quelle passion est-il enclin ?*  
*What* game shall we play at? *A quel jeu jouerons-nous ?*

RULE 88.—*what*, expressed by *que*, or *qu'est-ce que*.

When the interrogative pronoun *what* signifies *what thing*, it is expressed in French by *que* or by *qu'est-ce qui*



for the nominative, and by *que* or *qu'est-ce que* for the accusative. Examples:

*What* has happened to you?

*Que vous est-il arrivé?* or, *qu'est-ce qui vous est arrivé?*

*What* do you blame in that work?

*Que blâmez-vous?* or, *qu'est-ce que vous blâmez dans cet ouvrage?*

RULE 89.—*what is expressed by quoi after a Preposition.*

When the pronoun *what* is in the genitive, dative, or after a preposition, and signifies *what thing*, it is always expressed by *quoi*, whether the sentence be interrogative or not. Examples:

In *what* am I guilty?

*En quoi suis-je coupable?*

I know of *what* he complains;

*Je sais de quoi il se plaint.*

Of *what* do you accuse me?

*De quoi m'accusez-vous?*

It is *what* you are mistaken in;

*C'est en quoi vous vous trompez.*

## CHAP. IX.

### ON THE DIFFERENT SORTS OF INTERROGATIONS.

RULE 90.—*Interrogations made with où, d'où, comment, &c*

Besides the interrogative pronouns, of which we have treated before, a question is often asked with the following adverbs: *combien*, how much, how many; *comment*, how; *pourquoi*, what for; *quand*, when; *où*, where; *d'où*, from whence; *par où*, through what place. Examples:

*How many* horses have you got?

*Combien avez-vous de chevaux?*

*How* does your father do to-day?

*Comment se porte Monsieur votre père aujourd'hui?*

*Why* do you not answer? *Pourquoi ne répondez-vous pas?*  
*When* will you come to see us? *Quand viendrez-vous nous voir?*

*Where* are you going? *Où allez-vous?*  
 From *whence* do you come? *D'où venez-vous?*

**RULE 91.**— *The Pronouns je, tu, il, &c. go after the Verb in an Interrogation.*

When the following pronouns, *je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils, elles, ce, or on*, are the nominative case of a verb interrogatively used, they are placed immediately after it, or its auxiliary. Examples:

Are *you* sick? Have *you* been sick to-day?  
*Êtes-vous malade? Avez-vous été malade aujourd'hui?*  
 Do *you* learn French? Have *you* learnt Italian?  
*Apprenez-vous le Français? Avez-vous appris l'Italien?*  
 Is there any news? Have *you* heard any news?  
*Dit-on des nouvelles? Vous a-t-on dit des nouvelles?*

In an interrogative sentence we put always a hyphen (-) between the verb and the pronoun: as, *parlez-vous? viendront-ils?* If the verb ends with a vowel, and the pronoun begins with another, we put between them a (-t-) with two hyphens, in order to avoid the hiatus which would result from the meeting of two vowels. Examples:

Does he speak? Will he come? Does she sing well?  
*Parle-t-il? Viendra-t-il? Chante-t-elle bien?*

A verb which ends in *e* mute in the first person singular, takes an acute accent when it is interrogatively used. Examples:

I speak, Do I speak? I walk, Do I walk?  
*Je parle. Parlé-je? Je me promène. Me promené-je?*

N. B. When a verb interrogatively used has but one syllable in the first person singular of the present of the indicative mood, we ask the question with *est-ce-que*. Thus:

Do I lose? *Est-ce-que je perds?—not perds-je?*  
 Do I sleep? *Est-ce-que je dors?—not dors-je?*

RULE 92.—*In an Interrogation the Substantive goes before the Verb.*

1. When a substantive, or any of the following pronouns, *ceci, cela, aucun, quelqu'un, personne, or rien*, is the nominative case of a verb interrogatively used, it begins the sentence in French, and the verb is always followed by *il* or *elle, ils* or *elles*, as if there was no nominative case before. Examples :

Is the dinner ready ?	<i>Le dîner est-il prêt ?</i>
Is that good to eat ?	<i>Cela est-il bon à manger ?</i>
Did any body ask for me ?	<i>Quelqu'un m'a-t-il demandé ?</i>
Is the company come ?	<i>La compagnie est-elle arrivée ?</i>

As if it was : the dinner is *it* ready ? that is *it* good to eat ? and so on for all others.

2. However, when the sentence begins by an interrogative expression, as *who, qui, what, que or quoi, how much, combien, where, où, when, quand, &c.* the pronouns *il, elle, ils, elles*, may be omitted, and the substantive should be placed after the verb, and even after the participle in the compound tenses. Examples :

<i>Who</i> is that man ?	<i>Qui est cet homme ?</i>
<i>What</i> does your son do ?	<i>Que fait votre fils ?</i>
<i>Where</i> is your uncle gone ?	<i>Où est allé votre oncle ?</i>

RULE 93.—*est-ce là, is that ? n'est-ce pas là, is not that ?*

The English put the demonstrative pronouns, *this* or *that*, for the singular, and *these* or *those* for the plural, before the possessive pronouns *my, his, your, their, &c.* when they ask to whom belongs such or such a thing. Interrogations of this sort are expressed in French by *est-ce là, or sont-ce là*, if the sentence is affirmative ; and by *n'est-ce pas là, or ne sont-ce pas là*, if the sentence is negative. Examples :

Is <i>that</i> your house ?	<i>Est-ce là, votre maison ?</i>
Are <i>these</i> your gardens ?	<i>Sont-ce là, vos jardins ?</i>

Is not *that* your house? N'est-ce pas là *votre maison*?  
 Are not *these* your gardens? Ne sont-ce pas là *vos jardins*?

All sentences of this kind are expressed in the same manner.

**RULE 94.** — *Interrogations rendered by est-ce que, or n'est-ce pas.*

The English often ask a question less to be informed if such a thing is or is not, than to show their surprise, that it is so. Interrogations of this sort are expressed in French by *est-ce que*. Examples:

It does not rain, does it? Est-ce qu'il pleut?  
 Your brother is not dead, is he?  
 Est-ce que votre frère est mort?

If the question is negative, the first part of the sentence having positively affirmed that the thing in question is such or such, it is expressed in French by *n'est-ce pas que*, at the beginning of a sentence, or by *n'est-ce pas*, at the end. Example:

It is good weather, is it not?  
 N'est-ce pas qu'il fait beau temps? or *il fait beau temps*;  
 n'est-ce pas?  
 We have seen the king, have we not?  
 N'est-ce pas que nous avons vu le Roi? or *nous avons vu le Roi*;  
 n'est-ce pas?

## CHAP. X.

### DIFFERENT USES OF QUE.

There are in French five distinct uses of *que*, called (*que*) relative, (*que*) interrogative, (*que*) admirative, (*que*) conditional, and (*que*) conjunctive. Having spoken at large of the two first, in the seventh and eighth chapters, we will next treat of the remaining three.

RULE 95. — *Que of Admiration, how or how much.*

The *que* of admiration expresses wonder or surprise; it answers to the English words *how, how much, how many*. Examples :

How happy you are ! *Que vous êtes heureux !*

How wonderful are the works of God !

*Que les ouvrages de Dieu sont admirables !*

How I hate the impious ! *Que je hais les impies !*

*How much* money you have ! *Que vous avez d'argent !*

*How many* misfortunes he has experienced !

*Que de malheurs il a éprouvés !*

Observe, 1. That the adjective which follows *how* in English is always put after the verb in French. Example :

How unhappy I am ! *Que je suis malheureux !*

2. That if *how much*, and *how many*, are followed by a substantive, the *que* which answers to them is always followed by *de* in French. Example :

*How much* trouble you take for me !

*Que de peine vous prenez pour moi !*

N. B. *How many*, preceded by the preposition *of, to*, or any other, should be expressed by *combien de*, and not by *que*. Example :

To *how many* dangers have I not been exposed in France.

*A combien de dangers n'ai-je pas été exposé en France.*

RULE 96. — *Que conditional, whether, or if, in English.*

The conditional *que* is used in the beginning of a sentence, for the word *whether*, and in the middle to avoid the repetition of *si* : in both cases it governs the subjunctive mood. Examples :

*Whether* he does it or not, I do not care ;

*Qu'il le fasse ou non, je ne m'en soucie pas.*

If somebody comes and I am out, send for me ;

*S'il vient quelqu'un et que je sois sorti, envoyez-moi chercher.*

**RULE 97. — Que used for several Conjunctions.**

The *que* conjunctive may be used for many conjunctions, and particularly for the ten following :

- |                                   |                                  |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. <i>That</i> , afin que.        | 6. <i>Since</i> , depuis que.    |
| 2. <i>Unless</i> , à moins que.   | 7. <i>Till</i> , jusqu'à ce que. |
| 3. <i>Before</i> , avant que.     | 8. <i>Because</i> , parce que.   |
| 4. <i>Yet</i> , cependant.        | 9. <i>When</i> , quand.          |
| 5. <i>For fear</i> , de peur que. | 10. <i>Why</i> , pourquoi.       |

**Examples :**

1. Come here, *that* I may speak to you ;  
*Venez-ici, que je vous parle.*
2. I will not go and see him, *unless* he invites me ;  
*Je n'irai pas le voir qu'il ne m'en prie.*
3. You shall not go out *before* it is light ;  
*Vous ne partirez pas qu'il ne soit jour.*
4. Though he should have all the gold in the world, *yet* he would not be satisfied ;  
*Il aurait tout l'or du monde, qu'il ne serait pas content.*
5. Go out quickly, *for fear* the master should come ;  
*Sortez promptement de crainte que le maître ne vienne.*
6. How long is it *since* your brother died ?  
*Combien y a-t-il que votre frère est mort ?*
7. Wait till the rain is over ;  
*Attendez qu'il ne pleuve plus.*
8. If I did not come yesterday, it was *because* I had business ;  
*Si je ne vins pas hier, c'est que j'avais des affaires.*
9. I was at London the day *when* he died ;  
*J'étais à Londres le jour qu'il mourut.*
10. *Why* do you not answer when I speak to you ?  
*Que ne répondez-vous quand je vous parle ?*

**Note.** The conjunction *que* is placed between two verbs, and serves to particularise the sense of the first ; this con-

junction must be used in French every time the word *that* is or could be expressed in English. Examples :

I think one cannot be happy without practising virtue;  
*Je pense qu'on ne peut être heureux sans pratiquer la vertu.*

I maintain he is in the right; it appears you are in the wrong;

*Je maintiens qu'il a raison; il paraît que vous avez tort.*

## OBSERVATIONS.

The word *que* is also used, 1. To join the two terms of a comparison: as, *je suis plus jeune que vous*; I am younger than you. 2. To restrain a negative sentence, then it stands for *but* or *only*: as, *je n'ai que quinze ans*; I am but fifteen years of age. 3. To express a wish, a command, an imprecation or indignation: as, *qu'il périsse l'impie*; may the impious perish.

## CHAP. XI.

## OF INDETERMINATE PRONOUNS.

RULE 98. — *Use of the Particle on, one.*

All vague and general reports expressed in English by *they say, we say, people say, one says, it is said, it is reported*, and such like, are rendered in French by *on*, with the verb in the third person singular. Examples :

*People say, it is thought*, they maintain every where that it is so;

*On dit, on croit, on soutient partout que la chose est ainsi.*

*One is not* always master of one's passions.

*On n'est pas toujours maître de ses passions.*

The passive voice is seldom used in French, therefore, when the passive verb is not followed by a substantive and the preposition *by*, we often turn the passive into active,

setting the pronoun *on* instead of the nominative used in English : thus, *it is said, it is reported, &c.* are expressed '*on dit, on rapporte, &c.* Examples :

*It is believed* that peace will be made this year ;  
*On croit que la paix se fera cette année.*  
 Have letters been received from France to-day ?  
*A-t-on reçu des lettres de France aujourd'hui ?*  
 A courier has been despatched to Spain ;  
*On a envoyé un courier en Espagne.*

*On* must be repeated before every verb of which it is the nominative case. Example :

They praise, blame, threaten, punish, &c.  
*On loue, on blâme, on menace, on punit, &c.*

*Observe.* The learner must take care not to express *by* *on*, except when it is employed absolutely without reference to a substantive plural ; when *they* relates to substantive plural, it is expressed by *ils* or *elles*.

RULE 99. — *Cases where l'on is used instead of on.*

*On* takes elegantly an *l'* after the words *et, si, or ou.* Examples :

If we would practise virtue, we should be happy in this world, and procure ourselves an eternal happiness ;  
*Si l'on pratiquait la vertu, on serait heureux sur la terre, et l'on se procurerait un bonheur éternel.*  
 You have been, or will soon be rewarded ;  
*On vous a récompensé, ou l'on vous récompensera bientôt.*

*L'on* is also used after *que*, when the next verb begins *c,* or *q.* Examples :

We learn better what we understand, than what we do not ;  
*On apprend mieux ce que l'on comprend, que ce que l'on ne comprend pas.*  
 It seems they quarrel with the servants.  
*Il semble que l'on querelle les domestiques.*

N. B. *L'on* sounds better than *on* in the above sentences, and is always used by good authors in such cases,



provided it be not followed by *le, la, les*, in which case *on* never takes an *l*. Thus we could not say, *mettez là votre lettre, et l'on la lira*; but we must say, *et on la lira*.

RULE 100. — *Different Significations of même.*

The words *the same* are expressed in French by *le* or *la même* for the singular, and by *les mêmes* for the plural, whether they be joined or relative to a substantive. Examples :

*The same* thing does not please every body

*La même chose ne plaît pas à tout le monde.*

Customs are not *the same* in every country;

*Les usages ne sont pas les mêmes dans tous les pays.*

The word *même* is often used in French to give more energy to the speech; in that case it comes after a substantive or a pronoun, and answers to the English expressions *himself, herself, itself, &c.* Examples :

The king *himself* opposed it; *Le roi même s'y opposa.*

Religion *itself* forbids it; *La religion même le défend.*

On such occasions we more generally place *lui, elle, eux, elles*, before *même*: as, *Le roi lui-même s'y opposa; la religion elle-même le défend.*

The word *même* is sometimes an adverb, and answers then to the English words *also* or *even*. Example :

We must love every body, *even* our enemies;

*Il faut aimer tout le monde, même nos ennemis.*

RULE 101. — *Plusieurs, many, or several.*

The words *many* and *several* are expressed by *plusieurs*, always plural, of both genders. Examples :

*Many* deceive themselves when they want to deceive others;

*Plusieurs se trompent en voulant tromper les autres.*

Do not apply yourself to *several* things at once.

*Ne vous appliquez pas à plusieurs choses à la fois.*

RULE 102. — Un autre, *pronoun and adjective*, another.

The indeterminate pronouns *other, another*, are expressed by *un autre* for the singular, and by *les autres* for the plural. These words are either pronouns or adjectives; when pronouns, they are always masculine; and when adjectives, they agree in gender and number with the substantive to which they have reference. Examples :

*Another* would not have forgiven you so easily as I did ;  
Un autre ne vous aurait pas pardonné si facilement que moi.

Do not speak ill of *others*, if you would not have *others* speak ill of you.

*Ne parlez pas mal des autres, si vous ne voulez pas que les autres parlent mal de vous.*

N. B. When the word *others* is in the genitive or dative case, or preceded by a preposition, it is most commonly expressed in French by *autrui*. Examples :

We must not covet *other men's* goods ;

*Il ne faut point désirer le bien d'autrui.*

Do not do by *others* what you would not be done by.

*Ne faites point à autrui ce que vous ne voudriez pas qu'on vous fit.*

People often excuse in themselves what they condemn in *others* ;

*On excuse souvent en soi ce que l'on condamne en autrui.*

RULE 103.— Chacun, *always singular and masculine*, every one.

The indeterminate pronouns, *every one, every body*, are generally expressed by *chacun*, always *masculine and singular*. Examples :

God will reward *every body* according to his works ;

*Dieu rendra à chacun selon ses œuvres.*

Every one lives after his own way ;

*Chacun vit à sa manière.*

Nevertheless, if we speak to ladies, we must employ *chacune* in the feminine. Example :

*Every country has its customs,*  
*Chaque pays a ses usages.*

The word *each* employed with relation to a substant plural expressed before, is always singular, and expressed by *chacun*, masc. *chacune*, fem. Examples :

Put these books *each* in its place ;

*Remettez ces livres chacun à sa place.*

The pictures of great painters have *each* their merit

*Les tableaux des grands maîtres ont chacun son mérite*

Those two sentences have *each* a different sense ;

*Ces deux phrases ont chacun un sens différent.*

RULE 104. — *Quelqu'un*, sing. and masc. somebody

The indeterminate pronouns *somebody*, *any body*, expressed by *quelqu'un*, singular and masculine. Examples :

*Somebody* will come to dine with us ;

*Quelqu'un viendra dîner avec nous.*

Has ever *any body* doubted of the existence of God

*Quelqu'un a-t-il jamais douté de l'existence de Dieu ?*

The words *some* and *any* before a substantive are pressed by the partitive article *du*, *de la*, *des*, or by *que*  
Examples :

I will make use of *some* of your books ;  
*Je me servirai de quelques-uns de vcs livres.*  
 Do you know *any* of these ladies ?  
*Connaissez-vous quelques-unes de ces dames ?*

When *some* and *any* have reference to a substantive used in the preceding sentence, they are usually expressed by *le tout*, as we have seen before, Rule 51. Example :

I have *some* oranges, will you have *any* ?  
*J'ai des oranges, en voulez-vous ?*

#### *Of tout and its various Constructions.*

The word *tout* is of extensive import in the French language, being either a substantive, an adjective, a pronoun, or even an adverb, according to the following explanations.

RULE 105. — *Le tout*, *substantive sing. and masc.* the whole.

When the English words *the whole* are not placed before a noun, they are substantives, and expressed by *le tout*, *le tout* singular and masculine. Examples :

*The whole* is greater than a part ;  
*Le tout est plus grand que la partie.*  
 I will take *the whole* ; *Je prendrai le tout.*

The words *all* and *every thing*, followed by a verb, are substantives, and expressed by *tout*, but without an article. Examples :

*It* is vanity in this world ; *Tout est vanité en ce monde.*  
 Fortune, dignities, honour, *every thing* vanishes when we die ;  
*Le tout, biens, dignités, honneurs, tout disparaît à la mort.*

RULE 106. — *Tout le, toute la*, *adj.* all or the whole.

When the words *all* and *the whole* come before a substantive, they are adjectives, and expressed by *tout le*, or

*toute la*, for the singular, and by *tous les* or *toutes les* for the plural.

I am with *all* the respect possible, sir, &c.

*Je suis avec tout le respect possible, Monsieur, &c.*

*The whole fleet is at sea ; Toute la flotte est en mer.*

*Note.* When *tout* stands for the word *every*, placed before a substantive, it takes an article in the plural, but not in the singular. Examples :

*Every man is mortal ; Tout homme est mortel.*

Come and see us *every* day ; *Venez nous voir tous les jours.* — And not *tout l'homme est mortel* ; nor *venez nous voir tous jours*. \*

RULE 107. — *Tout ce qui, tout ce que, pronoun*, all that, every thing that.

The English words, *all that, every thing that*, and also *whatever*, signifying *all that*, are pronouns, and expressed in French by *tout ce qui*, or *tout ce que*, always singular and masculine. Examples :

*All that* you say is true ; *Tout ce que vous dites est vrai.*

*All* is not gold *that* glitters ; *Tout ce qui brille n'est pas or.*

You have not seen *every thing that* was curious ;

*Vous n'avez pas vu tout ce qu'il y avait de curieux.*

RULE 108. — *Tout, declinable and indeclinable, quite.*

When the word *tout* stands for the adverbs *quite, entirely, although*, or the first *as* of a sentence, where that word is twice used, it is always indeclinable before an adjective or a participle masculine, singular or plural. Example :

*As* learned *as* philosophers are, they are sometimes mistaken ;

*Les philosophes, tout savans qu'ils sont, se trompent quelquefois.*

\* Except, however, *tout le monde*, for *every body*, and not *tout monde*.

It is also indeclinable before an adjective or a participle feminine of both numbers, which begins with a vowel or *h* mute; but it is declinable before an adjective or a participle feminine which begins with a consonant, and agrees with it in gender and number. Examples:

Your mother is *quite* alarmed; your sisters are *quite* cast down;

*Votre mère est tout alarmée; vos sœurs sont tout abattues.*

Those above are indeclinable; the following are declinable:

You mother was *quite* surprised at that news;

*Votre mère fut toute surprise à cette nouvelle.*

Your sisters, *as* rich and handsome *as* they are, do not marry;

*Vos sœurs, toutes riches et toutes belles qu'elles sont, ne se marient point.*

### Of *Quelque*.

*Quelque* is used in two ways: *first*, adverbially, to signify in what manner and degree; and it is then indeclinable before the adjective, which it modifies: *secondly*, when used to denote *one*, *some*, or an *uncertain number* of things, it agrees in number with the noun that expresses them.

The two following rules will explain the arrangement of those sentences in which this word occurs, where the French construction is different from the English.

RULE 109. — *Quelque*, *indeclinable*, however, howsoever.

When the English words, *however*, *howsoever*, *though* *er so much*, or *so little*, come before an adjective, or a participle, they are expressed in French by *quelque* indeclinable.

The construction of the sentence is as follows: 1. *quelque* put first; 2. the adjective: 3. *que*; 4. the verb in the subjunctive mood; 5. the substantive; the rest as in English. Examples:

*Though* his fault be *ever so great*, I will forgive him ;  
*Quelque grande que soit sa faute, je lui pardonnerai.*  
*However* praiseworthy your conduct may be, it will be  
 condemned ;  
*Quelque louable que soit votre conduite, elle sera con-*  
*damnée.*

RULE 110. — *Quelque*, *adj. and declinable*, whatever.

The English word *whatever*, followed by a substantive, and any other verb than *to be*, is an adjective, and expressed by *quelque* before a noun singular, and by *quelques*, with an *s* before a noun plural.

The construction is: 1. *quelque* ; 2. the substantive ; 3. *que* ; 4. the verb in the subjunctive mood ; the rest as in English. Examples :

*Whatever* faults he has committed, I will forgive him ;  
*Quelques fautes qu'il ait commises, je lui pardonnerai.*  
*Whatever* fortune you have, you are never satisfied ;  
*Quelques biens que vous ayez, vous n'êtes jamais content.*

RULE 111. — *Quel que, quelle que, &c. in two words.*

The English word *whatever*, followed by a substantive, and the verb *to be*, is expressed in French by *quel que*, in two words, for the masculine singular, and by *quelle que*, for the feminine : by *quels que* for the masculine plural, and by *quelles que* for the feminine.

The construction is: 1. *quel* or *quelle* ; 2. *que* ; 3. the verb in the subjunctive mood ; 4. the substantive : the rest as in English. Examples :

*Whatever* his fault may be, I will forgive him ;  
*Quelle que soit sa faute, je lui pardonnerai.\**  
*Whatever* your talents may be, you will not succeed  
 without application ;  
*Quels que soient vos talens, vous ne réussirez pas sans*  
*application.*

\* I have repeated the same sentence in these three rules, to render more obvious the difference between *quelque* indeclinable, *quelques* adjective, and *quel que* in two words.

RULE 112.—*Quelque chose que, or quoi que ce soit, whatever.*

The English words *whatever, whatsoever*, meaning *all things soever*, are usually expressed by *quelque chose que, or quoi que*, when they are placed at the beginning of the sentence, and by *quoi que ce soit*, when they are placed after a verb. They govern the next verb in the subjunctive mood. Examples :

*Whatever* you do for me, I will reward you for it.

*Quelque chose que (or quoi que) vous fassiez pour moi, je vous en récompenserai.*

I complain of nothing *whatever* ; I have seen nothing *whatever*.

*Je ne me plains de quoi que ce soit ; je n'ai vu quoi que ce soit.*

I wish he would apply to any thing *whatever*.

*Je désire qu'il s'applique à quoi que ce soit.*

RULE 113.—*Quiconque, qui que ce soit, whoever, whosoever.*

The indeterminate pronouns, *whoever, whosoever*, are most usually expressed by *quiconque*, when they mean *all those who*. Examples :

*Whoever* abandons himself to his passions renders himself unhappy.

*Quiconque s'abandonne à ses passions, se rend malheureux.*

God will punish *whosoever* transgresses his laws.

*Dieu punira quiconque transgresse ses lois.*

I speak to *whoever* will hear me.

*Je parle à quiconque veut m'entendre.*

They are usually expressed by *qui que ce soit, qui or que*, when they mean *whatever may be the person, who*. Examples :

Of *whomsoever* you speak, avoid slander ;

*De qui que ce soit que vous parliez, évitez la médisance.*

*Whosoever* shall ask for me, say I am engaged ;

*Qui que ce soit qui me demande, dites que je suis occupé.*



*Whomsoever* you meet with, do not say what you have seen ;

*Qui que ce soit que vous rencontriez, ne dites pas ce qu'avez vu.*

N. B. Instead of *qui que ce soit*, we often more elegantly use *qui que*, except before *il* or *ils* ; so in the preceding examples we could say ; *de qui que vous parliez ; qui que vous rencontriez* ; but we never say, *qui qui* in the nominative, for *qui que ce soit qui*.

The pronouns, *any body whatever*, when the sentence expresses a doubt, and *nobody whatever*, are almost indifferently expressed by *qui que ce soit* or *personne*. Examples :

I doubt whether that will please *any body whatever* ;

*Je doute que cela plaise à personne, or à qui que ce soit.*

He trusts *nobody whatever* ;

*Il ne se fie à personne, or à qui que ce soit.*

*Nobody whatever* has spoken to me against you ;

*Personne (or qui que ce soit) ne m'a parlé contre vous.*

#### RULE 114. — L'un l'autre, *one another*.

The indeterminate pronouns, *one another, each other* are expressed in French, by *l'un l'autre*, masculine, *l'une l'autre*, feminine, with reference to a noun singular, and by *les uns les autres*, masculine, *les unes les autres*, feminine, with reference to a noun plural, as they are substantively employed in either case.

The first of these pronouns is always in the nominative in French : thus, if they are preceded by a preposition in English, that preposition must come between them in French. Example :

My brother and your sister speak always of *one another*, they think of *one another*, they are made for *one another*, they cannot live without *one another* ;

*Mon frère et votre sœur parlent toujours l'un de l'autre, ils pensent l'un à l'autre, ils sont faits l'un pour l'autre, ils ne sauraient vivre l'un sans l'autre.*

RULE 115. — L'un et l'autre, *both*.L'un et l'autre, &c.      *Both, one and another.*L'un ou l'autre, &c.      *Either.*Ni l'un ni l'autre, &c.      *Neither.\**

These pronouns agree in gender and number with the noun to which they have reference: if they are preceded by a preposition in English, that preposition must be repeated in French, before *l'un* and before *l'autre*. Examples:

I will do it *for* them both;*Je le ferai pour l'un et pour l'autre.*I will do it *for* either;*Je le ferai pour l'un ou pour l'autre.*I will do it *for* neither of them;*Je ne le ferai ni pour l'un ni pour l'autre.*

N. B. The word *both* followed by a substantive is expressed by *les deux*: as, *je me sers des deux mains*; I use *both* hands. *Both* followed by *and* is a conjunction sometimes expressed by *et*, but oftener left out in French. Example:

He is happy *both* in peace and war;*Il est heureux et en paix et en guerre, or il est heureux en paix et en guerre.*RULE 116. — Ne *and* personne, *nobody*.

The indeterminate pronoun, *nobody*, is expressed by *personne*, masculine and singular. *Personne* requires *ne* before the verb. Examples:

*Nobody* knows whether he is worthy of love or hatred;*Personne ne sait s'il est digne d'amour ou de haine.*You please *nobody*; *Vous ne plaisez à personne.*

*Personne* is masculine as a pronoun, and feminine as a substantive. Thus we say:

I know *nobody* so learned as you;*Je ne connais personne si savant que vous* — masculine.I know *a person* as learned as you are;*Je connais une personne aussi savante que vous* — feminine.

\* *Ni l'un ni l'autre* requires *ne* before the verb.

RULE 117. — *Aucun* and *ne pas un*, *none*, *not one*.

*None* is expressed by *aucun* or *aucune*, and *not one* by *pas un* or *pas une*, adj.: both require *ne* before the verb. Examples :

I had many friends, yet *not one* has relieved me ;  
*J'avais bien des amis, cependant pas un ne m'a secouru.*  
*None* of you were there ; *Aucun de vous n'y était.*  
 That gentleman had six daughters ; *none* of them has married ;  
*Cet homme a eu six filles ; aucune (or pas une), ne s'est mariée.*

RULE 118. — *Ne* and *rien*, *nothing*.

The word *nothing* is expressed by *rien*, and requires *ne* before the verb which agrees with it. Example :

*Nothing* is more rare than a true friend ;  
*Il n'y a rien de plus rare qu'un véritable ami.*  
 I have seen *nothing* finer ; *Je n'ai rien vu de plus beau.*

N. B. *Rien* is always joined by the preposition *de* to the following adjective, when not separated from it by the verbs *être*, *paraître*, *sembler*.

*Aucun*, *personne*, and *rien*, do not require *ne* before the verb, in a sentence interrogative or of doubt ; but then *aucun* stands for *any*, *personne* for *any body*, and *rien* for *any thing*. Examples :

Was there ever *any body* more eloquent than Cicero ?  
*Y eut-il jamais personne plus éloquent que Cicéron ?*  
 Have you ever seen *any thing* more curious ?  
*Avez-vous jamais rien vu de plus curieux ?*  
 I question if there is *any* author without a fault ;  
*Je doute qu'il y ait aucun auteur sans défaut.*

When the words *rien*, *personne*, *aucun*, and some others, serve to answer a question, without repeating the verb used by the enquirer, they imply a negation, without employing *ne*. Examples :

On whom must one rely in misfortune? On nobody.  
*Sur qui doit-on compter dans le malheur ? Sur personne.*  
 Which do you prefer? None of them.  
*Lequel préférez-vous ? Aucun d'eux.*

---

## CHAP. XII.

### SEVERAL MODES OF NEGATION

This Chapter is divided into two sections: *the first* explains the mode of expressing in French the English negations; *the second* shows the several circumstances in which a negative expression is required in French, when there is none in English.

---

#### SECTION THE FIRST.

*How to express in French the English Negations.*

The English negations are these eight: 1. *nobody*; 2. *no* or *not one*; 3. *nothing*; 4. *neither*; 5. *never*; 6. *by no means*; 7. *no*; 8. *not*. As we have spoken in the preceding Rules of the first three, it only remains to treat of the five others.

RULE 119. — *Ni* or *ni ne*, neither and nor.

The word *neither*, besides its being an indeterminate pronoun (as we said before, Rule 115), is also a negative conjunction when it is followed by *nor*. When *neither* and *nor* come before two nouns, or two verbs in the infinitive mood, they are both expressed by *ni* and *ne* before the verb which is in the indicative mood. Examples:

*Neither prayers nor threatenings could move him;*  
*Ni prières ni menaces ne purent l'attendrir.*  
*He knows neither how to read nor write;*  
*Il ne sait ni lire ni écrire.*

If these conjunctions come before two verbs in the dicative mood, *neither* is expressed by *ne* before the first and *nor* by *ni ne* before the second. Examples :

I *neither* praise *nor* blame you ;  
*Je ne vous loue, ni ne vous blâme.*  
 He *neither* loves *nor* hates you ;  
*Il ne vous aime, ni ne vous hait.*

RULE 120. — Ne *and* *jamais*, *never* ; *nullement*, *by no means*.

The word *never* is rendered by *jamais* ; *by no means* expressed by *nullement* ; *jamais* and *nullement* require before the verb, without *pas* after. Examples :

I have *never* seen the queen of England ;  
*Je n'ai jamais vu la reine d'Angleterre.*  
 I *by no means* approve of your conduct ;  
*Je n'approuve nullement votre conduite.*

RULE 121. — *Aucun*, *aucune*, *point de*, or *non*, *no*.

The negative expression *no* before a substantive is expressed in French by *point de*, or by the adjective *aucun* masculine, *aucune* feminine, before a noun singular, by *aucuns* masculine, *aucunes* feminine, before a noun plural. Examples :

You have *no* good qualities ;  
*Vous n'avez aucunes bonnes qualités, (or point de bonnes qualités).*  
 He takes *no* care of his business ;  
*Il n'a aucun soin (or point de soin) de ses affaires.*

When *no* is used in answer to a question, it is expressed in French by *non*. Examples :

Have you seen the king ? *No*, sir ;  
*Avez-vous vu le roi ? Non, monsieur.*  
 Do you learn French ? *No*, madam ;  
*Apprenez-vous le Français ? Non, madame.*

**RULE 122.** — *Ne pas, non pas que, or non que, not.*

The negative *not* is usually expressed by *ne* before the verb or its auxiliary, and by *pas* or *point* after. Examples :

Do *not* speak to him ; have you not spoken to him ?  
*Ne lui parlez pas ; ne lui avez-vous pas parlé ?*

If the verb, negatively used, is in the present infinitive, *ne* and *pas* are usually both placed before it. Examples :

I go away, *not* to displease you ;  
*Je m'en vais pour ne pas vous déplaire.*

One must be a fool *not* to perceive that he is in the wrong ;

*Il faut être insensé pour ne pas voir qu'il a tort.*

The word *not* followed by *that*, is expressed by *non que, or non pas que* with the following verb in the subjunctive. Example :

I will do it, *not that* I am obliged, but to have peace ;  
*Je le ferai, non que, (or non pas que) j'y sois obligé, mais pour avoir la paix.*

**RULE 123.** — *Ne without pas, before some verbs, not.*

The negative *not* is expressed by *ne*, without *pas* or *point*, with these four verbs — *cesser*, to cease, *oser*, to dare, *pouvoir*, to be able, and *savoir*, used in the conditional, for, to be able. Examples :

He does not cease complaining ; *Il ne cesse de se plaindre*

I dare not speak to him ; *Je n'ose lui parler.*

I cannot walk ; *Je ne puis marcher.*

You cannot refuse him ; *Vous ne sauriez le refuser.*

*Note.* The words *no more*, or *not any more*, are expressed by *ne* before the verb, and *pas plus* after, when *more* is followed by *than* ; but they are expressed by *plus* without *pas*, when *more* is not followed by *than*. Examples :

I am *no more* than twenty years of age ;  
*Je n'ai pas plus de vingt ans.*

It is *no more* than a week since I saw your brother; you will see him *no more*;

*Il n'y a pas plus de huit jours que j'ai vu votre frère; vous ne le verrez plus* — not *vous ne le verrez pas plus*.

RULE 124. — *Distinction between pas and point.*

1. *Point* is more exclusive than *pas*. The first denies absolutely, and signifies *not at all*. The second denies sometimes but in part. Examples:

All the accused persons are not guilty;

*Tous ceux qu'on accuse ne sont point coupables;*

*Tous ceux qu'on accuse ne sont pas coupables.*

The first sentence signifies that none of the accused are guilty; the second signifies only that the accused are not all guilty.

2. We make use of *point* in an interrogative sentence, when we doubt of the thing in question, and of *pas* when we are persuaded of it. Example:

Have you not seen my brother to-day?

*N'avez-vous point vu mon frère aujourd'hui?*

*N'avez-vous pas vu mon frère aujourd'hui?*

In the first sentence, I doubt whether you have seen my brother or not; in the second, I am persuaded you have seen him.

3. We make use of *point* to denote a thing that happens never, or very seldom, and of *pas* to denote that it does not happen in the time we are speaking, though it may happen very often. Example:

You do not study;

*Vous n'étudiez point; vous n'étudiez pas.*

The first sentence signifies, that habitually you do not study; and the second, that you do not study at present, though you may be very studious.

N. B. This distinction is very exact, and conformable to the practice of the best French authors: there are many circumstances, however, in which *pas* and *point* can be almost indifferently used.

## SECTION THE SECOND.

*Negative Expressions in French, and not in English.*RULE 125. — *Negation used in French, and not in English.*

The particle *ne* is used in French after a comparative, and after *autre, autrement*, otherwise: in all these cases there is no negative expression in English. Examples: \*

Your brother is younger than I thought;

*Votre frère est plus jeune que je ne pensais.*

The affair is quite different from what it had been related to me;

*L'affaire est tout autre qu'on ne me l'avait racontée.*

RULE 126. — *Negation used in French, and not in English.*

The particle *ne* is used after these four verbs; *appréhender*, to apprehend; *avoir peur*, to be afraid; *craindre*, fear; *empêcher*, to hinder; and *prendre garde*, to take care, when they are affirmatively used. Examples:

I will hinder him from doing you wrong;

*J'empêcherai qu'il ne vous fasse tort.*

I fear he will come; *Je crains qu'il ne vienne.*

*Douter*, to doubt, on the contrary, requires *ne* before the next verb, when negatively used. Example:

We do not doubt that he is come;

*Nous ne doutons pas qu'il ne soit arrive.*

RULE 127. — *Negation used in French, and not in English.*

The five following conjunctions, *à moins que*, unless; *de crainte que*, for fear; *de peur de*, lest; *que*, used for unless, and *que*, for before or until; require the particle *ne* before the next verb. Examples:

\* *Ne* should be left out if the verb be in the infinitive mood, or if there be a conjunction between *que* and the verb, as we said before, in the second note of Rule 40.



I will not go there *unless* you come with me ;  
*Je n'irai pas, à moins que vous ne veniez avec moi.*  
 I will not give you a watch *until* you speak French ;  
*Je ne vous donnerai pas de montre, que vous ne parliez Français.*

*Observe*, That all the verbs and conjunctions mentioned in these two rules govern the verb in the subjunctive mood (*si* excepted).

RULE 128. — *Ne* before the Verb, and *que* after, but or only.

When the words *but* and *only*, after a verb, mean *no more, nothing else*, or *nobody else than*, they are expressed by *ne* before the verb, and *que* after, not by *mais*. Examples :

I have *but* twenty guineas ; *Je n'ai que vingt guinées.*  
 I have *but* one true friend ; *Je n'ai qu'un véritable ami.*

The word *only*, after a verb, is expressed by *seulement* in other circumstances. Example :

If you had *only* two friends, you would succeed ;  
*Si vous aviez seulement deux amis, vous réussiriez.*

When *but* begins the second part of a sentence, it is usually expressed by *mais*. Example :

I could wish to travel, *but* I have no money ;  
*Je voudrais bien voyager, mais je n'ai pas d'argent.*

---

## SYNTAX OF VERBS.

The verb is a part of speech the most extensive, the most essential, and altogether the most difficult either to teach or to learn ; therefore close attention must be given to the following pages, in which the construction of verbs is fully explained, and the different genius of the two languages is pointed out with accuracy and precision.

## CHAP. XIII.

## OF THE GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.\*

**RULE 129.** — *Verbs which govern the Genitive in French.*

1. Most of the reflected verbs not mentioned in the next rule govern the genitive in French, whatever case they govern in English. Examples :

To perceive a trick,	<i>S'apercevoir d'un tour.</i>
To seize upon something,	<i>S'emparer de quelque chose.</i>
To enquire about news,	<i>S'enquérir de nouvelles.</i>
To remember a history,	<i>Se ressouvenir d'une histoire.</i>

And so on for others.

2. The following — *abuser*, to abuse ; *avoir besoin*, to want ; *avoir pitié*, to pity ; *être altéré*, to thirst after ; *hériter*, to inherit ; *jouer* to enjoy ; *manquer*, to want ; *médire*, to traduce ; *rendre raison*, to account for ; *rougir*, to blush ; *user*, to use ; govern the genitive in French. Thus we say :

To want money,	<i>Avoir besoin d'argent.</i>
To pity the unfortunate,	<i>Avoir pitié des malheureux.</i>
To inherit a large fortune,	<i>Hériter d'un grand bien.</i>
To enjoy good health,	<i>Jourir d'une bonne santé.</i>
To traduce one's neighbour,	<i>Médire de son prochain.</i>

And so on with the rest.

3. The verbs passive followed in English by the prepositions, *from* or *with*, govern the genitive case in French. Examples :

He is loaded <i>with</i> spoil,	<i>Il est chargé de butin.</i>
This book is translated <i>from</i> the English ;	
<i>Ce livre est traduit de l'Anglais.</i>	

\* The alphabetical series of verbs at the end of the grammar having been carefully revised and corrected in this edition, the learner must have recourse to it ; and he will there find the government of some verbs not mentioned in the following rules.

4, The word *by*, which comes sometimes after a verb passive, is usually expressed by *de*, when the verb does not express any action of the body, and by *par* when it does. Thus we say :

Your brother has been killed *by* two thieves ;

*Votre frère a été tué par deux voleurs.*

Your sister is esteemed *by* every body ;

*Votre sœur est estimée de tout le monde.*

However, we make use of *par* to avoid the repetition of *de* in the same phrase, though the verb does not express any action of the body. Example :

Your work will be severely censured by the critics ;

*Votre ouvrage sera censuré d'une manière sévère par les critiques* — not *des critiques*.

#### RULE 130. — *Verbs which govern the Dative in French.*

1. The twenty-two following reflected verbs govern the dative :

S'abandonner,	<i>to abandon one's self.</i>
s'accoutumer,	<i>to accustom one's self.</i>
s'adonner,	<i>to addict one's self.</i>
s'amuser,	<i>to amuse one's self.</i>
s'appliquer,	<i>to apply one's self.</i>
s'apprêter,	<i>to dispose one's self.</i>
s'arrêter,	<i>to stop.</i>
s'attacher,	<i>to stick to.</i>
s'adresser,	<i>to apply one's self.</i>
se déterminer,	<i>to resolve upon.</i>
se disposer,	<i>to prepare one's self.</i>
s'endurcir,	<i>to inure one's self.</i>
s'engager,	<i>to engage.</i>
s'exposer,	<i>to expose one's self.</i>
se fier,	<i>to trust.</i>
s'habituer,	<i>to accustom one's self.</i>
s'obstiner,	<i>to be determined.</i>
s'occuper,	<i>to employ one's self.</i>
s'opiniâtrer,	<i>to be determined.</i>
s'opposer,	<i>to oppose one's self.</i>
se plaire,	<i>to take delight in.</i>
se préparer,	<i>to prepare one's self.</i>

## Examples :

custom yourself to study ; *Accoutumez-vous à l'étude.*  
 apply myself to mathematics ;  
*m'applique aux mathématiques.*  
 not stop in London ; *Ne vous arrêtez pas à Londres.*

The following verbs govern the dative in French, whereas they govern in English :

consentir,	to consent.	penser,	to think of.
violer,	to infringe.	plaire,	to please.
contribuer,	to contribute.	remédier,	to remedy.
déplaire,	to displease.	ressembler,	to resemble.
désobéir,	to disobey.	résister,	to resist.
	to hurt.	songer,	to think of.
	to obey.	subvenir,	to relieve.
	to obviate.	succéder,	to succeed.
pardonner,	to forgive.	survivre,	to outlive.
atteindre,	to attain.		

## Examples :

displease one's master, *Déplaire à son maître.*  
 disobey your parents, *Ne désobéissez pas à vos parents.*  
 forgive my enemies, *Je pardonne à mes ennemis.*  
 please every body, *Il plaît à tout le monde.*  
 think of your business, *Je pense à votre affaire.*

The following — *applaudir*, to applaud ; *insulter*, to insult ; *persuader*, to persuade ; *renoncer*, to renounce ; *souffrir*, to suffer ; *songer*, to dream ; *travailler*, to work, sometimes govern the accusative case, but most frequently the dative. Thus :

ACC.	DAT.
I insult every body ;	You insult my misfortune ;
<i>us insultez tout le monde.</i>	<i>Vous insultez à ma misère.</i>

131. — *Verbs which govern the Accusative in French.*  
 Verbs which may be used in the passive voice govern the accusative in French. For instance, *aimer*, *estimer*, *récompenser*, &c. govern the accusative, because we say, *il est aimé, il est estimé, il est puni*, &c.

By the same rule, the following verbs —

Abattre,	<i>to pull down.</i>	déraciner,	<i>to root out.</i>
accepter,	<i>to accept of.</i>	époudrer,	<i>to wipe off.</i>
admirer,	<i>to wonder at.</i>	examiner,	<i>to examine into.</i>
approuver,	<i>to approve of.</i>	huer,	<i>to hoot at.</i>
attendre,	<i>to wait for.</i>	injurier,	<i>to rail at.</i>
chercher,	<i>to look for.</i>	juger,	<i>to judge of.</i>
critiquer,	<i>to cavil at.</i>	lorgner,	<i>to leer on.</i>
déchirer,	<i>to tear off.</i>	paraphraser,	<i>to comment upon.</i>
demander,	<i>to ask for.</i>	regarder,	<i>to look at.</i>
dénoncer,	<i>to inform against.</i>		

And some others, which are attended by a preposition in English, govern the accusative in French, because they may be used in the passive. We can say, for instance:

Your offer has been accepted; *Votre offre a été acceptée.*  
 This tree has been pulled down; *Cet arbre a été abattu.*

Your conduct has been approved;  
*Votre conduite a été approuvée.*

And so on with the rest.

RULE 132. — *Verbs which govern the Accusative and Genitive Cases.*

When the following verbs govern two nouns or pronouns, not joined by a conjunction, the first is put in the accusative, and the second in the genitive case in French:

Absoudre,	<i>to absolve.</i>	détourner,	<i>to divert.</i>
accabler,	<i>to overwhelm.</i>	dissuader,	<i>to dissuade.</i>
accepter,	<i>to accept.</i>	emplir,	<i>to fill.</i>
accuser,	<i>to accuse.</i>	exclure,	<i>to exclude.</i>
avertir,	<i>to warn.</i>	expulser,	<i>to turn out.</i>
bannir,	<i>to banish.</i>	informer,	<i>to inform.</i>
blâmer,	<i>to blame.</i>	louer,	<i>to praise.</i>
chasser,	<i>to expel.</i>	menacer,	<i>to threaten.</i>
comblér,	<i>to fill up.</i>	obtenir,	<i>to obtain.</i>
corriger,	<i>to correct.</i>	recevoir,	<i>to receive.</i>
débusquer,	<i>to drive out.</i>	priver,	<i>to deprive.</i>
dégouter,	<i>to disgust.</i>	soupçonner,	<i>to suspect.</i>
délivrer,	<i>to free.</i>		

## Examples :

To load an enemy with injuries ;

*Accabler un ennemi d'injures.*

To accept the offers of a friend ;

*Accepter les offres d'un ami.*

To fill a bottle with wine ; *Emplir une bouteille de vin.*

To blame one's conduct ; *Blâmer la conduite de quelqu'un.*

To exclude a liar from society ;

*Exclure un menteur de la société.*

**RULE 133.** — *Verbs which govern the Accusative and the Dative.*

When the following verbs govern two nouns or pronouns, that which has reference to persons is to be put in the dative in French, and the other in the accusative. If they have both reference to persons, that before which the preposition *to* is or could be prefixed is put in the dative, and the other in the accusative. No verb governs two accusative cases in French :

Accorder,	<i>to grant.</i>	expliquer,	<i>to explain.</i>
adresser,	<i>to direct.</i>	ôter,	<i>to take away.</i>
annoncer,	<i>to announce.</i>	pardonner,	<i>to forgive.</i>
apporter,	<i>to bring.</i>	prédire,	<i>to foretel.</i>
attribuer,	<i>to attribute.</i>	préférer,	<i>to prefer.</i>
avouer,	<i>to own.</i>	prendre,	<i>to take.</i>
communiquer,	<i>to communicate.</i>	présenter,	<i>to present.</i>
confesser,	<i>to confess.</i>	prêter,	<i>to lend.</i>
confier,	<i>to trust.</i>	procurer,	<i>to procure.</i>
conseiller,	<i>to advise.</i>	promettre,	<i>to promise.</i>
déclarer,	<i>to declare.</i>	raconter,	<i>to relate.</i>
dédier,	<i>to dedicate.</i>	rapporter,	<i>to bring back.</i>
demander,	<i>to ask.</i>	refuser,	<i>to refuse.</i>
devoir,	<i>to owe.</i>	rendre,	<i>to return.</i>
dire,	<i>to tell.</i>	renvoyer,	<i>to send back.</i>
donner,	<i>to give.</i>	répéter,	<i>to repeat.</i>
écrire,	<i>to write.</i>	reprocher,	<i>to reproach.</i>
enseigner,	<i>to teach.</i>	répondre,	<i>to answer.</i>
envoyer,	<i>to send.</i>	révéler,	<i>to reveal.</i>
épargner,	<i>to spare.</i>	vendre,	<i>to sell.</i>

## Examples :

Grant him that favour ; *Accordez-lui cette grâce.*

Tell me the truth ; *Dites-moi la vérité.*

To beg the master's leave ;

*Demander permission au maître.*

To reproach one with a fault ;

*Reprocher une faute à quelqu'un.*

## OBSERVATIONS.

*Jouer* governs the genitive, when it signifies *to play* on some musical instrument ; and the dative when it signifies *to play* at some game. Examples :

You play well *on* the violin, but you do not play well at cards ;

*Vous jouez bien du violon*, gen. — *mais vous ne jouez pas bien aux cartes* — dat.

Some verbs are followed in French by a preposition different from that used in English : such are,

To spit *at* one ; *Cracher sur quelqu'un.*

To fire *at* the enemy ; *Faire feu sur l'ennemi.*

To intermeddle *with* other people's business ;

*S'ingérer dans les affaires des autres.*

To struggle *with* death ; *Lutter contre la mort.*

To shoot *at* a hare ; *Tirer sur un lièvre*: and some others.

A verb in French cannot govern two objects, as in many English phrases. For instance :

I have heard *your father* repeat the same truth : in French, *your father* must be rendered by *à M. votre père*.

Most verbs which govern the genitive or ablative in Latin, govern the genitive in French ; and most of those which govern the accusative or dative in Latin, require the same case in French. This observation will be of great use to those who have learnt Latin.

## CHAP. XIV.

## OF THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

As there are three forms in the infinitive mood, called *present*, *gerund*, and *participle*, this chapter is naturally divided into three sections: *the first* describes the circumstances in which a verb is used in the infinitive mood, without being preceded by any preposition; it explains also the cases in which it is preceded by *de*, by *à*, or by *pour*: *the second* teaches that a gerund is always indeclinable in French, and furnishes an easy method to distinguish it from a verbal adjective, which is always declinable: *the third* establishes two general rules, which explain when a participle is declinable or indeclinable.

## SECTION THE FIRST.

*Of the Infinitive Present.*

The infinitive present is sometimes used in French without any preposition before it; it is sometimes preceded by *de*, sometimes by *à*, and sometimes by *pour*, according to the following rules:

RULE 134.—*Infinitive without Preposition.*

A verb in the infinitive present has no preposition before it.

1. When it is substantively used, and is the nominative case of another verb. Examples:

To speak too much is dangerous;

*Trop parler est dangereux.*

To relieve the poor is a praiseworthy action;

*Secourir les pauvres est une action digne de louange.*

2. When it is governed in the infinitive by any of the following verbs:



aller,	<i>to go.</i>	nier,	<i>to deny.</i>
croire,	<i>to believe.</i>	oser,	<i>to dare.</i>
daigner,	<i>to deign.</i>	paraître,	<i>to appear.</i>
déclarer,	<i>to declare.</i>	prétendre,	<i>to pretend.</i>
devoir,	<i>to owe.</i>	pouvoir,	<i>to be able.</i>
entendre,	<i>to hear.</i>	savoir,	<i>to know.</i>
envoyer,	<i>to send.</i>	sembler,	<i>to appear.</i>
espérer,	<i>to hope.</i>	souhaiter,	<i>to wish.</i>
faillir,	<i>to miss.</i>	soutenir,	<i>to maintain.</i>
faire,	<i>to do.</i>	venir,	<i>to come.</i>
falloir,	<i>to be requisite.</i>	voir,	<i>to see.</i>
laisser,	<i>to let.</i>	vouloir,	<i>to be willing.</i>

## EXAMPLES :

Go and see your friend ; *Allez voir votre ami.*

Do you believe you are in the right ?

*Croyez-vous avoir raison ?*

Deign to answer me ; *Daignez me répondre.*

I will cause your orders to be executed ;

*Je ferai exécuter vos ordres.*

And so on with the rest.

*Note.*—The verb *faire* is used for *to do*, *to make*, *to cause* and *to oblige* ; in all cases it is immediately followed, in French, by the next verb in the infinitive, which it governs without a preposition. Examples : *je ferai bâtir une maison* *je vous ferai faire votre thème.*

RULE 135.—*Infinitive with de.*

We place the preposition *de* before a verb in the *infinitive mood*.

1. After a substantive which governs a verb so as to be a necessary part of the affirmation. Examples :

It is time to set out ; *Il est temps de partir.*

You have no cause to be angry with me ;

*Vous n'avez pas sujet d'être fâché contre moi.*

2. The English preposition *for*, with a gerund after a substantive, is generally expressed by *de* with the infinitive.  
Example:

I am obliged to you *for* having succeeded ;  
*Je vous sais bon gré d'avoir réussi.*

3. After an adjective, whenever, by inverting the sentence, the clause containing the infinitive might be made the leading term of an assertion expressed by *is to be* ; and likewise after *capable*, able, *incapable*, unable, *digne*, worthy, *indigne*, unworthy, and perhaps a few others.  
Examples:

You are very clever to have succeeded so well ;  
*Vous êtes très-adroit d'avoir si bien réussi.*

We may say : to have succeeded so well *is to be* very clever ; *avoir si bien réussi*, c'est être *très-adroit*.

He is worthy of being preferred to that employment ;  
*Il est digne d'être préféré pour cet emploi.*

4. After any adjective preceded by the impersonal verbs *il est*, it is, *il semble*, it seems, *il paraît*, it appears, and after several impersonal verbs which could be expressed by *il est*, with the adjectives derived from them, as, *il convient*, *il importe*, *il suffit*, for *il est convenable*, *il est important*, *il est suffisant*. Examples :

It will be enough to speak to him ;  
*Il suffira de lui parler.*  
It is dangerous to trust every body ;  
*Il est dangereux de se fier à tout le monde.*

5. Most commonly when it is governed by any other reflected verbs than those mentioned in rule 130. Examples :

I am sorry I spoke of it, since that displeases you ;  
*Je me repens d'en avoir parlé, puisque cela vous déplaît.*  
He has a mind to go and see you to-morrow evening ;  
*Il se propose d'aller vous voir demain au soir.*

6. When it (viz. the infinitive) is immediately preceded by any of the following verbs :

Accuser,	<i>to accuse.</i>	menacer,	<i>to threaten.</i>
affecter,	<i>to affect.</i>	mériter,	<i>to deserve.</i>
avertir,	<i>to advise.</i>	négliger,	<i>to neglect.</i>
blâmer,	<i>to blame.</i>	offrir,	<i>to offer.</i>
cesser,	<i>to cease.</i>	omettre,	<i>to omit.</i>
commander,	<i>to command.</i>	ordonner,	<i>to order.</i>
conjurér,	<i>to intreat.</i>	oublier,	<i>to forget.</i>
conseiller,	<i>to advise.</i>	parler,	<i>to speak.</i>
craindre,	<i>to fear.</i>	permettre,	<i>to permit.</i>
défendre,	<i>to forbid.</i>	persuader,	<i>to persuade.</i>
détourner,	<i>to deter.</i>	plaindre,	<i>to pity.</i>
différer,	<i>to differ.</i>	prescrire,	<i>to prescribe.</i>
dire,	<i>to tell.</i>	presser,	<i>to urge.</i>
dispenser,	<i>to excuse.</i>	prier,	<i>to pray.</i>
dissuader,	<i>to dissuade.</i>	promettre,	<i>to promise.</i>
écrire,	<i>to write.</i>	proposer,	<i>to propose.</i>
empêcher,	<i>to hinder.</i>	refuser,	<i>to refuse.</i>
enjoindre,	<i>to enjoin.</i>	remercier,	<i>to thank.</i>
entreprendre,	<i>to undertake.</i>	résoudre,	<i>to resolve.</i>
essayer,	<i>to try.</i>	sommer,	<i>to summon.</i>
feindre,	<i>to feign.</i>	soupçonner,	<i>to suspect.</i>
finir,	<i>to finish.</i>	supplier,	<i>to beg.</i>

#### EXAMPLES :

He does not cease complaining ; *Il ne cesse de se plaindre.*  
 I advise you to stay here ; *Je vous conseille de rester ici.*  
 I beg of you to forgive him ; *Je vous prie de lui pardonner.*

#### RULE 136. — *Infinitive with à.*

We place the preposition *à* before a verb in the infinitive mood.

1. After a substantive, when to express something to be done. Examples :

I have no time to lose ; *Je n'ai point de temps à perdre*  
 I know a house to be sold ; *Je connais une maison à vendre.*

2. After a substantive, when the following verb is or may be expressed by *in* with the participle. Example :

I have great pleasure *in seeing you*.

*J'ai beaucoup de plaisir à vous voir*—en vous voyant.

3. After any adjectives which take a verb in the infinitive to complete the sense ; though *to* is rendered by *de* when the infinitive is alleged as a reason for using the adjective. Examples :

I am ready to go out ;      This fruit is good to eat ;

*Je suis prêt à partir.*      *Ce fruit est bon à manger.*

But we ought to say : I am glad to see you ; *je suis aise de vous voir*, as the sentence means : I am glad *because* I see you.

4. The following verbs also govern the infinitive with *à* :

accoutumer,	<i>to accustom.</i>	employer,	<i>to employ.</i>
admettre,	<i>to admit.</i>	encourager,	<i>to encourage.</i>
aider,	<i>to help.</i>	engager,	<i>to engage.</i>
aimer,	<i>to like.</i>	exhorter,	<i>to exhort.</i>
apprendre,	<i>to learn.</i>	inviter,	<i>to invite.</i>
autoriser,	<i>to authorise.</i>	penser,	<i>to think of.</i>
condamner,	<i>to condemn.</i>	persister,	<i>to persist in.</i>
chercher,	<i>to endeavour.</i>	porter,	<i>to induce to.</i>
consister,	<i>to consist.</i>	pousser,	<i>to excite to.</i>
disposer,	<i>to dispose to.</i>	rester,	<i>to stay.</i>
donner	<i>to give.</i>	travailler,	<i>to work.</i>

And some others.

#### EXAMPLE :

I learn to dance ; I like to sing, &c.

*J'apprends à danser ; J'aime à chanter, &c.*

5. The reflected verbs, *s'abandonner*, *s'accoutumer*, *s'adonner*, and others mentioned before (rule 130), govern the infinitive with the preposition *à*. Example :

Prepare yourself to answer me ;

*Disposez-vous à me répondre.*

RULE 137.— *Infinitive with de or à.*

The verb *manquer* usually governs the infinitive with *de* when it is negatively used, and with *à* when affirmatively. Example:

I will not fail *to* punish you, if you neglect *to* do your exercise ;

*Je ne manqueras pas de vous punir, si vous manquez à faire votre thème.*

*Tâcher* governs the infinitive with *de* when it means *to endeavour*, and with *à* when it means *to aim at*. Examples:

I will endeavour to satisfy you ;

*Je tâcherai de vous satisfaire.*

He aims at doing me a prejudice ;

*Il tâche à me porter préjudice.*

*Tarder* governs the infinitive with *de*, when it is impersonal, and with *à* when it signifies *to delay*. Example:

I long to see your brother, he delays a long time *to* come ;

*Il me tarde de voir votre frère, il tarde bien à venir.*

*Venir* governs the infinitive without a preposition when it signifies *to come* ; it governs the infinitive with *de* when it is to express a *thing just happened* ; and with *à* when it signifies *to happen*. Examples:

Come and see me to-morrow ; *Venez me voir demain.*

My father is just gone out ; *Mon père vient de sortir.*

If it happens *to* rain, you will be wet ;

*S'il vient à pleuvoir, vous serez mouillé.*

The following : *commencer*, *continuer*, *contraindre*, *forcer*, *s'efforcer*, and *obliger*, govern the infinitive with *de* rather than *à*, when the expression is not vague as to the application or action of the infinitive.

RULE 138.— *Infinitive with pour.*

We use in French the preposition *pour* before an infinitive, to express the *end*, the *design*, or the *cause* for

which a thing is done ; and, in general, every time the preposition *to* could be changed into *in order to*, without altering the sense of it. Examples :

I am come to see you ; *Je suis venu pour vous voir.*

I will do every thing to oblige you ;

*Je ferai tout pour vous obliger.*

Men are born to live in society ;

*Les hommes sont nés pour vivre en société.*

The preposition *pour* is also used after the words *assez*, enough ; *trop*, too much ; *suffire*, and *être suffisant*, to be sufficient. Example :

You are tall enough to be a soldier, but you are too great a coward to enlist ;

*Vous êtes assez grand pour être soldat, mais vous êtes trop lâche pour vous engager.*

*Note.*—When, after a verb, the preposition *for* comes before a gerund, it is expressed in French by *pour*, with the infinitive present, if the verb has reference to a present or future time, and with the compound of the present, if it refers to a past time. Examples :

How much do you ask for making me a suit of clothes ?

*Combien me demandez-vous pour me faire un habit ?*

He was hanged for robbing ; *Il fut pendu pour avoir volé.*

#### RULE 139.—*Infinitive instead of the Gerund.*

We never put a gerund in French after any other preposition than *en*. But we put the present of the infinitive after the preposition *de*, *à*, *par*, *après*, *pour*, *sans*, and every other. Examples :

One cannot speak against the truth *without being* guilty ;

*On ne peut trahir la vérité sans se rendre coupable.*

I must begin *by saying* my lessons ;

*Il faut que je commence par réciter mes leçons.*

These names express different functions or words ending in *ant*, derived from verbs: the rule teaches how to distinguish them invariably.

**RULE 140.—***The Gerund is always indeclinable*

A word ending in English in *ing*, and in *ant* is an adjective when it precedes the substantive: and a gerund when it comes after: in the first agrees in French with the substantive to which it it is always indeclinable in the second. Example

Declinable.	{	An obliging lady;	<i>Une dame obligeante</i>
		A convincing proof;	<i>Une preuve convaincante</i>
		Bleating sheep;	<i>Des brebis bêlantes</i>
		Surprising effects;	<i>Des effets surprenants</i>
Indeclinable.	{	A lady obliging her friends;	
		<i>Une dame obligeant ses amis</i> —not <i>obligeante</i>	
		A proof convincing every body;	
		<i>Une preuve convainquant tout le monde—convainc.</i>	

It will be observed, from the preceding example, that a word ending in *ant*, in French, is an adjective when it qualifies the substantive to which it is joined, and a gerund (from *gero*; whence *vice-gerent*) when it rules or governs a substantive after it.

*de lui, s'il mourrait de sa maladie*—not *aux médecins*  
se tenant.

The poets contain exceptions to this rule, as this verse  
of Delille :

Vois ces groupes d'enfants *se*  
*Jouant* sous l'ombrage.

RULE 142. — *by expressed by en.*

An English participle, preceded by the preposition *by*, is  
most commonly rendered in French by the gerund with  
*en*. Examples :

We have obtained peace *by making* great sacrifices ;  
*Nous avons obtenu la paix en faisant de grands sacrifices.*  
More glory is acquired *by defending* than *by accusing*  
one's fellow-citizens ;  
*On acquiert plus de gloire en défendant ses concitoyens*  
*qu'en les accusant.*

*Note 1.*—An English participle preceded by the preposi-  
tions *of, from, without, after, for, &c.* is rendered in French  
by the infinitive, with *de, à, pour, or sans* (as we have seen  
before, rule 139), and not by the gerund.

*Note 2.*—An English participle, preceded by the verb *to*  
*be*, is expressed in French by the indicative of the principal  
verb only. Examples :

I am speaking ; *Je parle.* I was dancing ; *Je dansais.*  
What are you doing here ? *Que faites-vous ici ?*

*Note 3.*—An English participle, preceded by the definite  
article *the*, is rendered by a substantive in French. Ex-  
ample :

The learning of languages is difficult ;  
*L'étude des langues est difficile.*

The word in *ant* is invariable so long as it represents a  
transient action or state ; otherwise employed, it becomes  
an adjective, and assumes the marks of number and gender  
peculiar to its noun. Examples :



The wound still bleeding, she fainted ;  
*La plaie saignant encore, elle s'évanouit.*  
 He showed his wound, still bleeding ;  
*Il montra sa plaie encore saignante.*

## SECTION THE THIRD.

### *Of the Participle.*

**RULE 143.** — *When the Participle is declinable in French.*

A participle is always declinable in French, and must agree, in gender and number, with the word to which it relates, as an adjective.

1. When it is employed as an adjective. Examples :

A book well written ; A letter well written ;  
*Un livre bien écrit. Une lettre bien écrite.*

2. After the verbs *être*, to be (when not preceded by a conjunctive pronoun), *paraître*, to appear, *sembler*, to seem, *avoir l'air*, to look. Examples :

My brother is tired ; *Mon frère est fatigué.*  
 My sister is tired ; *Ma sœur est fatiguée.*  
 Your father appears afflicted ; *Votre père paraît affligé.*  
 Your mother appears afflicted ; *Votre mère paraît affligée.*  
 That tragedy seems well written ;  
*Cette tragédie me semble bien écrite.*  
 Your daughter appears greatly afflicted ;  
*Votre fille a l'air très-affligée.*

3. In the compound tenses of reflected verbs, when *être* takes the place of *avoir*, the participle agrees in gender and number with the conjunctive pronoun that precedes the auxiliary, if it is in the accusative, and not otherwise. So we must say,

She has wounded herself ; *elle s'est blessée* ;  
 Because *se* is in the accusative : but we should say,

She has wounded her foot ; *elle s'est blessé le pied* ;  
 Because *se* is in the dative, and stands for *à elle-même*.

4. In compound tenses with *avoir* and *être*, when the accusative, governed by *that* tense, goes before the auxiliary, the participle agrees with it in gender and number. Examples :

The land which I have *sold* is good and fruitful ;

*La terre que j'ai vendue est bonne et fertile.*

The books I have *bought* are new ;

*Les livres que j'ai achetés sont neufs.*

The rules which I have *explained* are difficult ;

*Les règles que j'ai expliquées sont difficiles.*

What affair have you *undertaken* ?

*Quelle affaire avez-vous entreprise ?*

When the accusative, governed by the compound tense, is a conjunctive pronoun, or *que*, the gender and number of the participle are determined by those of the *noun* that will answer to the question, *what* ? put immediately after the participle. So in the foregoing examples :

Sold—what ? *La terre*—fem. singular.

Bought—what ? *Les livres*—masc. plur.

Undertaken—what ? *Affaire*—fem. sing.

**RULE 144.—***When the Participle is indeclinable.*

The participle after the auxiliary is invariable when the accusative follows the compound tense ; when the verb is impersonal, or in its nature takes no accusative case. Examples :

He has *studied* ; She has *sung* ; They have *spoken* to her ;

*Il a étudié. Elle a chanté. Elles lui ont parlé.*

We *met* some ladies ;

*Nous avons rencontré des dames.*

There *arose* a dispute ;

*Il s'est élevé une dispute.*

The four years that the war has *lasted* ;

*Les quatre années que la guerre a duré.*

An accusative may precede the compound tense and not be governed by it, but by another verb in the infinitive. Examples :

The house which I have advised you to buy is a new one,  
*La maison que je vous ai conseillé d'acheter est neuve.*

The rules which I have begun to explain are easy;  
*Les règles que j'ai commencé à expliquer sont faciles.*

If we say, as before directed, in order to ascertain the agreement of the participles,

Advised — what? begun — what?

The answer, to buy, to explain, will show that the participle is indeclinable. Again:

These melons are better than I should have thought:

If we say, thought — what? *That they were*, is the answer; and shows that we must leave *cru* unchanged:

*Ces melons sont meilleurs que je ne l'aurais cru.*

N. B. The verbs *faire* and *laisser*, followed by an infinitive, form with it a sort of compound verb, and the participle is indeclinable. Examples:

That woman whom you have put to death;

*Cette femme que vous avez fait mourir.*

The opportunity which you have suffered to escape;

*L'occasion que vous avez laissé échapper.*

## CONCORD OF THE VERB WITH ITS NOMINATIVE

RULE 145. — *The Verb agrees with its Nominative.*

All the personal verbs agree in number and person with their nominative case. Examples:

I give; *Je donne.*      We give; *Nous donnons, &c.*

My father is dead;      My brothers are dead;

*Mon père est mort.      Mes frères sont morts.*

A verb is put in the third person plural, in both languages, when it is preceded or followed by more than one noun singular in the nominative case, and agrees with the pronoun *they* understood. Examples:

Homer and Virgil are the princes of poets;

*Homère et Virgile sont les princes des poètes.*

The paper and ink are good for nothing ;

*Le papier et l'encre ne valent rien.*

The distress in which a family, six children, and a multitude of affairs *involved* him.

*L'accablement où le mettaient une famille, six enfans, une multitude des affaires.*

**RULE 146.** — *The Verb with Nominatives of different Persons.*

When a verb has several nominative cases of different persons, it is put in the plural, and agrees with the first in preference to the other two, and with the second in preference to the third, and then it is preceded by *nous*, if it be in the first person, and by *vous*, if in the second. Examples :

My brother and I will go to-night to the play ;

*Mon frère et moi, nous allons ce soir à la comédie.*

You and your sister will stay at home ;

*Vous et votre sœur, vous resterez à la maison.*

**RULE 147.** — *The Verb when preceded by qui, &c.*

The pronoun *qui* requires the verb following in the same number and person as the substantive or pronoun antecedent. Examples :

It is I who have seen him ;      *C'est moi qui l'ai vu.*

It is he who has done it ;      *C'est lui qui l'a fait.*

It is you who have spoken of it ;      *C'est vous qui en avez parlé.*

It is they who have taken it ;      *Ce sont eux qui l'ont pris.*

**SOME USEFUL OBSERVATIONS.**

1. When the English address God, they put the pronoun and verb in the singular ; the French, on the contrary, have them in the second person plural, in prose. Example :

Our Father who *art* in heaven, hallowed be *thy* name, &c.

*Notre Père qui êtes aux cieux, votre nom soit sanctifié, &c.\**

Not *Notre Père qui es aux cieux, ton nom soit sanctifié*, as we find in some prayer-books printed in England.

2. The pronouns and verbs are usually put in the second person plural in both languages, when we speak to one person; but if an adjective follows, it remains in the singular. Example.

Sir, you are very obliging;  
*Monsieur, vous êtes très-obligé.*

3. The third person is elegantly used instead of the second, when we speak to persons for whom we have some consideration. Example:

Madam, will you come to the park?  
*Madame, veut-elle venir au parc? — for voulez-vous, &c.*

4. The second person singular is often used in French between intimate friends, and also between brothers and sisters, husband and wife, &c.: as, *viens-ici, mon frère*, come here, brother — for *venez-ici*.

5. Poets and orators use the second person singular when they address God, heroes, or sovereigns, as in the following sonnet of *Desbarreaux*:

Grand Dieu ! *tes* jugemens sont remplis d'équité :  
 Toujours *tu prends* plaisir à nous être propice ;  
 Mais j'ai tant fait mal, que jamais *ta* bonté  
 Ne me pardonnera, qu'en blessant *ta* justice.

Oui, Seigneur, la grandeur de mon impiété  
 Ne laisse à *ton* pouvoir que le choix du supplice ;  
*Ton* intérêt s'oppose à ma félicité,  
 Et *ta* clémence même attend que je périsse.

*Contente ton* désir, puisqu'il *t'est* glorieux ;  
*Offense-toi* des pleurs qui coulent de mes yeux :  
*Tonne, frappe*, il est temps, *rends-moi* guerre pour *guerra*

J'adore en périssant la raison qui *t'aigrit* :  
 Mais dessus quel endroit tombera *ton* tonnerre,  
 Qui ne soit tout couvert du sang de Jésus-Christ ?

## CHAP. XV.

## OF THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

RULE 148. — *When the Present of the Indicative is used.*

The present of the indicative — as, *je parle*, I speak ; *je fais*, I do ; *je reçois*, I receive, &c. is used in French,

1. To express a thing which is present at the time we are speaking. Examples :

It rains, *il pleut*. I am sick, *Je suis malade*.

2. To express a thing which we do habitually, though not at the moment in which we are speaking. Examples :

I learn French ; *J'apprends le Français*.

You go often to the play ;

*Vous allez souvent à la comédie*.

3. To express an eternal truth. Examples :

God is merciful ; *Dieu est miséricordieux*.

Men are mortal ; *Les hommes sont mortels*.

4. To express in a more lively and emphatical manner a thing that happened in a time quite past. Example :

I have seen your son dragged by his horses ; he called to them to stop ; his cries frightened them ; they ran on, till his body was but one wound ;

*J'ai vu votre fils entraîné par ses chevaux, il veut les rappeler ; sa voix les effraie, ils courent, tout son corps n'est qu'une plaie.*

5. To express a future time at no great distance, when some other word in the sentence denotes futurity. Examples :

I shall set out to-night for London ;

*Je pars ce soir pour Londres — for je partirai.*

I shall be ready in a moment ;

*Je suis prêt dans un moment.*

RULE 149. — *When the Imperfect of the Indicative is used.*

The imperfect of the indicative — as, *je parlais*, *je recevais*, &c. is used in French,

1. To express a present with respect to something past, and then it exactly answers to the English expression, *I was going*. Examples :

I was writing you a letter when I received yours ;  
*Je vous écrivais une lettre, quand je reçus la vôtre.*  
 We were dining when we learnt that sad news ;  
*Nous dinions, quand nous apprîmes cette fâcheuse nouvelle.*

2. To express something past, but habitual, during a time not specified, and then it answers to the English expression, *I used to do*. Examples :

The Romans cultivated the arts, encouraged sciences, and rewarded merit ;  
*Les Romains cultivaient les arts, encourageaient les sciences, et récompensaient le mérite.*  
 Our ancestors went a hunting every day, and lived upon game ;  
*Nos ancêtres allaient tous les jours à la chasse, et vivaient que de gibier.*  
 Cæsar was a great general ;  
*César était un grand général.*  
 Cicero was a great orator ;  
*Cicéron était un grand orateur.*  
 Lewis the sixteenth was a good king ;  
*Louis seize était un bon roi.*

RULE 150. — *When the Preterite of the Indicative is used.*

The preterite of the indicative — as, *je parlai*, I spoke ; *je fis*, I did ; *je reçus*, I received, &c. is used in French, to express a particular fact or event which has happened but once, or very seldom, and in a time quite past, and at the distance of at least a day. Examples :

The Romans expelled Tarquin from Rome .  
*Les Romains chassèrent Tarquin de Rome.*  
 Cæsar was killed in the senate ;  
*César fut tué dans le sénat.*  
 Cicero had his head cut off ;  
*Cicéron eut la tête tranchée.*  
 I went yesterday to see your father ;  
*J'allai hier voir votre père.*

## USEFUL OBSERVATIONS.

From the three preceding rules it appears, that a verb which is in the preterite in English, may sometimes be put in three different tenses in French.

1. In the *imperfect*, when it expresses a thing habitual, or which was present when another thing happened. Examples :

When I was in the country, I walked often ;

*Quand j'étais à la campagne, je me promenais souvent.*

I was sick when you came :

*J'étais malade quand vous êtes venu.*

2. In the *preterite* when it denotes a particular fact, which happened at a time quite past. A period of time past when the pronouns *this* or *our* could not be prefixed to it. Examples :

I walked yesterday ; *Je me promenai hier.*

I was sick last week ; *Je fus malade la semaine dernière.*

3. In the *compound of the present*, when the period specified is not quite past. Examples :

I walked this morning for two hours ;

*Je me suis promené ce matin pendant deux heures.*

I was very sick this week ;

*J'ai été bien malade cette semaine.*

*Observe.* I have repeated the same examples, to render more obvious the distinction between the imperfect, the preterite, and the compound of the present.

**RULE 151.** — *When the Future and the Conditional are used.*

The future — as, *je parlerai, je ferai, je recevrai, &c.*, is used in French as in English, to express a future time. Example :

Our bodies will rise again in the day of judgment ;

*Nos corps ressusciteront au jour du jugement.*

The English often use the present tense, or the compound of the present, after the conjunctions, *when, as soon*



*as*, or *after*, when they want to express a thing to come: the future, however, must always be used in French instead of the present, and the compound of the future instead of the compound of the present. Examples:

When I am in the country, will you come to see me?

*Quand je serai à la campagne, voulez-vous venir me voir?*

You will play, when you have finished your exercise;

*Vous jouerez, quand vous aurez fini votre thème.*

The conditional tense — *as, je parlerais*, I would speak; *je ferais*, I would do; *je recevrais*, I would receive, &c., which some grammarians improperly call the imperfect of the subjunctive, is used in French as in English, to express a conditional sentence. Examples:

We should be happy, if we knew how to fix our desires;

*Nous serions heureux, si nous savions fixer nos désirs.*

Though you should be rich, yet you would not be more happy;

*Quand vous seriez riche vous ne seriez pas plus heureux.*

#### RULE 152. — *No Future nor Conditional after si.*

When the conjunction *si* signifies *whether*, the future and conditional are used after it in French as in English. Examples:

I do not know *if* (or *whether*) it will be good weather to-morrow;

*Je ne sais s'il fera beau temps demain.*

I do not know *if* (or *whether*) my brother would come, should I desire him;

*Je ne sais si mon frère viendrait, si je l'en priais.*

But when the conjunction *si* signifies *suppose that*, the English future must be rendered in French by the present, and the conditional by the imperfect. Examples:

You will become a learned man, if you *will study* well;

*Vous deviendrez savant, si vous étudiez bien* — not *si vous étudierez*.

I should become rich, if I *would continue* my trade;

*Je deviendrais riche, si je continuais mon commerce* — not *si je continuerais*.

**RULE 153.** — *When the Compound of the Present is used.*

The compound of the present — as, *j'ai parlé*, I have spoken; *j'ai fait*, I have done; *j'ai reçu*, I have received, &c., is used in French to express a thing past, in a period yet elapsed, or at a time which is not specified. A period is not elapsed when the pronoun *this* or *our* is, or would be, prefixed to the words *age*, *year*, *month*, *week*, or *day*, mentioned in the sentence. Examples :

Our age has produced great men ;

*Notre siècle a produit de grands hommes* — not *produisit*, nor *produisait*.

We had much company this winter ;

*Nous avons eu beaucoup de compagnie cet hiver* — not *nous eûmes*.

**RULE 154.** — *When the other Compound Tenses are used.*

The compound of the imperfect—as, *j'avais parlé*, *j'avais dit*, *j'avais reçu*, &c., is used in French to express a thing done before another, which is also past: but it is employed when the previous action was habitual, or when nothing points out the approximation of the two actions. Example :

The king *had named* an admiral, when he heard of you ;  
*Le Roi avait nommé un amiral, quand on lui parla de vous.*

The compound of the preterite—as, *j'eus parlé*, *j'eus fait*, *j'eus reçu*, &c., is also used to express a thing done before another: but, like the preterite, it can be employed only at a time entirely elapsed; and besides, it points out the approximation of the two actions, and for this reason it is most commonly used after the conjunctions, *quand*, *dès que*,  *aussitôt que*, *après que*. Example :

As soon as the parliament *was assembled*, the riot ceased ;  
*Dès que le parlement se fut assemblé, l'émeute cessa.*

The compound of the future and conditional are generally used in French as in English, and as they offer no difficulty, they require no explanation.

## CHAP. XVI.

## OF THE USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

This chapter is divided into three sections : the *first* enumerates the adjectives, pronouns, verbs, and conjunctions, which always govern the subjunctive mood : the *second* treats of the verbs and conjunctions which govern the following verb, sometimes in the indicative, and sometimes in the subjunctive, and points out in what circumstances each mood must be used : the *third* explains when the verbs, governed in the subjunctive, must be used in the present, when in the preterite, and when in the compound tenses.

## SECTION THE FIRST.

*Words which always govern the Subjunctive Mood.*

RULE 155. — *The Subjunctive is used after a Superlative.*

A verb preceded by *qui* or *que* is put in the subjunctive,

1. After a superlative, as we have said before, Rule 43.

Examples :

The best guard a king can have, is the heart of his subjects ;

*La meilleure garde qu'un roi puisse avoir, c'est le cœur de ses sujets.*

You are the most learned man I know in this town ;

*Vous êtes le plus savant que je connaisse dans cette ville.*

2. After these five indeterminate pronouns, *quelque*, whatever ; *qui que ce soit*, whoever ; *personne*, nobody ; *pas un*, not one ; *aucun*, none ; *rien*, nothing, as we have said before, speaking of indeterminate pronouns, Rule 109, and following. Examples :

Of whomsoever you speak, avoid slander ;

*De qui que ce soit que vous parliez, évitez la médisance.*

I know nobody who is so happy as you are ;  
*Je ne connais personne qui soit aussi heureux que vous.*  
 I have seen nothing reprehensible in your conduct ;  
*Je n'ai rien vu qu'on puisse blâmer dans votre conduite.*

3. After the ordinal numbers — *as, le premier*, the first ;  
*le second*, the second ; *le troisième*, the third ; *le dernier*, the  
 last, &c. when preceded by a verb. Example :

You are the first friend I have met with in London ;  
*Vous êtes le premier ami que j'aie rencontré à Londres.*

4. After these two words, *le seul*, and *l'unique*, the only  
 one. Example :

My son is the only one upon whom I can rely ;  
*Mon fils est le seul sur qui je puisse compter.*

N. B. In the preceding rules *qui* and *que* do not govern  
 the subjunctive when they are preceded by a genitive case  
 to which they relate. Examples :

This is the best reason you have just given me ;  
*Voilà la meilleure des raisons que vous venez de me  
 donner.*

I do not know any of the ladies who live in your house ;  
*Je ne connais aucune des dames qui demeurent chez vous.*  
 Do not say any thing of what I trust to you ;  
*Ne dites rien de ce que je vous confie.*

I have read the first volume of the work you had lent  
 to me ;  
*J'ai lu le premier volume de l'ouvrage que vous m'aviez  
 prêté.*

RULE 156. — *The Subjunctive is used after Verbs of fear  
 or doubt.*

A verb preceded by the conjunction *que* is always used  
 in the subjunctive, after verbs which express any doubt,  
 wish, command, order, fear, ignorance, or any affection of  
 the mind, and particularly after the following :

Aimer,	to like.	désirer,	to wish.
commander,	to command.	douter,	to doubt.
craindre,	to fear.	s'étonner,	to wonder.
défendre	to forbid.	nier,	to deny.

ordonner,	<i>to order.</i>	souhaiter,	<i>to wish.</i>
prier,	<i>to pray.</i>	supposer,	<i>to suppose.</i>
se réjouir,	<i>to rejoice.</i>	vouloir,	<i>to be willing.</i>

And likewise after *charmé, enchanté, or bien aise*, very glad, *étonné*, astonished, *content*, satisfied, *fâché*, sorry, *affligé*, afflicted, *surpris*, surprised, preceded by *être, paraître, sembler, avoir l'air*. Examples :

I fear my father is dead ;  
*Je crains que mon père ne soit mort.*  
 I wish you may succeed ; *Je désire que vous réussissiez.*  
 I doubt that he is come ; *Je doute qu'il soit arrivé.*  
 I wish they would make peace ;  
*Je souhaite qu'on fasse la paix.*  
 I will have him obey me ; *Je veux qu'il m'obéisse.*  
 I am sorry they have deceived you ;  
*Je suis fâché qu'on vous ait trompé.*

And so on with the rest above mentioned.

RULE 157. — *The Subjunctive is used after some Impersonal Verbs.*

A verb preceded by *que* is always put in the subjunctive, after the impersonals, *il faut*, it must ; *il est fâcheux*, it is sad ; *il est juste*, it is just ; *il est injuste*, it is unjust ; *il convient*, it becomes ; *il importe*, or *il est important*, it matters ; and generally after all those not mentioned in the next section, Rule 160. Examples :

It is necessary that there be some motive for acting ;  
*Il est nécessaire qu'il y ait quelque motif pour agir.*  
 I must go to town ; *il faut que j'aille en ville.*  
 It is just that he should see her ; *Il est juste qu'il la voie.*

And so on with the rest.

RULE 158. — *The Subjunctive is used after some Conjunctions.*

A verb is always put in the subjunctive, mood after the following twenty conjunctions :

Afin que,	that.	nonobstant que,	for all that.
à moins que,	unless.	non que, non	} not that.
avant que,	before.	pas que,	
bien que,	though.	posé que,	suppose that.
de crainte que,	for fear.	pour que,	that.
de peur que,	lest.	pourvu que,	provided.
en cas que,	if.	quoique,	though.
encore que,	though.	sans que,	without.
jusqu'à ce que,	till.	soit que,	whether.
loin que,	far from.	supposé que,	suppose that.
malgré que,	for all that.		

## EXAMPLES :

Unless you come with me, I will not go out ;

*A moins que vous ne m'accompagniez, je ne sortirai pas.*

Though he is lazy, yet he improves much ;

*Bien qu'il soit paresseux, il fait beaucoup de progrès.*

Send me your book, that I may read it ;

*Envoyez-moi votre livre, afin que je le lise.*

I will be ready before they are come ;

*Je serai prêt avant qu'ils soient venus.*

N. B. The subjunctive is always used in the beginning of a sentence, to express surprise, an imprecation, or an ardent desire. Examples :

May you be happy ! *Puissiez-vous être heureux !*

May I rather die, than not succeed !

*Que je meure, si je ne réussis !*

✍

## SECTION THE SECOND.

*Verbs and Conjunctions which govern sometimes the Indicative and sometimes the Subjunctive.*

RULE 159. — *Verbs which govern the Indicative and Subjunctive.*

The following verbs :

Affirmer,	to affirm.	apercevoir,	to perceive.
assurer,	to assure.	avouer,	to confess.

conclure,	<i>to conclude.</i>	penser,	<i>to think.</i>
convenir,	<i>to agree.</i>	prédire,	<i>to foretel.</i>
croire,	<i>to believe.</i>	prévoir,	<i>to foresee.</i>
déclarer,	<i>to declare.</i>	promettre,	<i>to promise.</i>
dire,	<i>to say.</i>	publier,	<i>to publish.</i>
espérer,	<i>to hope.</i>	savoir,	<i>to know.</i>
juger,	<i>to judge.</i>	songer,	<i>to think.</i>
jurer,	<i>to swear.</i>	soutenir,	<i>to maintain.</i>
maintenir,	<i>to maintain.</i>	supposer,	<i>to suppose.</i>
oublier,	<i>to forget.</i>	voir,	<i>to see.</i>

And in general, all those which express the intellectual faculties of the mind, govern the indicative, when they are affirmatively used, and most commonly the subjunctive when they are used negatively, interrogatively, or are preceded by the conjunction *si*. Examples :

I believe he *is* in the right ; do you believe he *is* in the right ?  
 I do not believe he *is* in the right ;

*Je crois qu'il a raison* — indicative ; *croyez-vous qu'il ait raison ?* *je ne crois pas qu'il ait raison* — subjunctive.

I hope he *will come* ; Do you hope he *will come* ?

*J'espère qu'il viendra* — indicative ; *Espérez-vous qu'il vienne ?* — subjunctive.

Let us go, if you think it *will be* fine weather ;

*Partons, si vous pensez qu'il fasse beau temps* — subj.

If we ask a question, less to be informed of a thing than to inform others of it, the second verb is put in the indicative, and not in the subjunctive. Examples :

Have I told you that my father *is* dead ?

*Vous ai-je dit que mon père est mort ?* — indicative.

Did you perceive they *wanted* to deceive me ?

*Vous aperçûtes-vous qu'on voulait me tromper ?* — indic.

**RULE 160.** — *Verbs Impersonal which govern the Indicative and Subjunctive.*

The impersonal verbs, with an adjective, denoting *evidence, certitude, or probability* of a thing—such as, *il est clair*, it is clear ; *il est certain*, it is certain ; *il est vrai*, it is true ; *il est probable*, it is probable, &c., govern the next verb in the

indicative, when they are affirmatively used, and most frequently in the subjunctive, when they are used interrogatively, negatively, or conditionally. Examples:

It is certain that you are in the wrong, but it is not certain I am in the right ;

*Il est certain que vous avez tort* — indicative ; *mais il n'est pas certain que j'aie raison* — subjunctive.

It is probable they will make peace this year. Is it probable they will make peace this year ?

*Il est probable qu'on fera la paix cette année* — indicative ; *Est-il probable qu'on fasse la paix cette année ?* — subj.

It is true that I may be deceived. If it were true that I might be deceived ;

*Il est vrai que je puis me tromper* — indicative. *S'il était vrai que je pusse me tromper* — subjunctive.

**RULE 161.** — *Conjunctions which govern the Indicative and Subjunctive.*

The following conjunctions, *de manière que, de sorte que, tellement que*, so that, *sinon que*, except that, govern the indicative, when the sentence affirms positively that the thing in question is or will be, and the subjunctive when the thing is not certain, but rather wished for. Examples :

- |             |   |   |
|-------------|---|---|
| <i>ind.</i> | { | <p>Your son behaves in such a manner, that he <i>is</i>, and <i>will</i> always be, loved by his masters ;</p> <p><i>Votre fils se comporte, de manière qu'il est et sera toujours aimé de ses maîtres.</i></p> |
| <i>sub.</i> | { | <p>Behave in such a manner, that you <i>may</i> be loved and esteemed by your masters ;</p> <p><i>Comportez-vous de manière que vous soyez aimé et estimé de vos maîtres.</i></p>                               |

*Note.* The word *que*, used in the second part of a sentence, to avoid the repetition of a conjunction occurring in the first, governs the same mood as the conjunction it stands for. Examples :

- |             |   |  |
|-------------|---|--|
| <i>ind.</i> | { | <p>As soon as my brother writes to me, and I have the opportunity, I will let you know ;</p> <p><i>Aussitôt que mon frère m'écrira, et que j'aurai des occasions, je vous donnerai de ses nouvelles.</i></p> |
|-------------|---|--|



sub. { Unless you come or write to me, I will not do it :  
*A moins que vous ne veniez ou que vous ne m'écriviez,*  
*je ne le ferai pas.*

The word *que*, used to avoid the repetition of *si*, governs the subjunctive. Example :

If somebody comes, and I am not at home, send for me;  
*S'il vient quelqu'un et que je ne sois pas à la maison, en-*  
*voyez-moi chercher.*

### SECTION THE THIRD.

*Which Tense of the Subjunctive must be used.*

RULE 162. — *Which Tense of the Subjunctive Mood must be used.*

A verb required to be in the subjunctive mood by any of the preceding rules is usually put in the present, when the time of its action is present or future ; and in the preterite, when that time is past, or only conjectural. Examples :

I fear lest he should come ;

*Je crains qu'il ne vienne* — future.

I feared lest you would come ;

*Je craignais que vous ne vinssiez* — past.

I shall be obliged to do it ; *Il faudra que je le fasse.*

I should be obliged to do it ; *Il faudrait que je le fisse.* x

RULE 163. — *Compound Tenses of the Subjunctive.*

The compound tenses of the subjunctive are used to express a past action, but prior to that expressed by the preceding verb : the compound of the present is used after the present or future of the indicative ; and their compounds and the compound of the preterite after any other tense. Examples :

I fear you have complained of me ;

*Je crains que vous n'ayez fait des plaintes de moi.*

I feared you would have complained of me ;

*Je craignais que vous n'eussiez fait des plaintes de moi.*

I do not believe he has learnt geography ; I did not believe he had learnt geography ;

*Je ne crois pas qu'il ait appris la géographie* — pres.

*je ne croyais pas qu'il eût appris la géographie* — past.

RULE 164. — *Preterite of the Subjunctive.*

Though the first verb be in the present or future, the second is put in the preterite subjunctive or in its compound, when the sentence implies a condition, and particularly if the conjunction *si* is followed by a verb in the imperfect. Examples :

Do you think they would refuse me, if I requested it of them ?

*Croyez-vous qu'ils me refusassent, si je les en priais ?*

I do not think your brothers would have come, had it not been for me.

*Je ne crois pas que sans moi vos frères fussent venus.*

*Sans moi* is a conditional expression which signifies, if I had not persuaded them to come.

## CHAP. XVII.

### OF THE AUXILIARY VERBS, *WOULD*, *COULD*, *SHOULD*, AND *MIGHT*.

The words *would*, *could*, *should*, and *might*, which we have hitherto considered only as the distinctive marks of tenses, and with which we have conjugated all our verbs, regular and irregular, are also sometimes distinct verbs of themselves, and expressed in French by *vouloir*, *pouvoir*, or *devoir*, according to the following rules :

RULE 165. — 1. *How to express will and would.*

When the words *will* and *would* are not joined to any verb, they are verbs of themselves, and must be expressed by *vouloir*, to be willing. Thus we say,

Why do you not do your exercise? because I *will* not, or I am not willing;

*Pourquoi ne faites-vous pas votre thème? parce que je ne veux pas.*

If I am not married, it is because I *would* not, or have not been willing;

*Si je ne suis pas marié, c'est que je n'ai pas voulu.*

The words *will* and *would*, though followed by another verb, are also expressed by the verb *vouloir*, when they are said emphatically. Examples:

I *will* be obeyed; *Je veux qu'on m'obéisse.*

He *would* have you beg his pardon;

*Il voulait que vous lui demandassiez pardon.*

## 2. *Should*.

The word *should* is a verb, and must be expressed in French by some tense of the verb *devoir*, when it is used for *ought to*, denoting *necessity* or *duty*. Examples:

You *should* not do that, since religion forbids it;

*Vous ne devez pas le faire, puisque la religion le défend.*

If he wants money, he *should* ask me for some;

*S'il a besoin d'argent, il devrait m'en demander.*

## 3. *Could* and *might*.

The words *could* and *might* are verbs when they denote *possibility*: they are both expressed in French by the verb *pouvoir*, to be able. Examples:

If I *could* do you that service, I would not refuse you;

*Si je pouvais vous rendre ce service, je ne vous refuserais pas.*

You *could* have done your exercise, if you had been willing;

*Vous auriez pu faire votre thème, si vous aviez voulu.*

The words *may* and *can* are usually verbs, and expressed in French by the present tense of the verb *pouvoir*. Example:

You *can* write your letter before dinner;

*Vous pouvez écrire votre lettre avant dîner.*

N. B. The words *would*, *could*, and *might* may sometimes be rendered by a separate verb, or by the conditional of the following one: thus we say, *je pourrais vous payer, si je voulais*, or *je vous payerais, si je voulais*; I could pay you if I would: but this being seldom the case, the foregoing explanation must be particularly attended to.

RULE 166.— *In which tense would and could are to be put in French.*

When the auxiliaries, *would*, *could*, *should*, *might*, are not followed by any verb, or by one only, they may be expressed by the *imperfect*, the *conditional*, the *preterite* of the indicative, or of the subjunctive, according as the senses require it: thus, *I would*, may be rendered by *je voulais*, *je voulais*, *je voudrais*, or *je voulais*; *I should*, by *je devais*, *je dus*, *je devrais*, or *je dusse*; and *I could*, by *je pouvais*, *je pus*, *je pourrais*, or *je pusse*. Examples:

*I could* do that yesterday; *Je pouvais faire cela hier.*

*I could* do it formerly; *Je pus le faire autrefois.*

*I could* do it if I would; *Je le pourrais si je voulais.*

I do not think *I could* do it; *Je ne crois pas que je le pusse.*

RULE 167.— *would and could, followed by two verbs.*

When the auxiliaries, *would*, *could*, *should*, *might*, are followed by two verbs, of which the last is in the participle, they may be rendered in French,

1. By the imperfect, or the conditional of *avoir*, and the participle *voulu*, *pu*, or *dû*, if you speak of a past time.  
Example:

You *should have* written to me, since you knew my address;

*Vous auriez dû m'écrire, puisque vous saviez mon adresse.*

2. By the conditional of *vouloir*, *pouvoir*, or *devoir*, and the verb *avoir* in the infinitive mood, if you speak of something not yet done. Examples:

*I would* I had done my exercise;

*Je voudrais avoir fait mon thème.*

These sentences, *I will have him pay me*, *He would have me betray my duty*, and others of the same sort, are rendered in French by *Je veux qu'il me paye*, *Il voudrait que je trahisse mon devoir*—as if it were, *I will that he pay me*, *He would that I betray my duty*.

*Note.* If you are at a loss in which tense to put the auxiliaries *would*, *could*, *should*, or *might*, consider *would* as a tense of the verb *to be willing*; *should* as a tense of *to be obliged*; *could* as a tense of *to be able*; and then put the verbs *pouvoir*, *vouloir*, and *devoir*, into the same tense in French as the verb *to be* is in English, and you will never be mistaken.

## CHAP. XVIII.

### OF THE IMPERSONAL VERBS.

We have already treated of the impersonal verbs, in Rule 160. They are used in the third person only, and are generally construed in French as in English, except the following — *il faut*, *il y a*, *il est*, and *c'est*, which require particular attention.

RULE 168.— *Use of the Impersonal Verb il faut, it must.*

The verb *must* is always expressed by the impersonal *il faut*. The noun or pronoun, which in English is the nominative of *must*, becomes in French the nominative of the next verb, which is put in the subjunctive. Examples:

I must see him; *Il faut que je le voie.*

You must come to-morrow;

*Il faut que vous veniez demain.*

Your brother must write to him;

*Il faudra que votre frère lui écrive.*

The verb *have*, which often comes after *must*, is sometimes put in the subjunctive: as, *il faut que j'aie des livres*, I must have books; *Il faut que votre frère ait un chapeau*,

our brother must *have* a hat: but it is more elegantly expressed, and then the nominative of *must* is put in the dative case: thus, *il me faut des livres*; *il faut un chapeau* à votre frère.

The verb *should*, coming at the end of a sentence, is also usually expressed by *il faut*. Example:

Your exercise is not done as it *should be*;  
*Votre thème n'est pas fait comme il faut.*

RULE 169.—'Use of the Impersonal *il y a*, *there is*.

The verb *to be*, preceded by the adverb *there*, becomes impersonal, and is expressed by the third person of the verb *avoir*, for every tense, thus: *il y a*, there is, or there are; *il y avait*, there was, or there were; *il y eut*, there were; *il y aura*, there shall be; *il y aurait*, there should be; *il y ait*, there may be; and *il y eût*, there might be. Examples:

*There are* many difficulties in your affair;  
*Il y a beaucoup de difficultés dans votre affaire.*  
*There is* no talent more shining than that of speaking;  
*Il n'y a point de talent plus brillant que celui de la parole.*

The verb *to be*, preceded by the word *some* or *many*, is also often expressed by the impersonal, *il y a*, *il y avait*, with the partitive article, &c. as if it were, *there are some*. Examples:

*Some* Christians are unworthy of that name;  
*Il y a des Chrétiens qui sont indignes de ce nom.*  
*Many* friends are false; *Il y a bien de faux amis.*

The impersonal, *il y a*, *il y avait*, &c. is also used in French in three circumstances, where *there is* is not used in English.

1. To ask the distance from one place to another; then it answers to the English words *how far*? Examples:

*How far* is it from Winchester to London?  
*Combien y a-t-il de Winchester à Londres?*

2. To ask the number of a thing, in which case it answers to the words *how many*? Examples:

How many inhabitants *are there* in France?

*Combien y a-t-il d'habitans en France?*

How many kings *are there* in Europe?

*Combien y a-t-il de rois en Europe?*

3. To ask *how long* it is since a thing happened. Example:

*How long* has your father been dead?

*Combien y a-t-il que M. votre père est mort?*

When the question is made by *il y a, il y avait, &c.* we generally answer by the same verb. Examples:

*Combien y a-t-il de Douvres à Calais? Il y a dix lieux.*

*Combien y a-t-il d'âmes en Angleterre?*

*Il y en a douze millions.*

*Combien y a-t-il que la guerre dure? Il y a quatre ans.*

RULE 170. — *Distinction between il est and c'est, it is.*

The impersonal, *it is, it was, it will be, &c.* is expressed in French by *il est, il était, il sera, &c.* when it is followed by an adjective without reference to any thing expressed before, or by a substantive of time. Examples:

*It is* six o'clock; *it is* time to set out;

*Il est six heures; il est temps de partir.*

*It is* difficult to please every body;

*Il est difficile de plaire à tout le monde.*

*C'est* is sometimes used before an adjective, in sentences like these: *c'est bon, c'est mauvais, &c.* but then they have reference to something mentioned before.

*It is* expressed by *c'est, c'était, ce fut, &c.* when it is followed by a substantive which has not reference to time, by a pronoun, or by a verb in the infinitive mood. Examples:

*It is* not fortune which renders us happy, *it is* virtue;

*Ce n'est pas l'argent qui nous rend heureux, c'est la vertu.*

It is your turn to play ; *C'est à vous à jouer.*  
 Not to punish the wicked is to sanction vice ;  
*C'est autoriser le vice que de ne pas punir les méchants.*

RULE 171. — it is, expressed by *c'est* and *ce sont*.

The impersonal, *it is, it was, &c.* followed by a substantive, or the pronouns *eux* or *elles*, in the nominative plural, expressed by *ce sont*, and not by *c'est*. Examples :

It is they who have seen him ; *Ce sont eux qui l'ont vu.*

It is your brothers who are in the right ;

*Ce sont vos frères qui ont raison.*

Not *c'est vos frères qui ont raison* — nor *c'est eux qui l'ont vu.*

Are those your sisters ? Yes, they are.

*Est-ce là vos sœurs ? Oui, ce sont elles.*

The impersonal, *it is, it was, &c.* is always expressed by *est* or *c'était*, in the singular, before the pronouns *moi, toi, us, vous*, and also before the pronouns *eux, elles*, and a substantive plural, when they are not in the nominative case. Examples :

It is you who are in the wrong ; *C'est vous qui avez tort.*

It is their turn to answer ; *C'est à eux à répondre.*

It is of your brothers I complain ;

*C'est de vos frères que je me plains.*

Is it you who gave us this book ?

*Est-ce vous qui nous avez donné ce livre ?*

## CHAP. XIX.

### SYNTAX OF ADVERBS.

RULE 172. — *Where the Adverbs are to be placed.*

Adverbs are usually placed after the simple tenses of a verb, and between the auxiliary and the participle of the



compound ones ; they are never put, as in English, between the nominative and the verb. Examples :

I often think of you ; *Je pense souvent à vous.*

I never speak ill of any body ;

*Je ne parle jamais mal de personne.*

I never have spoken ill of any body ;

*Je n'ai jamais mal parlé de personne.*

(And not *je souvent pense à vous*).

#### RULE 173. — *Adverbs after the Participle.*

The few adverbs in *ment* which govern a noun are always placed in French after the participle in a compound tense, and even after the words it may govern. Examples :

I despatched the goods agreeably to your orders ;

*J'ai expédié les marchandises conformément à vos ordres.*

You have acted independently of my orders ;

*Vous avez agi indépendamment de mes ordres.*

The following adverbs of time, *aujourd'hui*, to-day, *demain*, to-morrow, *hier*, yesterday, and those composed of two or three words, are usually placed after the participle in a compound tense. Examples :

It has rained to-day ; *Il a plu aujourd'hui.*

I met with him by chance ; *Je l'ai rencontré par hasard.*

And not, *Il a aujourd'hui plu ; Je l'ai par hasard rencontré.*

*Note 1.* Many adverbs usually begin a sentence in French, or a member of it. Such are, *cependant*, meanwhile ; *c'est pourquoi*, therefore ; *comment*, how ; *combien*, how much ; *quand*, when ; *où*, where, &c. Example :

When will you go to France? *Quand irez-vous en France?*

*Note 2.* The adverb *presque*, almost, is always placed before *toujours*, *jamais*, and *souvent*, when they meet ; and these three go before all others when several meet together. Examples :

The king is scarcely ever well ;  
*Le roi est presque toujours malade.*  
 Your brother and mine are always together ;  
*Votre frère et le mien sont toujours ensemble.*

---

## CHAP. XX.

### SYNTAX OF PREPOSITIONS.

**RULE 174.**—*Prepositions are placed before the Word which they govern.*

Prepositions are placed in French before the words they govern ; in English they are sometimes placed after. Examples :

The person whom you are interested *for* ;  
*La personne pour qui vous vous intéressez.*  
 Whom do you speak *to* ? *A qui parlez-vous ?*  
 What do you complain *of* ? *De quoi vous plaignez-vous ?*

**RULE 175.**—*How to express from followed by to.*

The prepositions *from* and *to*, used in the same sentence before substantives of place, are expressed in French in two different manners.

1. To express the distance, or the going from one place specified to another, *from* is rendered by *de*, and *to* by *à*. Examples :

I go in one day *from* Paris *to* Rouen ;  
*Je vais en un jour de Paris à Rouen.*  
 There is no great distance *from* his house *to* the church ;  
*Il n'y a pas loin de chez lui à l'église.*

2. When the same word is repeated after *from*, and after *to*, and also when they are placed before names of kingdoms, provinces, and vast countries, *from* is rendered by *de*, and *to* by *en*. Examples :

I go *from* street *to* street, *from* town *to* town, *from* province *to* province ;

*Je vais de rue en rue, de ville en ville, de province en province.*

My brother will go *to* Germany, and *from* Germany *to* France, *from* France *to* Italy, *from* Italy *to* Spain, and there he will embark for America.

*Mon frère ira en Allemagne, et d'Allemagne en France, de France en Italie, d'Italie en Espagne, et là il s'embarquera pour l'Amérique.*

RULE 176.—*from, to, in respect of time.*

*From* is rendered by *depuis*, and *to* by *jusqu'à*, when speaking of time. Example :

I will stay in the country *from* Midsummer *to* Christmas ;  
*Je resterai à la campagne depuis la St. Jean jusqu'à Noël.*

When the preposition *to* signifies *as far as*, it is generally expressed by *jusqu'à*. Examples :

I have drunk the cup *to* the dregs

*J'ai bu le calice jusqu'à la lie.*

I will prosecute him *to* the end ;

*Je le poursuivrai jusqu'à la fin.*

*Note.*—An English preposition has often several significations, and consequently must be variously expressed in French. Let us take, for instance, the preposition *about*. Examples :

I am come *to* speak *to* you *about* our affair ;

*Je suis venu pour vous parler touchant notre affaire.*

I will go and see you *about* the end of the next month ;

*J'irai vous voir vers la fin du mois prochain.*

Dinner was *about* over when he came ;

*Il arriva sur la fin du dîner.*

RULE 177.—*When the Prepositions are to be repeated*

The prepositions *de, en, à*, are usually repeated before every noun, pronoun, or verb ; others, such as *avec, contre,*

*ns*, &c. are repeated before nouns or verbs of different significations, whether they are or are not repeated in English. Example :

The Son of God came on earth *to* redeem men, and *to* destroy the empire of the devil ;

*Le Fils de Dieu est venu sur la terre pour racheter les hommes, et pour détruire l'empire du démon.*

They are not usually repeated before words which have exactly near the same signification. Examples :

The Son of God came on earth to redeem men, and *to* free them from sin ;

*Le Fils de Dieu est venu sur la terre pour racheter les hommes, et les délivrer du péché*—not *et pour les délivrer*, because *racheter* and *délivrer* signify the same thing.

Our law judges nobody without having heard and examined him ;

*Notre loi ne juge personne sans l'avoir entendu et examiné.*

But the preposition must be repeated before two verbs of the same signification, when they govern different nouns or pronouns. Example :

Our law judges nobody *without* having heard him and examined his conduct.

*Notre loi ne juge personne sans l'avoir entendu et sans avoir examiné sa conduite.*

## OF CONJUNCTIONS AND INTERJECTIONS.

We have spoken at large of conjunctions, pages 122 and following : their use and construction have been fully explained in the Syntax, in Rules 97, 158, and 161 ; and nothing further remains to be said of them.

The different species of interjections have been treated of page 124 : their construction is the same in French as in English, therefore they require no further explanation.

## CHAP. XXI.

## OF THE FRENCH IDIOMS.

Idioms are modes of speaking peculiar to a language, which cannot be literally translated into another.

The chapter of idioms is divided into three sections: the *first* explains the idiomatical expressions of the auxiliary verbs *to have* and *to be*: the *second* shows the idiomatical significations in which the verbs *aller*, *avoir*, *venir*, *donner*, *faire*, *jouer*, and *mourir* may be taken: the *third* contains a series of the most remarkable French idioms.

## SECTION THE FIRST.

*Idiomatical Expressions of the Verbs to have and to be.*

RULE 178. — *Cases in which the Verb to be is expressed by the Verb avoir.*

The verb *to be* is expressed in French by the same tense of the verb *avoir*, in the seven following cases :

1. When speaking of the dimension or age, it is followed by a word of number, such as *one, two, three, four, &c.* Examples :

Our house is twenty feet broad ;  
*Notre maison a vingt pieds de large*—not *est*.  
 I am twenty-five years of age ; *J'ai vingt-cinq ans.*

2. When it is used to ask the age of a person or an animal. Examples :

How old are you ? *Quel âge avez-vous ?*—not *êtes-vous*.  
 How old is your dog ? *Quel âge a votre chien ?*

3. When it is followed by the words *hungry, dry, or thirsty*. Examples :

*Are you hungry, daughter? Yes, mother, I am very hungry.*

*Avez-vous faim, ma fille? Oui, ma mère, j'ai grande faim.*

*Are you dry? No, I am not dry at present;*

*Avez-vous soif? Non, je n'ai pas soif à présent.*

4. When it is followed by the words *hot, warm, or cold*. The part of the body referred to is preceded in French by *au* for the masculine, by *à la* for the feminine, and by *aux* for the plural, instead of the possessive pronouns *my, thy, his, her, our, your, or their*, used in English. Examples:

*My feet are cold; J'ai froid aux pieds.*

*Are your hands warm? Avez-vous chaud aux mains?*

*Warm yourself, if you are cold;*

*Chauffez-vous, si vous avez froid.*

5. When it is or might be followed by the adverb *there*, without altering the sense of the sentence, as we said, Rule 169. Example:

*There are many poor people in England and France;*

*Il y a beaucoup de pauvres en Angleterre et en France.*

6. When it is followed by the words *in the wrong, in the right, or afraid*. Examples:

*You were in the right, and I was in the wrong;*

*Vous aviez raison, et moi j'avais tort.*

*Why are you afraid? Pourquoi avez-vous peur?*

7. When *to be* is followed by *in vain*, it is commonly expressed by *avoir beau*. Examples:

*It is in vain to wait for him, he will not come;*

*Vous avez beau l'attendre, il ne viendra pas.*

*It was in vain for me to advise him, he would not believe me;*

*J'avais beau l'avertir, il ne voulait pas me croire.*

RULE 179.—to be, *expressed by faire.*

The verb *to be* is expressed by *faire*, when applied to the state of the weather; and with the words *jour, nuit, soleil, vent, &c.* Examples:

It is fine weather to-day;	<i>Il fait beau temps aujourd'hui.</i>
It was bad weather yesterday;	<i>Il faisait mauvais temps hier.</i>
It will be cold soon;	<i>Il fera froid dans peu.</i>
Is it hot in France?	<i>Fait-il chaud en France?</i>

If the word *weather* is the nominative case of the verb *to be*, then it should be expressed by *être*, and not by *faire*. Examples:

The weather is fine;	<i>Le temps est beau.</i>
The air is cold;	<i>L'air est froid — not le temps fait beau, l'air fait froid.</i>

RULE 180.—The Verb to be expressed by the Verb *se porter*.

The verbs *to be*, and *to do*, used in English in enquiring or speaking of a person's health, are both expressed in French by the reflected verb *se porter*. Examples:

How do you do?	<i>Comment vous portez-vous?</i>
I am very well;	<i>Je me porte fort bien.</i>
Is your father well?	<i>M. votre père se porte-t-il bien?</i>
He was well yesterday;	<i>Il se portait bien hier.</i>

RULE 181.—*Il en est de*, it is with.

The impersonal — *it is, it was, it will be, &c.* followed by the preposition *with*, is expressed by *il en est de*, for the present; *il en était de*, for the imperfect; *il en fut de*, for the preterite; *il en sera de*, for the future; *il en serait de*, for the conditional; *il en soit de*, for the pres. subj.; *il en fût de*, for the preterite. Examples:

*It is with you as with other men;*  
*Il en est de vous comme des autres hommes.*

I do not believe *it will be* with my son as with yours ;  
*Je ne crois pas qu'il en soit de mon fils comme du vôtre.*

N. B. The verb *to be* before an infinitive is sometimes expressed by the verb *devoir* ; sometimes it is not expressed at all, and then the next verb is put in the future.  
 Example :

I am to dine out to-day ;  
*Je dois dîner, (or je dînerai) en ville aujourd'hui.*

RULE 182.— *The Verb to have, expressed by the Verb être.*

The verb, *to have* is expressed by *être*, 1. in the compound tenses of all the reflected verbs. Examples :

I rose this morning at six o'clock ;  
*Je me suis levé ce matin à six heures.*  
 Have you perceived the trick ?  
*Vous êtes-vous aperçu du tour ?*

2. In the compound tenses of the verbs *aller, arriver, déchoir, décéder, entrer, mourir, naître, partir, tomber*, also of *venir*, and its compounds, *devenir, disconvenir, intervenir, parvenir, revenir*, and *survenir*, and of such intransitive verbs as admit of their participles following a substantive in an adjective sense. Examples :

You have gone to London without my leave ;  
*Vous êtes allé à Londres sans ma permission.*  
 My brother died this morning at seven ;  
*Mon frère est mort ce matin à sept heures.*

RULE 183. — *Avoir mal à, speaking of illness.*

We make use of *avoir mal à*, to ask or to express what part of the body is affected with some illness or pain.  
 Examples :

Have you the head-ach ? *Avez-vous mal à la tête ?*  
 My eyes are sore ; *J'ai mal aux yeux.*  
 Have you the tooth-ach ? *Avez-vous mal aux dents ?*  
 I feel a pain in my side ; *J'ai mal au côté.*  
 His feet are sore ; *Il a mal aux pieds.*



## SECTION THE SECOND.

*Idiomatical Significations of aller.*

The verb *aller*, besides its general signification of *to go*, has many others, as may be seen in the following examples :

<i>Le commerce ne va plus,</i>	Trade is dead.
<i>Est-ce ainsi que vous y allez ?</i>	Is this your way of proceeding?
<i>Comment va la santé ?</i>	How do you do ?
<i>Tout va bien, tout va mal,</i>	All is well, all is bad.
<i>Cet habit vous va bien,</i>	That coat suits you well.
<i>Mon frère va partir,</i>	My brother is going out.
<i>Aller aux voix,</i>	To put to the vote.
<i>Il va pleuvoir, neiger,</i>	It will rain, snow.
<i>Il y va de la vie,</i>	Life is at stake.
<i>Cela va sans dire,</i>	That is understood.
<i>Aller pied à pied, pas à pas,</i>	To act deliberately.
<i>Il y va de mon honneur,</i>	My honour is concerned in it.
<i>Vous ne faites qu'aller et venir,</i>	You are ever running up and down.
<i>Il va venir,</i>	He is coming.
<i>Allez-vous sortir ?</i>	Are you going out ?

*Idiomatical Significations of avoir.\**

<i>Avoir besoin de quelque chose,</i>	To want something.
<i>Avoir bonne mine,</i>	To look well.
<i>Avoir mauvaise mine,</i>	To look ill.
<i>Avoir affaire de quelque chose,</i>	To have occasion for some thing.
<i>Avoir le cœur sur les lèvres,</i>	To be free and open.
<i>Avoir des affaires par dessus les yeux,</i>	To be full of business.

*Idiomatical Significations of donner.*

The verb *donner*, besides its signification of *to give*, is used in many other senses, as appears by the following Examples :

\* The verbs used in the infinitive present, in some idiomatical significations, may be used in all other tenses and persons in the same sense.

<i>onner des airs,</i>	To take a great deal upon one's self.
<i>ier dans le piège.</i>	To be caught in the snare.
<i>onner à garder à quelqu'un,</i>	To make a fool of somebody.
<i>onner du bon temps,</i>	To pass one's time merrily.
<i>onner de garde de faire la chose,</i>	To be sure not to do such a thing.
<i>ier sur l'ennemi,</i>	To fall upon the enemy.
<i>in donne à la tête,</i>	That wine flies up to the head.
<i>voir où donner de la tête,</i>	To know not what way to turn.
<i>ier carte blanche,</i>	To give full powers.

*Idiomatical Significations of faire.*

<i>grâce à quelqu'un,</i>	To forgive somebody.
<i>le malade,</i>	To sham sickness.
<i>fond sur quelqu'un,</i>	To rely upon somebody.
<i>faire un montre,</i>	To bespeak a watch.
<i>voile, or mettre à la voile,</i>	To set sail.
<i>ire des amis,</i>	To get friends.
<i>ire des affaires,</i>	To bring one's self into trouble.
<i>ire à la fatigue,</i>	To inure one's self to hardships.
<i>bien ses affaires.</i>	To prosper.
<i>des contes à dormir dessus.</i>	To tell idle stories.
<i>un pas de clerc,</i>	To take a false step.
<i>des armes,</i>	To fence.
<i>la sourde oreille,</i>	To give a deaf ear.
<i>bonne mine à quelqu'un,</i>	To receive one kindly.
<i>l'homme d'importance,</i>	To pretend to great matters.

*Several Significations of jouer.*

<i>des instrumens,</i>	To play upon instruments.
<i>à quelque jeu,</i>	To play at some game.
<i>une pièce de théâtre,</i>	To act a play.
<i>un tour à quelqu'un,</i>	To serve one a trick.
<i>à quitte ou double,</i>	To run all chance.
<i>de son reste,</i>	To use one's last shifts.
<i>au plus fin,</i>	To vie in cunning.

*Idiomatical Significations of mourir.*

Mourir <i>de faim</i> ,	To be starved.
Mourir <i>de soif</i> ,	To be choked with thirst.
Mourir <i>de froid</i> ,	To starve with cold.
Mourir <i>de chaud</i> ,	To be extremely hot.
Mourir <i>de peur</i> ,	To be frightened to death.
Mourir <i>de chagrin</i> ,	To grieve one's self to death.
Mourir <i>de douleur</i> ,	To have one's heart broken.

*Idiomatical Significations of the Word main.*

Donner la main à un malheureux,	<i>To relieve an unfortunate.</i>
Donner un coup de main,	<i>To help.</i>
Donner à pleines mains,	<i>To give largely.</i>
Donner de main en main,	<i>To handle about.</i>
Faire main basse sur l'ennemi,	<i>To put the enemy to the sword.</i>
Faire un coup de main,	<i>To do a bold action.</i>
Faire quelque chose sous main,	<i>To do something secretly.</i>
Mettre l'épée à la main,	<i>To draw the sword.</i>
Prendre à toutes mains,	<i>To catch every way.</i>
En venir aux mains,	<i>To fight.</i>

## SECTION THE THIRD.

*A Series of the most curious French Idioms.*

Aller à bride abattue,	<i>To go full speed.</i>
Avoir le pied au tombeau,	<i>To have already one foot in the grave.</i>
Avoir la tête près du bonnet,	<i>To take fire presently.</i>
Boire le calice jusqu'à la lie,	<i>To drink the cup to the dregs.</i>
C'est la mer à boire,	<i>It is an endless business.</i>
Chercher à pied et à cheval,	<i>To look every where.</i>
Couper la parole à quelqu'un,	<i>To interrupt one who speaks.</i>
Decouvrir le pot aux roses,	<i>To find out the mystery.</i>
Dormir la grasse matinée,	<i>To sleep very late.</i>

quelqu'un jusqu'aux *To praise one to excess.*

leux doigts de sa perte, *To be on the brink of ruin.*

ndre à la mouche, *To be very captious.*

e la poudre aux yeux, *To cast a mist before one's eyes.*

u et flamme, *To fret and fume.*

son blé en herbe, *To eat the calf in the cow's belly.*

de l'eau dans son vin, *To allay one's passion.*

les fers au feu, *To fall stoutly to work.*

une armée sur pied, *To raise an army.*

mander que plaies et *To think the more mischief the better sport.*

ir sur quel pied dan- *Not to know which way to turn.*

du bonnet, *To assent blindly.*

r le gâteau, *To share the profit.*

quelqu'un au fil de *To put somebody to the sword.*

l'air du bureau, *To feel people's pulse.*

quelqu'un au pied *To snap one up.*

ciel et terre, *To leave no stone unturned.*

le tout pour le tout, *To set all at stake.*

clou à quelqu'un, *To give one as good as he brings.*

la paille avec quel- *To fall out with one.*

court fêtu, *To draw cuts.*

on épingle du jeu. *To slip one's neck out of the collar.*

chaussure à son pied, *To be well fitted.*

son maître, *To meet with one's match.*

bout de ses desseins, *To succeed in one's designs.*

## CHAP. XXII.

A SERIES OF PROVERBS MOST-USED IN  
FRENCH.

- Abondance de bien ne nuit pas, *A store is no sore.*
- A force de forger, on devient forgeron, *Assiduity makes all things easy.*
- A l'impossible nul n'est tenu, *There is no fence against the flail.*
- A méchant chien, court lien, *A curst cur must be tied short.*
- Ami au prêt, ennemi au rendre, *I lose my money, and my friend.*
- Apprenti n'est pas maître, *You must spoil before you spin.*
- Après la mort le médecin, *After death comes the physician.*
- A qui veut mal, mal arrive, *Evil be to him that evil thinks.*
- Argent comptant porte médecine, *Ready money is a remedy.*
- Aux grands maux les grands remèdes, *A desperate disease must have a desperate cure.*
- Beau parler n'écorche pas la langue, *Fair words cost nothing.*
- Beaucoup de bruit, et peu d'effet, *Great cry and little wool.*
- Bon avocat, mauvais voisin, *A good lawyer and evil neighbour.*
- Bonne renommée vaut mieux que ceinture dorée, *A good name is better than riches.*
- Ce n'est pas pour vous que le four chauffe, *There is nothing for you.*
- Ce n'est pas l'habit qui fait le moine, *It is not the cowl that makes the friar.*
- Celui qui cherche le danger y périra, *Harm watch, harm catch.*
- Ce qui abonde ne vicie pas, *Excess of right is no wrong.*

- Ce qui est différé n'est pas perdu, *All is not lost that is delayed.*  
 C'est de la moutarde après diné, *After dinner comes musturd*  
 C'est là où gît le lièvre, *There is the point.*  
 Charité bien ordonnée com- *Charity begins at home.*  
 mence par soi-même,  
 Chien qui aboie ne mord pas, *Barking dogs seldom bite.*  
 Dans les petits pots sont les bonnes épices, *Short and sweet.*  
 De tout s'avise à qui pain faut, *Necessity is the mother of in-*  
 venton.  
 De deux maux il faut choisir le moindre, *Of two evils choose the least.*  
 Faire d'une pierre deux coups, *To kill two birds with one*  
 stone.  
 Familiarité engendre mépris, *Familiarity breeds contempt.*  
 Faute de parler, on meurt sans confession, *Spare to speak and spare to*  
 speed.  
 Faute d'un point Martin perdit son âne, *A miss is as good as a mile.*  
 Fin contre fin n'est pas bon à faire doublure, *Diamond cut diamond.*  
 Grands vanteurs, petits faiseurs, *Great boast, little roast.*  
 Il a les yeux plus grands que le ventre, *His eyes are bigger than his*  
 belly.  
 Il a plus de bonheur qu'un honnête homme, *He is more lucky than wise.*  
 Il a plus de peur que de mal, *He is more afraid than hurt.*  
 Il est comme l'oiseau sur la branche, *He is in a wavering situation.*  
 Il est comme le poisson dans l'eau, *The dog's head is in the por-*  
 ridge pot.  
 Il crie avant qu'on l'écorche, *He halts before he is lame.*  
 Il en fait ses choux gras, *He feathers his nest by it.*  
 Il ennuie à qui attend, *Waiting is tedious.*  
 Il fait bon pêcher en eau trouble, *It is good fishing in troubled*  
 waters.  
 Il faut battre le fer quand il est chaud, *Strike the iron while it is hot.*

- Il faut faire vie qui dure, *Old young and old long.*  
 Il ne faut pas juger des gens *One must not hang a man by*  
 par la mine, *his looks.*  
 Il n'a ni bouche ni éperon, *He has neither wit nor courage.*  
 Il n'est sauce que d'appétit, *Good stomach is the best sauce.*  
 Il n'est si bon charretier qui *That is a good horse that ne-*  
 ne verse, *ver stumbles.*  
 Il n'est pire eau que celle *Smooth water runs deep.*  
 qui dort,  
 Il n'est point de roses sans *No rose without a thorn.*  
 épines,  
 Il n'y a point de feu sans *Where is the smoke, there is*  
 fumée, *the fire.*  
 Il n'y a que la première peine *The first step over, the rest is*  
 qui coute, *easy.*  
 Il sent bien où le bât le blesse, *He feels where the shoe pinches.*  
 Il vaut mieux faire envie que *It is better to be envied than*  
 pitié, *pitied.*  
 Il vaut mieux plier que de *It is better to bend than break*  
 rompre,  
 Il vaut mieux tard que ja- *Better late than never.*  
 mais,  
 La clef d'or ouvre toutes les *Bribe can get in without knock-*  
 serrures, *ing.*  
 La faim chasse le loup du *Hunger will break through a*  
 bois, *stone wall.*  
 La fin couronne l'œuvre, *All's well that ends well.*  
 La nécessité est la mère de *Necessity is the mother of in-*  
 l'industrie, *vention.*  
 La nuit tous chats sont gris, *When candles are out, all cats*  
 are grey.  
 La patience est un remède à *Patience is a plaster for all*  
 tous maux, *sores.*  
 Le bien mal acquis ne profite *Ill gotten goods never prosper.*  
 jamais,  
 Le jeu n'en vaut pas la chan- *The business will not quit cost.*  
 delle,  
 Le renard prêche aux poulets, *The devil rebukes sin.*  
 Le sage entend à demi mot, *A word to the wise is enough.*  
 Les bons comptes font les *Short reckonings make long*  
 bons amis, *friends.*

- Les honneurs changent les *Honour changes manners.*  
 mœurs,  
 Les petits ruisseaux font les *Many drops make a shower.*  
 grandes rivières,  
 Les plus courtes folies sont *The shortest follies are the*  
 les meilleures, *best.*  
 L'occasion fait le larron, *Opportunity makes the thief.*  
 L'oisiveté est la mère de tous *Idleness is the root of all evil.*  
 les vices,  
 Marchand qui perd ne peut *Let him laugh that wins.*  
 rire,  
 Mauvaise herbe croît tou- *Ill weeds grow apace.*  
 jours assez,  
 Marchandise qui plaît est à *Good wares make quick mar-*  
 moitié vendu, *kets.*  
 Nécessité n'a point de loi, *Necessity has no law.*  
 Ne réveillez pas le chat qui *When sorrow is asleep awake*  
 dort, *it not.*  
 Nouveaux rois, nouvelles lois, *New lords, new laws.*  
 On n'a jamais bon marché de *The best the cheapest.*  
 mauvaise marchandise,  
 On n'a rien sans peine, *No pain, no profit.*  
 On ne fait pas marché du *More words than one go to the*  
 premier mot, *bargain.*  
 On ne saurait faire boire un *A man may lead his horse to*  
 âne s'il n'a soif, *water, but he cannot make*  
*him drink, unless he lists.*  
 Où il n'y a rien, le roi perd *Where nothing is to be had*  
 ses droits, *the king loses his right.*  
 Paris n'a pas été fait dans un *Rome was not built in a day.*  
 jour,  
 Parmi les aveugles les borgnes *Among the blind the one-eyed*  
 sont rois, *is a king.*  
 Pas à pas on va bien loin, *Fair and soft goes fast.*  
 Point d'argent point de Suisse, *No money no pater-noster.*  
 Promettre et tenir sont deux, *It is one thing to promise, and*  
*another to perform.*  
 Porter de l'eau à la mer, *To carry coals to Newcastle.*  
 Quand on emprunte on ne *Beggars must not be choosers.*  
 choisit pas,



Quand on parle du loup, on *Talk of the devil and his horns*  
 en voit la queue, *appear.*

Qui aime Bertrand, aime son *Love me, love my dog.*  
 chien,

Qui fera bien, bien trouvera, *Do well, and have well.*

Qui menace a souvent peur, *Swaggerers are great cowards.*

Qui répond paye, *The bail must pay.*

Qui ne hasarde rien n'a rien, *Nothing venture, nothing have.*

Qui trop embrasse mal étreint, *Covet all, lose all.*

Qui se fait brebis, le loup le *Who makes himself a sheep,*  
 mange, *him the wolf eateth.*

Selon ta bourse gouverne ta *Cut your coat according to*  
 bouche, *your cloth.*

Si vous n'êtes pas content, *If you do not like it, turn your*  
 prenez des cartes, *buckles behind.*

Tirer d'un sac deux mou- *To take double fees.*  
 tures,

Toujours pêche qui en prend *Still he fishes that catches one.*  
 un,

Tout ce qui brille n'est pas *All is not gold that glitters.*  
 or,

Toute vérité n'est pas bonne *Truth is not to be spoken at*  
 à dire, *all times.*

Un bon chien chasse de race, *Cat after kind.*

Un chien regarde bien un *A cat may look upon a king.*  
 évêque,

Un honnête homme n'a que *An honest man is as good as*  
 sa parole, *his word.*

Un malheur ne vient jamais *One misfortune comes on the*  
 seul, *neck of another.*

Une souris qui n'a qu'un *It is good to have two strings*  
 trou est bientôt prise, *to one's bow.*

Un tiens vaut mieux que *A bird in the hand is worth*  
 deux tu l'auras, *two in the bush.*

## CHAP. XXIII.

## OF THE CONCORD, DISPOSITION, AND REPETITION OF WORDS IN A SENTENCE.

## SECTION THE FIRST.

*What Parts of Speech agree together in French.*1. *Articles.*

The three articles, *definite, indefinite, and partitive*, agree in gender and number with their substantive. Examples :

The father, mother, and children are in the country.  
*Le père, la mère, et les enfans sont à la campagne.*  
 I have a good garden and a fine house near London.  
*J'ai un bon jardin, et une belle maison près de Londres.*  
 Give me some bread, some meat, and some eggs.  
*Donnez-moi du pain, de la viande, et des œufs.*

2. *Adjectives.*

All adjectives agree in gender and number with the substantives to which they are united or related. Examples :

A learned man ; a learned woman ; learned girls.  
*Un homme savant ; une femme savante ; des filles savantes.*

3. *Pronouns.*

All pronouns, *personal, possessive, demonstrative, relative, and interrogative*, agree in gender and number with their substantive. Examples :

1. My brother wishes to marry your sister, yet I think he does not know her.  
*Mon frère veut épouser votre sœur, cependant je crois qu'il ne la connaît pas.*
2. His son, daughter, and sisters will come here to-night.  
*Son fils, sa fille, et ses sœurs viendront ici ce soir.*

3. This book is new, this house is old, these pens are good.  
*Ce livre est neuf, cette maison est vieille, ces plumes sont bonnes.*
4. The vice against which I speak; the reasons I rely upon are without reply.  
*Le vice contre lequel je parle; les raisons sur lesquelles je me fonde, sont sans réplique.*
5. What is his crime, and what is his excuse?  
*Quel est son crime, et quelle est son excuse?*

#### 4. Verbs.

All personal verbs agree in number and person with their nominative case. Examples:

I speak, we speak; *Je parle, nous parlons.*  
 Man is mortal, men are mortal;  
*L'homme est mortel, les hommes sont mortels.*  
 He says the truth, they say the truth;  
*Il dit la vérité, ils disent la vérité.*

## SECTION THE SECOND.

### *Of Collocation.*

*The Order in which the Words of a Sentence must be placed.*

RULE 1. The articles, the possessive, demonstrative, and interrogative pronouns, always precede in French, as in English, the substantive to which they are joined; as may be observed in the examples of the preceding section.

RULE 2. The adjectives of number, as, *un, deux, trois, quatre*, &c. and also the following, *beau, bon, grand, gros, jeune, mauvais, méchant, meilleur, moindre*, and *petit*, precede their substantive, but others are usually placed after; as *un bon homme, un grand homme*; a good man, a great man.

RULE 3. The relative pronouns, *qui, que, dont, lequel*, &c. come immediately after the noun or pronoun to which

they have reference. Example: Do not reject advice, the utility of which you know; *Ne rejetez pas un avis dont vous connaissez l'utilité.*

**RULE 4.** The prepositions always come before the word which they govern. Example: What do you complain of? *De quoi vous plaignez-vous?*

**RULE 5.** The adverb is usually put after the verb, in a simple tense—as, he answers well, *il répond bien*; and after the auxiliary in a compound one—as, he has well answered, *il a bien répondu.*

**RULE 6.** The nominative of a verb precedes it in an affirmative sentence: as, my father is come, he has given me some money; *mon père est venu, il m'a donné de l'argent.*

If the sentence be interrogative, and the nominative of the verb be any of the following pronouns, *je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils, elles, ce, or on*, it is placed after the verb when it is a simple tense, and after the auxiliary when it is a compound one. Examples: *Parle-t-il? A-t-il parlé? Dit-on? A-t-on dit?*

If the nominative be a substantive, or any other pronoun than those before mentioned, it precedes the verb in an interrogative sentence, but then the personal pronouns *il* or *elle, ils* or *elles*, must be used after the verb or its auxiliary. Examples: Is your father come? Is your mother at home? *Votre père est-il venu? Votre mère est-elle à la maison?*

**RULE 7.** The personal pronouns are placed immediately after the verb they are governed by, when it is in the imperative affirmative: as, give it me, *donnez-le-moi*; sell it us, *vendez-le-nous.*

When the verb is not in the imperative affirmative, the governed pronouns are put immediately before it in a simple tense, and immediately before the auxiliaries *avoir* or *être*, in a compound one: as, he will give them to you; *il vous les donnera*; he has sold them to us, *il nous les a vendus*; he has promised them to me, *il me les a promis*; do not return it to him, *ne le lui rendez pas*, &c.

If a verb governs two or more pronouns, they are placed

before it in this order—*me, te, se, nous, vous*, go before *le, la, les*; *le, la, les*, go before *lui* and *leur*; *lui* and *leur* go before *y* and *en*; and *y* goes before *en*. Examples: he will lend them to you, *il vous les prêtera*; he will lend them to him, *il les lui prêtera*; I will send you some there, *je vous y en enverrai*; I have sent them some there, *je leur y en ai envoyé*; he will carry some thither, *il y en portera*.

RULE 8. If the sentence be negative, *ne* precedes the verb and the governed pronouns; the other word of negation, such as *pas, jamais, rien*, &c. usually comes after the verb in a simple tense, and after its auxiliary in a compound one. Examples: I will never believe it, *je ne le croirai jamais*; he has not seen them, *il ne les a pas vus*; there is nothing finer, *il n'y a rien de plus beau*.

If the verb be in the infinitive, both the negative words go before it, and even before the governed pronouns: the preposition, if there be any, precedes the negation and the pronouns. Example: I will do it not to displease you, *je le ferai, pour ne pas vous déplaire*.

The other parts of speech not mentioned in these eight rules usually follow the same order in French as in English.

### SECTION THE THIRD.

*What Words must be repeated in a Sentence.*

#### 1. *Articles repeated.*

The article must be repeated in French before every substantive. Example:

The heart, the mind, and manners, are formed by education;

*Le cœur, l'esprit, et les mœurs se forment par l'éducation.*

#### 2. *Pronouns repeated.*

The possessive and demonstrative pronouns are repeated

in French before every noun, though they are not repeated in English. Examples :

We must govern *our* taste, expenses, and pleasures ;

*Il faut régler son goût, sa dépense, et ses plaisirs.*

*This* man and woman are very unfortunate ;

*Cet homme et cette femme sont très-malheureux.*

The personal pronouns of the first and second persons are generally repeated before every verb of which they are the nominative case ; those of the third are also repeated before verbs which are in various tenses, and when the first is affirmative and the other negative, or *vice versa*. Examples :

I say, and will always say, that you were in the wrong ;

*Je dis, et je dirai toujours que vous aviez tort.*

He says so, but he does not believe it, I assure you ;

*Il le dit, mais il ne le croit pas, je vous assure.*

All personal pronouns must be repeated in French before every verb they are governed by, though they are not in English. Example :

My brother esteems and honours you ;

*Mon frère vous estime et vous honore.*

### 3. Verbs repeated.

A verb is repeated in a sentence of two parts, if one is negative and the other affirmative. Example :

We must expect every thing from God, and nothing from men ;

*Il faut tout attendre de Dieu, et ne rien attendre des hommes.*

In answer to a question, we often repeat the same verb the question is asked by ; the English repeat only the auxiliary. Example :

Have you seen the king ? Yes, sir, I have ;

*Avez-vous vu le roi ? Oui, monsieur, je l'ai vu.*

### 4. Prepositions repeated.

The prepositions—*de*, *à*, *en*, and *pour*, are usually re-

peated before every noun or verb which they serve to connect with a common source, or general term. Example:

Brazil produces a great quantity of indigo, sugar, pepper, and saltpetre;

*Le Brésil produit une grande quantité d'indigo, de sucre, de poivre, et de salpêtre.*

The propositions, *avec, contre, sans, &c.* are repeated before nouns of different significations. Example:

He is angry with you, but not with your money;

*Il est fâché contre vous, mais non pas contre votre argent.*

## SECTION THE FOURTH.

*Words which may be elegantly repeated.*

### 1. Substantives elegantly repeated.

*La vue de l'esprit a plus d'étendue que la vue du corps.*

BOSSUET.

*Ce qui sert à la vanité n'est que vanité, tout ce qui n'a que le monde pour fondement, se dissipe et s'évanouit avec le monde.*

FLECHIER.

*C'est le privilège de M. de Turenne d'avoir pu vaincre l'envie; le mérite l'avait fait naître; le mérite la fit mourir.*

FLECHIER.

Romains, souffrirez-vous qu'on vous immole un homme Sans qui Rome aujourd'hui cesserait d'être Rome?

Dis, Valère, dis-nous, puisqu'il faut qu'il périsse,

Où penses-tu choisir un lieu pour son supplice?

Sera-ce entre ces murs que mille et mille voix

Font résonner encore du bruit de ses exploits?

Sera-ce hors des murs, au milieu de ces places,

Qu'on voit fumer encor du sang des Curiaces?

CORNEILLE.

### 2. Adjectives elegantly repeated.

*Il y a une infinité de choses, qui ne dépendent que d'une lumière humaine, d'une expérience humaine, d'une pénétration humaine.*

*Dès qu'on sort de la nature, tout devient faux dans l'éloquence ; la chaleur de ses mouvemens les plus passionnés n'est qu'une fausse chaleur ; l'éclat de ses figures n'est qu'un faux éclat.*

*L'amour propre est plus habile que le plus habile homme du monde.*

3. - *The Verb elegantly repeated.*

*J'oublie que je suis malheureux, quand je songe que vous ne m'avez pas oublié ;*

*La reine sanctifia sa cour en se sanctifiant elle-même.*

FLECHIER.

*Il s'est efforcé de connaître Dieu, qui par sa grandeur est inconnu aux hommes, et de connaître l'homme, qui par sa vanité est inconnu à lui-même.*

FLECHIER.

*En quittant le monde, on ne quitte le plus souvent ni les erreurs, ni les folles passions du monde.*

BOURDALOUE.

The following verses of Lusignan to Zaïre contain several repetitions of substantives and verbs :

Ma fille, tendre objet de mes dernières peines,  
Songe au moins, songe au sang qui coule dans tes veines ;  
C'est le sang de vingt rois, tous Chrétiens comme moi ;  
C'est le sang des héros défenseurs de ma loi ;  
C'est le sang des martyrs.—O fille encor trop chère !  
Connais-tu ton destin ? sais-tu quelle est ta mère ?  
Sais-tu bien qu'à l'instant que son flanc mit au jour  
Ce triste et dernier fruit d'un malheureux amour,  
Je la vis massacrer par la main forcenée,  
Par la main des brigands à qui tu t'es donnée ?  
Tes frères, ces martyrs égorgés à mes yeux,  
T'ouvrent leurs bras sanglans, tendus du haut des cieux :  
Ton Dieu que tu trahis, ton Dieu que tu blasphèmes,  
Pour toi, pour tes péchés est mort en ces lieux mêmes,  
En ces lieux où mon bras le servit tant de fois,  
En ces lieux où son sang te parle par ma voix.  
Vois ces murs, vois ce temple envahi par tes maîtres ;  
Tout annonce le Dieu qu'ont vengé tes ancêtres.



Tourne les yeux ; sa tombe est près de ce palais ;  
 C'est ici la montagne où, lavant nos forfaits,  
 Il voulut expirer sous les coups de l'impie ;  
 C'est là que de sa tombe il rappela sa vie ;  
 Tu ne saurais marcher dans cet auguste lieu,  
 Tu n'y *peux* faire un pas, sans y trouver ton Dieu ,  
 Et tu n'y *peux* rester sans renier ton père,  
 Ton honneur qui te parle, et ton Dieu qui t'éclaire.

VOLTAIRE

---



---

## CHAP. XXIV.

*Distinction in French between many Words which are expressed in the same Manner in English.*

### 1. AN, — ANNÉE, — Year.

The word *year* is expressed by *année* when it is considered as a duration of twelve months, and by *an* when we mean only to express one or more units of a twelve-month, at whatever part of the year it may begin. Examples :

It is two years since my father died ; My father died the first year of this century ;

*Il y a deux ans que mon père est mort ; and, Mon père mourut la première année de ce siècle-ci.*

The whole year has been cold ; *Toute l'année a été froide.*

I go every year to France ;

*Je vais tous les ans en France.*

Every year of his life has been marked by some misfortune ;

*Toutes les années de sa vie ont été marquées par quelque malheur.*

2. Jour, . . Journée, . . . Day.

3. Matin, . . Matinée, . . . Morning.

4. Soir, . . . Soirée, . . . Evening.

The word *day* is expressed by *jour*; *morning* by *matin*; and *evening* by *soir*, when we speak of any part of them: they are expressed by *journée*, *matinée*, and *soirée*, when we express their whole duration. Examples:

2. { I have been sick all the *day* long;  
       *J'ai été malade toute la journée.*  
       The *days* are short now; *les jours sont courts à present.*
3. { I go a hunting every *morning*;  
       *Je vais à la chasse tous les matins.*  
       It has rained all the *morning*;  
       *Il a plu toute la matinée.*
4. { I will go and see you to-morrow *evening*;  
       *J'irai vous voir demain au soir.*  
       I will spend the *evening* with you;  
       *Je passerai la soirée avec vous.*

5. BATTRE, — FRAPPER, — to *Beat*.

The verb *to beat*, is rendered by *frapper*, in speaking of a single blow, and by *battre* when several are implied; thus, *on peut frapper sans battre, mais on ne peut battre sans frapper.*

6. COMBAT, — BATAILLE, — *Battle*.

The word *battle* is expressed in French by *combat*, when it denotes a partial action, such as happens at the passage of a river, at the intercepting of a convoy, &c. It is expressed by *bataille*, when it denotes a general action of two armies, such as *la bataille de Pharsale, la bataille de Fontenoi, la bataille de Jemmapes, &c.*

7. CASSER, — ROMPRE, — to *Break*.

The verb *to break* is expressed by *casser*, when we speak of something brittle, and by *rompre*, when the object is not brittle. Thus we say,

You have *broken* my glass, you have *broken* my stick;  
*Vous avez cassé mon verre, vous avez rompu mon bâton.*  
 —Not *vous avez rompu mon verre et cassé mon bâton.*

## 8. CONNAÎTRE,——SAVOIR,——to Know.

The verb *to know* is always expressed by *connaître*, when it signifies *to be acquainted with*; and most commonly by *savoir* in all other circumstances. Thus we say,

Do you *know* that lady? *Connaissez-vous cette dame-là?*  
Do you *know* your lesson? *Savez-vous votre leçon?*

## 9. MARCHER,——SE PROMENER,——to Walk.

The verb *to walk* is expressed in French by *marcher*, when we walk for business, and by *se promener* when we walk for pleasure. Thus we say,

I have been obliged *to walk* much to-day;  
*J'ai été obligé de marcher beaucoup aujourd'hui.*  
I have *been walking* in the garden with my brother;  
*Je me suis promené dans le jardin avec mon frère.*

N. B. It must be observed that the French verb *se promener* does not mean properly *to walk*, though it be often translated so in English, but *to take a diversion* either by walking, or riding, or in a boat, &c. So we say, *se promener à cheval, en carrosse, sur un âne, en bateau, dans une gondole, en mer*, all expressions which would be ridiculous if translated by *to walk*.

## 10. AMENER,——APPORTER,——to Bring.

The verb *to bring* is expressed in French by *amener*, when the object can walk, and by *porter* when it cannot. Thus we say,

*Bring* your wife with you; *Amenez votre épouse avec vous.*  
*Bring* me my books; *Apportez-moi mes livres.*

## 11. MENER,——PORTER,——to Carry.

The verb *mener* is used in French when the object can walk, and *porter* when it cannot. Thus we say,

*Take* that dog to the stable; *Menez ce chien à l'écurie.*  
*Carry* that hat to your brother;  
*Portez ce chapeau à votre frère.*

12. NEUF,——NOUVEAU,——*New*.

The word *new* is most commonly expressed by *neuf* or *neuve*, when we speak of something which has been recently made, or has not been used since it was made, and by *nouveau* or *nouvelle*, when we speak of something of a new kind, a new shape, a new fashion, or different from another used before. Thus we say,

He lives in a new house ;

*Il demeure dans une maison neuve*—if we mean a new-built house.

*Il demeure dans une nouvelle maison*—if we mean that a person has removed, and lives in another house.

3. AVANT,——DEVANT,——*Before*.

The word *before* is expressed in French by *avant*, when it denotes a priority, and by *devant*, when it signifies in presence of. Examples :

I shall have done *before* noon ; *J'aurai fini avant midi*.

I dared not appear *before* you ;

*Je n'osais paraître devant vous*.

The contrary of *avant* is *après* ; that of *devant* is *derrière*.

14. DANS,——EN,——*In*.

The preposition *in*, when speaking of a place, is rendered in French by *dans*, when we mean to express in a definite manner the inclusion, and by *en*, when we express in a vague manner the situation. Thus we say :

He lives *in* a furnished house, near St. James's palace ;

*Il demeure dans une maison garnie, près le palais de St. James*.

It is more convenient for me to live *in* a furnished lodging ;

*Il est plus commode pour moi de vivre en chambre garnie*.

When speaking of time, *dans* expresses the epoch, and *en* the duration. Example :

Death arrives *in* the moment we think least of it, and we pass *in* an instant from this world into the next ;  
*La mort arrive dans le moment qu'on y pense le moins, et l'on passe en un instant de ce monde à l'autre.*

When speaking of the state or qualification, *dans* is used in a particularised sense, and *en* in a general sense. Thus we say :

To live *in* liberty, to be *in* a fury, to fall *into* a lethargy ;  
*Vivre en liberté, être en fureur, tomber en léthargie.*

To live *in* an entire liberty ;  
*Vivre dans une entière liberté.*

To be *in* an extreme fury ;  
*Etre dans une extrême fureur.*

To fall *into* a profound lethargy ;  
*Tomber dans une profonde léthargie.*

#### 15. PLUS, — DAVANTAGE, — *More.*

The word *more* is always expressed by *plus*, when it is not at the end of a sentence, and by *davantage* when it is at the end of an affirmative sentence. Examples :

I am younger than you ;  
*Je suis plus jeune que vous, — not, davantage jeune.*

You have no bread, will you have some more ?  
*Vous n'avez pas de pain, en voulez-vous davantage? — not, en voulez-vous plus.*

When the word *more* is at the end of a negative sentence, it is often indifferently expressed by *plus*, or by *pas davantage*. Example :

I will not eat any more ;  
*Je ne mangerai plus — or, je ne mangerai pas davantage.*

#### 16. POUR, — PENDANT, — *For*

The word *for* is expressed in French by *pendant*, when it is followed by a word which denotes a certain duration of time, and when it could be expressed by *during*. It is expressed by *pour* in other circumstances. Example :

I study for two hours every day — *or*, during two hours.  
*J'étudie pendant deux heures tous les jours* — not *pour deux heures*.

I lend it you for two hours ;

*Je vous le prête pour deux heures* — not *pendant deux heures*.

17. SUR, — DESSUS, — *Upon*.

18. SOUS, — DESSOUS, — *Under*.

When the words *upon* and *under* are followed by a noun, they are prepositions, and expressed, *upon* by *sur*, and *under* by *sous*. Examples :

Your book is *upon* the table ; *Votre livre est sur la table*.

Your shoes are *under* the bed ; *Vos souliers sont sous le lit*.

When the words *upon* and *under* are not followed by a noun, they are adverbs, and expressed, *upon* by *dessus*, and *under* by *dessous*. Examples :

You thought the dog *under* the bed, and he was *upon* it ;

*Vous croyiez le chien sous le lit, et il était dessus*.

Your handkerchief is not *upon* the chair, but it is *under* it ;

*Votre mouchoir n'est pas sur la chaise, mais dessous*.

#### 19. EN CAMPAGNE, — À LA CAMPAGNE.

We make use of *en campagne*, only when we speak of the army, or the motion of troops : as,

*L'armée se mettra bientôt en campagne*.

We must make use of *à la campagne*, when we speak of going or living in the country. Example :

*Venez nous voir à la campagne*.

#### *Explanation of the Marks and Abbreviations made use of in the following Series of Verbs.*

- 1, 2,) — mark the two regular conjugations : all the verbs preceded by one of these figures are regular. Those preceded by number 1, are conjugated after

*parler*, page 76; those preceded by number 2, are conjugated after *agir*, page 79.

(*ir.*) — denotes an irregular verb, which is conjugated in the grammar, 80, and following pages.

(*Se* or *s'*) — denotes that the verb is reflected in French, and must be conjugated with two pronouns: thus, *je me* is used in the first person singular; *tu te* in the second; *il se* in the third; *nous nous* in the first person plural; *vous vous* in the second; and *ils se* in the third, as the verb *se lever*; see page 108.

(\*) — denotes a neutral verb conjugated with the auxiliary verb *être* in its compound tenses.

(*ge. da. ac.*) — denote the cases which the verb most commonly governs in French; *ge.* denotes the genitive; *da.* the dative; and *ac.* the accusative.\*

(*de, à, pour*) — are the French prepositions which are required before the next verb, when it is to be put in the infinitive. Those followed by (*o*) govern the infinitive without prepositions.

(*Subj.*) — denotes that the next verb must always be put in the subjunctive in French, when the infinitive is not required.

N. B. The following series of verbs points out, 1. what verbs are regular and what irregular; 2. the case they govern; 3. what preposition they require before the infinitive; and 4. those which govern the subjunctive: thus, by this useful vocabulary, four great difficulties of the French language will be removed.

\* When two cases are placed after a verb, they denote that the verb may govern two substantives at once; for instance, one in the accusative, the other in the genitive or dative; but if the two cases be separated by the conjunction *or*, it denotes that the same substantive may be put in one of the two cases, almost indifferently.

AN  
ALPHABETICAL SERIES  
OF  
FRENCH VERBS,  
REGULAR AND IRREGULAR.

---

ALL regular Verbs are conjugated according to one of the two following, which are themselves conjugated at full length in the page mentioned after each verb.

1. Parler, ..... to *speak*, see page 76.
2. Agir, ..... to *act*, ..... 78.

The following list contains above 1500 regular verbs, and all the irregular ones, which are, comparatively, a small number ; as four-fifths, at least, of the French verbs fall under the first conjugation in *er*.

A

Conjugations.	Cases.		Infinitive.
1 Abaisser,	ac.	to bring down.	
1 s'abaisser,	da.	to stoop, —	à.
1 abandonner,	ac. da.	to abandon.	
<i>ir</i> abattre,	ac.	to pull down.	
1 abdiquer,	ac.	to abdicate.	
1 abhorrer,	ac.	to abhor, —	de.
1 abîmer,	ac.	to destroy entirely.	
1 abjurer,	ac.	to abjure.	
2 abolir,	ac.	to abolish.	
1 abonder en,		to abound with.	
1 s'abonner,	da.	to compound, —	pour.

N. B. When the verbs are taken in a different sense, they govern different *cases* and *prepositions* : as they could not have been all inserted without confusion, those only have been mentioned which they govern most commonly.



2	abonnir,	ac.		<i>to better.</i>		
1	aborder,	ac.		<i>to come up with.</i>		
		ge.		<i>to go near.</i>		
		da.		<i>to land.</i>		
1	s'aboucher avec,			<i>to confer with,</i>	—	po
2	aboutir,	da.		<i>to end,</i>	—	—
1	aboyer,			<i>to bark.</i>		
1	abréger,	ac.		<i>to abridge.</i>		
1	abreuver,	ac.	ge.	<i>to water.</i>		
1	abroger,	ac.		<i>to abrogate</i>		
2	abrutir,	ac.		<i>to stupefy.</i>		
1	s'absenter,	ge.		<i>to absent one's self.</i>		
1	absorber,	ac.		<i>to absorb.</i>		
ir.	absoudre,	ac.	ge.	<i>to absolve,</i>	—	
ir.	s'abstenir,	ge.		<i>to forbear,</i>	—	
ir.	abstraire,	ac.	ge.	<i>to abstract.</i>		
1	abuser,	ge.		<i>to abuse.</i>		
1	accabler,	ac.	ge.	<i>to overwhelm.</i>		
1	accaparer,	ac.		<i>to monopolize.</i>		
1	accéder,	da.		<i>to accede.</i>		
1	accélérer,	ac.		<i>to accelerate.</i>		
1	accentuer,	ac.		<i>to accent.</i>		
1	accepter,	ac.	ge.	<i>to accept,</i>	—	
1	accommoder,	ac.	da.	<i>to accommodate.</i>		
1	accompagner,	ac.	da.	<i>to accompany.</i>		
2	accomplir,	ac.		<i>to accomplish.</i>		
1	accorder,	ac.	da.	<i>to grant,</i>	—	
1	s'accorder,			<i>to agree,</i>	—	
1	accoster,	ac.		<i>to accost.</i>		
1	accoucher,	* ge.		<i>to be delivered.</i>		
		ac.		<i>to deliver a woman.</i>		
1	s'accouder sur,			<i>to lean upon.</i>		
2	accourcir	ac.		<i>to shorten.</i>		
ir.	accourir,	da.		<i>to run to.</i>		
1	accoutumer,	ac.	da.	<i>to accustom,</i>	—	
1	s'accoutumer,	da.		<i>to use one's self,</i>	—	
1	accréditer,	ac.		<i>to give credit.</i>		
1	accrocher,	ac.	da.	<i>to hang upon a hook.</i>		
ir.	accroître,	ac.		<i>to increase.</i>		
ir.	accueillir,	ac.		<i>to welcome.</i>		
1	accumuler,	ac.		<i>to heap up.</i>		

accuser,	ac.	ge.	<i>to accuse,</i>	—	de.
acérer,	ac.		<i>to steel.</i>		
s'acharner,		da.	<i>to be eager at,</i>	—	à.
s'acheminer vers,			<i>to set forward.</i>		
acheter,	ac.	ge.	<i>to buy.</i>		
achever,	ac.		<i>to finish,</i>	—	de.
acquérir,	ac.		<i>to acquire.</i>		
acquiescer,		da.	<i>to yield.</i>		
s'acquitter,		ge.	<i>to discharge.</i>		
adapter,	ac.	da.	<i>to adapt.</i>		
additionner,	ac.		<i>to make an addition.</i>		
adhérer,		da.	<i>to adhere to.</i>		
adjoindre,	ac.	da.	<i>to associate.</i>		
adjuger,	ac.	da.	<i>to adjudge.</i>		
admettre,	ac.	da.	<i>to admit,</i>	—	à.
administrer,	ac.	da.	<i>to administer.</i>		
admirer,	ac.		<i>to admire,</i>	— (subj.)	de.
s'adonner,		da.	<i>to apply one's self to,</i>		à.
adopter,	ac.		<i>to adopt.</i>		
adorer,	ac.		<i>to adore.</i>		
adoucir,	ac.		<i>to soften.</i>		
adresser,	ac.	da.	<i>to direct.</i>		
s'adresser,		da.	<i>to apply to,</i>	—	pour
affaiblir	ac.		<i>to weaken.</i>		
affamer,	ac.		<i>to starve.</i>		
affecter,	{ ac.	da.	<i>to appropriate.</i>		
	ac.		<i>to affect,</i>	—	de.
affectionner,	ac.		<i>to love.</i>		
affirmer,	ac.		<i>to let.</i>		
affermir,	ac.		<i>to strengthen.</i>		
afficher,	ac.	da.	<i>to post up.</i>		
affiler,	ac.		<i>to sharpen.</i>		
affilier,	ac.	da.	<i>to adopt.</i>		
affirmer,	ac.	da.	<i>to assert,</i>	—	o.
affliger,	ac.		<i>to afflict,</i>	—	de.
affluer,			<i>to abound.</i>		
affranchir,	ac.	ge.	<i>to set free.</i>		
affronter,	ac.		<i>to encounter.</i>		
affubler,	ac.	ge.	<i>to muffle up.</i>		
s'agenouiller,			<i>to kneel down.</i>		
aggraver,	ac.		<i>to aggravate.</i>		

1	agioter,			<i>to stock-job.</i>	
2	agir,			<i>to act.</i>	
1	agiter,	ac.		<i>to agitate.</i>	
2	agrandir,	ac.		<i>to enlarge.</i>	
1	agréer,	ac.	ge.	<i>to accept,</i>	— {su
1	agréger,	ac.	da.	<i>to aggregate.</i>	
2	s'aguerrir,		da.	<i>to inure one's self,</i>	—
1	aider,	ac. or da.		<i>to help,</i>	—
2	aigrir,	ac.		<i>to exasperate.</i>	
1	aiguilloner	ac.		<i>to stir up.</i>	
1	aiguiser,	ac.		<i>to sharpen.</i>	
1	aimer,	ac.		<i>to love,</i>	—
1	aimer mieux,	ac.		<i>to like better,</i>	—
1	ajourner,	ac.		<i>to summon,</i>	—
1	ajouter,	ac.	da.	<i>to add.</i>	
1	ajuster,	ac.	da.	<i>to fit, to adjust.</i>	
1	alarmer,	ac.		<i>to alarm.</i>	
1	aliéner,	ac.		<i>to alienate.</i>	
1	aligner,	ac.		<i>to lay out straight.</i>	
1	allaiter,	ac.		<i>to suckle.</i>	
1	alléger,	ac.		<i>to alleviate.</i>	
1	alléguer,	ac.	da.	<i>to allege.</i>	
ir.	aller *,	ac.	da.	<i>to go.</i>	—
1	allier,	ac.	da.	<i>to ally.</i>	
1	s'allier,		da.	<i>to make an alliance.</i>	
1	allumer,	ac.	da.	<i>to light.</i>	
1	allonger,	ac.		<i>to lengthen.</i>	
1	altérer,	ac.		<i>to adulterate.</i>	
1	amasser,	ac.	da.	<i>to heap up,</i>	—
1	ambitionner,	ac.		<i>to pursue ambitiously,</i>	
1	améliorer,	ac.		<i>to improve.</i>	
1	s'amender,			<i>to grow better.</i>	
1	amener,	ac.	da.	<i>to bring,</i>	—
1	amouter,	ac.		<i>to raise a mob.</i>	
2	amollir,	ac.		<i>to mollify.</i>	
1	amonceler,	ac.		<i>to heap up.</i>	
1	amorcer,	ac.		<i>to allure.</i>	
2	amortir,	ac.		<i>to quench.</i>	
1	amplifier,	ac.		<i>to amplify.</i>	
1	s'amuser,	ac.	da.	<i>to amuse one's self,</i>	
2	anéantir,	ac.		<i>to annihilate.</i>	

animer,	ac. da.	<i>to animate,</i>	—	à.
annoncer,	ac. da.	<i>to announce,</i>	—	o.
annuler,	ac.	<i>to abrogate.</i>		
anoblir,	ac.	<i>to ennoble.</i>		
anticiper,	ac.	<i>to anticipate.</i>		
apercevoir,	ac.	<i>to perceive,</i>	—	o.
s'apercevoir,	ge.	<i>to perceive.</i>		
apetisser,		<i>to diminish.</i>		
s'apetisser,		<i>to grow short.</i>		
aplanir,	ac.	<i>to level.</i>		
aplatir,	ac.	<i>to make flat.</i>		
appaier,	ac.	<i>to appease.</i>		
appareiller,	ac.	<i>to match.</i>		
appartenir,	da.	<i>to belong,</i>	—	de.
s'appauvrir,		<i>to grow poor,</i>	—	à.
appeler,	ac.	<i>to call,</i>	—	à.
appendre,	ac. da.	<i>to append.</i>		
appesantir,	ac.	<i>to make heavy.</i>		
applaudir,	ac. or da.	<i>to applaud,</i>	—	de.
appliquer,	ac. da.	<i>to apply.</i>		
s'appliquer,	da.	<i>to apply one's self,</i>		à.
apporter,	ac. da.	<i>to bring.</i>		
apposer,	ac. da.	<i>to set.</i>		
apprécier,	ac. da.	<i>to appraise.</i>		
appréhender,	ac. ge.	<i>to fear,</i>	— (subj.)	de.
apprendre,	ac. da.	<i>to learn,</i>	—	à.
apprêter,	ac. da.	<i>to prepare,</i>	—	à.
apprivoiser,	ac.	<i>to tame.</i>		
approcher,	ac. ge.	<i>to approach.</i>		
approfondir,	ac.	<i>to examine into.</i>		
appropriier,	ac. da.	<i>to appropriate.</i>		
s'appropriier,	ac.	<i>to usurp.</i>		
approuver,	ac.	<i>to approve,</i>	—	de.
appuyer,	ac.	<i>to prop.</i>		
s'appuyer sur,		<i>to lean upon.</i>		
arborer,	ac.	<i>to set up.</i>		
argumenter,	ge. da.	<i>to infer.</i>		
armer,	ac. ge.	<i>to arm.</i>		
arpenter,	ac.	<i>to survey land.</i>		
arracher,	ac. ge. or da.	<i>to pull out.</i>		
arranger,	ac.	<i>to set in order.</i>		

1	arrêter,	ac.	to stop, to determine,	(
1	s'arrêter,	da.	to stay,	—
1	arriver*,	da.	to come to, to happen,	(
1	s'arroger,	ac.	to claim to one's self,	(
2	arrondir,	ac.	to make round.	
1	arroser,	ac.	to water.	
1	articuler,	ac.	to articulate.	
1	asperger,	ac. ge.	to besprinkle.	
1	aspirer,	da.	to aim at,	—
1	assaisonner,	ac. ge.	to season.	
1	assassiner,	ac.	to assassinate.	
1	assembler,	ac. da.	to bring together.	
ir.	asseoir,	ac.	to sit.	
1	assiéger,	ac.	to besiege.	
1	assigner,	ac. da.	to assign,	—
1	assimiler,	ac. da.	to assimilate.	
1	assister,	ac. ge.	to stand by.	
1	associer,	ac. da.	to associate.	
1	assommer,	ac. ge.	to knock down.	
2	assortir,	ac. da.	to match.	
2	assoupir,	ac.	to make drowsy.	
2	s'assoupir,	da.	to fall asleep.	
2	assouvir,	ac. ge.	to glut.	
2	assujettir,	ac. da.	to subdue,	—
1	assurer,	ac. da.	to affirm,	—
ir.	astreindre,	ac. da.	to subject,	—
1	s'attabler,		to sit down at table.	
1	attacher,	ac. da.	to fasten.	
1	s'attacher,	da.	to stick.	—
1	attaquer,	ac. ge.	to attack.	
1	s'attaquer,	da.	to stand up against.	
ir.	atteindre,	ac. or da.	to reach.	
1	atteler,	ac. da.	to put horses to a coach.	
ir.	attendre,	ac.	to wait,	—
ir.	s'attendre,	da.	to hope for,	—
2	attendrir,	ac.	to soften.	
2	s'attendrir,		to be moved.	
1	attenter,	da.	to attempt.	
1	atténuer,	ac.	to attenuate.	
1	atterrorer,	ac.	to strike down.	
1	attester,	ac. da.	to attest,	—

2 attiédir,	ac.	<i>to cool down.</i>		
1 attirer,	ac. da.	<i>to attract.</i>		
1 s'attirer,	ac.	<i>to draw upon one's self.</i>		
1 attiser,	ac.	<i>to stir up.</i>		
1 attirer,	ac.	<i>to allure.</i>		
1 attraper,	ac.	<i>to catch.</i>		
1 attribuer,	ac. da.	<i>to ascribe,</i>	—	de.
1 s'attrister,	ge.	<i>to be sorrowful,</i>		de.
1 attrouper,	ac.	<i>to assemble.</i>		
1 s'attrouper,	da.	<i>to troop.</i>		
1 augmenter,	ac. ge.	<i>to increase.</i>		
1 augurer,	ac. ge.	<i>to augur.</i>		
1 auner,	ac.	<i>to measure by the ell.</i>		
1 autoriser,	ac. da.	<i>to authorise,</i>	—	à.
1 avaler,	ac.	<i>to swallow.</i>		
1 avancer,	ac. da.	<i>to advance.</i>		
1 s'avancer,		<i>to go so far as.</i>		
2 avertir,	ac. ge.	<i>to warn,</i>	—	de.
2 aveugler,	ac.	<i>to blind.</i>		
2 avilir,	ac.	<i>to disgrace.</i>		
1 s'aviser,	ge.	<i>to bethink one's self,</i>		de.
1 avoir,	ac.	<i>to have,</i>	—	à.
1 avouer,	ac. da.	<i>to confess,</i>	—	o.

## B.

Babiller,		<i>to prattle.</i>		
badiner,		<i>to joke.</i>		
se baigner,		<i>to bathe.</i>		
bâiller,		<i>to yawn.</i>		
baiser,	ac.	<i>to kiss.</i>		
baisser,	ac.	<i>to let down.</i>		
se baisser,		<i>to stoop.</i>		
balancer,	ac.	<i>to balance.</i>		
balayer,	ac.	<i>to sweep.</i>		
balotter,	ac.	<i>to toss.</i>		
bander,	ac.	<i>to bend.</i>		
2 bannir,	ac. ge.	<i>to banish.</i>		
baptiser,	ac.	<i>to baptise.</i>		
barbouiller,	ac. ge.	<i>to daub.</i>		
barrer,	ac. da.	<i>to bar.</i>		

1	barricader,	ac.	<i>to barricade.</i>	
1	bassiner,	ac.	<i>to warm a bed.</i>	
1	bâter,	ac.	<i>to saddle.</i>	
2	bâtir,	ac.	<i>to build.</i>	
ir.	battre,	ac.	<i>to beat.</i>	
1	bégayer,		<i>to stammer.</i>	
1	bêler,		<i>to bleat.</i>	
2	bénir,	ac.	<i>to bless.</i>	
1	bercer,	ac. ge.	<i>to lull to sleep.</i>	
1	biaiser,		<i>to use evasions.</i>	
1	biffer,	ac. ge.	<i>to blot out.</i>	
1	blâmer,	ac. ge.	<i>to blame,</i>	— d
2	blanchir,	ac.	<i>to whiten.</i>	
1	blasphémer,	ac.	<i>to blaspheme.</i>	
1	blessé,	ac.	<i>to wound.</i>	
1	bloquer,	ac.	<i>to block up.</i>	
ir.	boire,	ac.	<i>to drink.</i>	
1	boiser,	ac.	<i>to wainscot.</i>	
1	bombarder,	ac.	<i>to bombard.</i>	
2	bondir,		<i>to jump about.</i>	
1	border,	ac. ge.	<i>to border.</i>	
1	borner,	ac. da.	<i>to limit,</i>	—
1	boucher,	ac.	<i>to stop up.</i>	
1	bouder,		<i>to pout.</i>	
ir.	bouillir,		<i>to boil.</i>	
1	boulangier,	ac.	<i>to bake.</i>	
1	bouleverser,	ac.	<i>to overthrow.</i>	
1	bourdonner,	ac. da.	<i>to buzz.</i>	
1	boutonner,	ac.	<i>to button.</i>	
1	branler,	ac.	<i>to shake.</i>	
1	brasser,	ac.	<i>to brew.</i>	
1	braver,	ac.	<i>to affront.</i>	
1	brider,	ac.	<i>to bridle.</i>	
1	briguer,	ac.	<i>to sue for an office.</i>	
1	briller,	da.	<i>to shine.</i>	
1	briser,	ac.	<i>to break.</i>	
1	broder,	ac.	<i>to embroider.</i>	
1	broncher,		<i>to stumble.</i>	
1	brosser,	ac.	<i>to brush.</i>	
1	brouiller,	ac.	<i>to confound.</i>	
1	broyer,	ac.	<i>to grind.</i>	

brûler,	ac.	<i>to burn.</i>
brunir,	ac.	<i>to burnish.</i>
brusquer,	ac.	<i>to blunt.</i>
butiner,	ac.	<i>to plunder.</i>

## C.

Cabaler,		<i>to cabal.</i>		
cacher,	ac.	da.	<i>to hide.</i>	
cacheter,	ac.		<i>to seal up.</i>	
calciner,	ac.		<i>to calcinate.</i>	
calculer,	ac.		<i>to calculate.</i>	
calmer,	ac.		<i>to calm.</i>	
calomnier,	ac.		<i>to slander.</i>	
camper,	ac.		<i>to encamp.</i>	
canoner,	ac.		<i>to storm.</i>	
se cantonner,			<i>to canton.</i>	
capituler,			<i>to capitulate.</i>	
caractériser,	ac.		<i>to characterise.</i>	
caresser,	ac.		<i>to caress.</i>	
carrer,	ac.		<i>to square.</i>	
casser,	ac.	da.	<i>to break.</i>	
catéchiser,	ac.		<i>to instruct.</i>	
causer,			<i>to prattle.</i>	
cautionner,	ac.		<i>to bail.</i>	
céder,	ac.	da.	<i>to yield.</i>	
célébrer,	ac.		<i>to celebrate.</i>	
céler,	ac.	da.	<i>to conceal.</i>	
censurer,	ac.	ge.	<i>to censure.</i>	
certifier,	ac.	da.	<i>to certify,</i>	— o.
cesser,	ac.		<i>to cease,</i>	— de.
chagriner,	ac.		<i>to vex,</i>	— de.
chanceler,			<i>to totter.</i>	
changer,	ac.		<i>to change.</i>	
chanter,	ac.		<i>to sing.</i>	
charger,	ac.	ge.	<i>to charge,</i>	— de.
charmer,	ac.		<i>to charm,</i>	— de.
chasser,	ac.	ge.	<i>to expel.</i>	
chauffer,	ac.		<i>to warm.</i>	
cheminer,			<i>to walk.</i>	
chercher,	ac.		<i>to look for,</i>	— à.



1	chiffrer,	ac.	<i>to number.</i>		
2	choisir,	ac.	<i>to choose,</i>	—	de
1	choquer,	ac.	<i>to offend,</i>	—	de
1	cicatriser,	ac.	<i>to cicatrise.</i>		
1	cimenter,	ac.	<i>to cement.</i>		
ir.	circoncrire,	ac.	<i>to circumscribe.</i>		
1	circonstancier,	ac.	<i>to describe minutely.</i>		
1	circuler,	ac.	<i>to circulate.</i>		
1	citer,	ac.	<i>to summon,</i>	—	
1	civiliser,	ac.	<i>to civilize.</i>		
1	clarifier,	ac.	<i>to clarify.</i>		
1	coaguler,	ac.	<i>to coagulate.</i>		
1	coller,	ac. da.	<i>to glue.</i>		
1	colorer,	ac.	<i>to colour.</i>		
ir.	combattre,	ac.	<i>to fight.</i>		
1	combler,	ac. ge.	<i>to heap up.</i>		
1	commander,	ac. da.	<i>to command,</i>	(subj.) d	
1	commencer,	ac.	<i>to begin,</i>	—	
1	commenter,	ac.	<i>to comment.</i>		
1	commercer,		<i>to trade.</i>		
ir.	commettre,	ac. da.	<i>to commit,</i>	—	
1	communiquer,	ac. da.	<i>to communicate.</i>		
1	comparer,	ac. da.	<i>to compare.</i>		
2	compâtir,	da.	<i>to compassionate.</i>		
1	compenser,	ac.	<i>to compensate.</i>		
ir.	se complaire,	da.	<i>to please,</i>	—	
1	complimenter,	ac. ge.	<i>to compliment.</i>		
1	composer,	ac.	<i>to compose.</i>		
ir.	comprendre,	ac. da.	<i>to understand.</i>		
1	comprimer,	ac.	<i>to squeeze.</i>		
ir.	se compromettre,		<i>to expose one's self.</i>		
1	compter,	ac.	<i>to count,</i>	—	
1	concentrer,	ac.	<i>to concentrate.</i>		
1	concerner,	ac.	<i>to concern.</i>		
ir.	concevoir,	ac.	<i>to conceive.</i>		
1	concilier,	ac.	<i>to conciliate.</i>		
ir.	conclure,	ac.	<i>to conclude.</i>		
ir.	concourir,	da.	<i>to concur,</i>	—	
1	condamner,	ac. da.	<i>to condemn,</i>	—	
ir.	condescendre,	da.	<i>to condescend,</i>	—	
ir.	conduire,	ac. da.	<i>to conduct,</i>	—	

conférer,	ac.	da.	<i>to confer.</i>		
confesser,	ac.	da.	<i>to confess,</i>	—	o.
confier,	ac.	da.	<i>to trust.</i>		
confiner,	ac.		<i>to confine.</i>		
confire,	ac.		<i>to pickle.</i>		
confirmer,	ac.	da.	<i>to confirm</i>		
confisquer,	ac.		<i>to confiscate.</i>		
confondre,	ac.		<i>to confound.</i>		
conformer,	ac.	da.	<i>to conform.</i>		
comforter,	ac.		<i>to comfort.</i>		
confronter,	ac.		<i>to compare.</i>		
congédiér,	ac.	ge.	<i>to dismiss.</i>		
conjecturer,		ge.	<i>to guess.</i>		
conjoindre,	ac.		<i>to conjoin.</i>		
conjuguer,	ac.		<i>to conjugate.</i>		
conjurér,	ac.	ge.	<i>to intreat,</i>	(subj.)	de.
conniver,		da.	<i>to connive.</i>		
connaître,	ac.		<i>to know,</i>	—	o.
conquérir,	ac.		<i>to conquer.</i>		
consacrer,	ac.	da.	<i>to consecrate.</i>		
conseiller,	ac.	da.	<i>to advise,</i>	(subj.)	de.
consentir,		da.	<i>to consent,</i>	(subj.)	à.
conserver,	ac.		<i>to preserve.</i>		
considérer,	ac.		<i>to consider.</i>		
consigner,	ac.	da.	<i>to consign,</i>	—	de.
consister,			<i>to consist,</i>	—	à.
consoler,	ac.	ge.	<i>to comfort,</i>	—	de.
consolider,	ac.		<i>to consolidate.</i>		
consommer,	ac.		<i>to consummate.</i>		
conspirer,	ac.		<i>to conspire,</i>	—	de.
consterner,	ac.		<i>to dispirit.</i>		
constiper,	ac.		<i>to make costive.</i>		
constituer,	ac.		<i>to appoint.</i>		
construire,	ac.		<i>to build.</i>		
consulter,	ac.		<i>to consult.</i>		
consumer,	ac.		<i>to consume.</i>		
contempler,	ac.		<i>to contemplate.</i>		
contenir,	ac.		<i>to comprehend.</i>		
contenter,	ac.		<i>to satisfy.</i>		
conter,	ac.	da.	<i>to relate.</i>		
contester,	ac.	da.	<i>to contest,</i>	—	(subj.)

1	continuer,	ac.	<i>to go on,</i>	—	de or à.
1	contracter,	ac.	<i>to contract.</i>		
ir.	contraindre,	ac.	<i>to compel,</i>	—	de or à.
1	contrarier,	ac.	<i>to contradict.</i>		
1	contre-balancer,	ac.	<i>to counterpoise.</i>		
ir.	contredire,	ac.	<i>to contradict.</i>		
ir.	contrefaire,	ac.	<i>to counterfeit.</i>		
1	contre-mander,	ac.	<i>to countermand.</i>		
1	contre-miner,	ac.	<i>to countermine.</i>		
1	contre-signer,	ac.	<i>to countersign.</i>		
ir.	contrevenir,	da.	<i>to infringe.</i>		
1	contribuer,	da.	<i>to contribute,</i>	—	à.
1	contrôler,	ac.	<i>to control.</i>		
ir.	convaincre,	ac.	ge. <i>to convince,</i>	—	de.
ir.	convenir *,	ge.	<i>to agree,</i>	—	de.
1	converser avec,		<i>to converse.</i>		
2	convertir,	ac.	<i>to convert.</i>		
1	coopérer,	da.	<i>to co-operate.</i>		
1	copier,	ac.	<i>to transcribe.</i>		
1	corder,	ac.	<i>to twist.</i>		
ir.	correspondre,	da.	<i>to correspond.</i>		
1	corriger,	ac.	<i>to correct.</i>		
1	corroborer,	ac.	<i>to strengthen.</i>		
ir.	corrompre,	ac.	<i>to corrupt.</i>		
1	cotoyer,	ac.	<i>to coast along.</i>		
1	coucher,	ac.	<i>to put to bed.</i>		
1	se coucher,		<i>to go to bed.</i>		
ir.	coudre,	ac.	<i>to sew.</i>		
1	couler,		<i>to flow.</i>		
1	couper,	ac. da.	<i>to cut.</i>		
1	courber,	ac.	<i>to bend.</i>		
ir.	courir,	da.	<i>to run.</i>		
1	couronner,	ac. ge.	<i>to crown.</i>		
1	courtiser,	ac.	<i>to court.</i>		
1	coûter,	da.	<i>to cost.</i>		
1	couver,	ac.	<i>to brood.</i>		
ir.	couvrir,	ac. ge.	<i>to cover.</i>		
1	cracher,	ac. da.	<i>to spit.</i>		
ir.	craindre,	ac. ge.	<i>to fear,</i>	—	(subj.) de.
1	crayonner,	ac.	<i>to draw.</i>		
1	créer,	ac.	<i>to create.</i>		

l creuser,	ac.	<i>to hollow out.</i>	
l crever,	ge.	<i>to burst.</i>	
l crier,	da.	<i>to cry.</i>	
l critiquer,	ac.	<i>to cavil.</i>	
. croire,	ac.	<i>to believe,</i>	— o.
l croiser,	ac.	<i>to cross.</i>	
. croître,		<i>to increase.</i>	
l croquer,	ac.	<i>to scrunch.</i>	
l crotter,	ac.	<i>to dirt.</i>	
2 croupir,		<i>to stagnate.</i>	
l crucifier,	ac.	<i>to crucify.</i>	
. cueillir,	ac.	<i>to gather.</i>	
. cuire,	ac.	<i>to cook.</i>	
l cultiver,	ac.	<i>to cultivate.</i>	
l curer,	ac.	<i>to cleanse.</i>	

## D

l Daigner,		<i>to deign,</i>	— o.
l damner,	ac.	<i>to damn.</i>	
l danser,	ac.	<i>to dance.</i>	
l débander,	ac.	<i>to untie.</i>	
l débarquer,	ac.	<i>to disembark.</i>	
l débarrasser,	ac. ge.	<i>to disengage.</i>	
l débarrer,	ac.	<i>to unbar.</i>	
. débattre,	ac.	<i>to debate.</i>	
. se débattre,		<i>to struggle.</i>	
l débaucher,	ac.	<i>to debauch.</i>	
l débiter,	ac.	<i>to set forth.</i>	
l déborder,	ac.	<i>to unborder.</i>	
l se déborder,		<i>to overflow.</i>	
l débotter,	ac.	<i>to pull off one's boots.</i>	
l déboucher,	ac.	<i>to clear.</i>	
l déboursier,	ac.	<i>to disburse.</i>	
l déboutonner,	ac.	<i>to unbutton.</i>	
l débrider,	ac.	<i>to unbridle.</i>	
l débrouiller,	ac.	<i>to clear.</i>	
l débusquer,	ac. ge.	<i>to drive out.</i>	
l décacheter,	ac.	<i>to unseal.</i>	
l décamper,	ge.	<i>to run away.</i>	
l décapiter,	ac.	<i>to behead.</i>	

1	décéder,			<i>to die.</i>	
1	déceler,	ac.		<i>to detect.</i>	
1	décerner,	ac.	da.	<i>to decree.</i>	
ir.	décevoir,	ac.		<i>to deceive.</i>	
1	déchaîner,	ac.		<i>to let loose.</i>	
1	se déchaîner contre,			<i>to inveigh against.</i>	
1	décharger,	ac.	ge.	<i>to unload.</i>	
1	décharner,	ac.		<i>to pull off the flesh.</i>	
1	déchausser,	ac.		<i>to pull the stockings off</i>	
1	déchiffrer,	ac.		<i>to decipher.</i>	
1	déchiqueter,	ac.		<i>to snip.</i>	
1	déchirer,	ac.		<i>to tear off.</i>	
ir.	déchoir,		ge.	<i>to decay.</i>	
1	décider,	ac.		<i>to decide,</i>	— de or
1	décimer,	ac.		<i>to decimate.</i>	
1	déclamer contre,			<i>to inveigh against.</i>	
1	déclarer,	ac.	da.	<i>to declare,</i>	—
1	décliner,	} ac.		<i>to decay.</i>	
				<i>to decline.</i>	
1	décoiffer,	ac.		<i>to put off the head-dress.</i>	
1	décoller,	ac.		<i>to unglue.</i>	
1	décolorer,	ac.		<i>to discolour.</i>	
1	décomposer,	ac.		<i>to dissolve.</i>	
1	décompter,	ac.		<i>to discount.</i>	
1	déconcerter,	ac.		<i>to put out,</i>	—
1	décorder,	ac.		<i>to untwist.</i>	
1	décorer,	ac.	ge.	<i>to adorn.</i>	
ir.	découdre,	ac.		<i>to unsew.</i>	
1	découler,		ge.	<i>to flow.</i>	
1	découper,	ac.		<i>to cut.</i>	
1	découpler,	ac.		<i>to uncouple.</i>	
1	décourager,	ac.		<i>to discourage,</i>	—
ir.	découvrir,	ac.	da.	<i>to discover.</i>	
1	décréditer,	ac.		<i>to discredit.</i>	
1	décréter,	ac.		<i>to decree,</i>	—
1	décrier,	ac.		<i>to discredit.</i>	
ir.	décrire,	ac.		<i>to describe.</i>	
ir.	décroître,	ac.		<i>to decrease.</i>	
1	décrotter,	ac.		<i>to rub off the dirt.</i>	
1	dédaigner,	ac.		<i>to despise,</i>	—
1	dédier,	ac.	da.	<i>to dedicate.</i>	

·	dédire,	ac.	ge.	<i>to unsay.</i>		
1	dédommager,	ac.	ge.	<i>to indemnify,</i>	—	de.
·	déduire,	ac.	ge.	<i>to subtract.</i>		
·	défaire,	ac.		<i>to undo.</i>		
·	défendre,	ac.	da.	<i>to forbid,</i>	—	(subj.) de.
1	déférer,	ac.	da.	<i>to yield.</i>		
1	défier,	ac.		<i>to challenge,</i>	—	de.
1	se défier,		ge.	<i>to distrust</i>		
1	défigurer,	ac.		<i>to disform.</i>		
1	défiler,	ac.		<i>to unstring.</i>		
2	définir,	ac.		<i>to define.</i>		
2	déflourir,	ac.		<i>to let fall its blossoms.</i>		
1	défoncer,	ac.		<i>to stave a cask.</i>		
1	déformer,	ac.		<i>to put out of form.</i>		
1	défrayer,	ac.	ge.	<i>to defray.</i>		
1	défricher,	ac.		<i>to clear.</i>		
1	défriser,	ac.		<i>to uncurl.</i>		
1	dégager,	ac.	ge.	<i>to disengage.</i>		
1	dégainer,	ac.		<i>to unsheath a sword.</i>		
2	dégarnir,	ac.		<i>to unfurnish.</i>		
1	dégeler,			<i>to thaw.</i>		
1	dégénérer,			<i>to degenerate.</i>		
2	dégourdir,	ac.		<i>to revive.</i>		
1	dégoûter,	ac.	ge.	<i>to disgust,</i>	—	de.
1	se dégoûter,		ge.	<i>to be weary,</i>	—	de.
1	dégoutter,			<i>to trickle down.</i>		
1	dégrader,	ac.		<i>to degrade.</i>		
1	dégraisser,	ac.		<i>to take away the fat.</i>		
1	déguiser,	ac.		<i>to dissemble.</i>		
1	déjeuner,			<i>to breakfast.</i>		
·	déjoindre,	ac.		<i>to disjoin.</i>		
1	délacer,	ac.		<i>to unlace.</i>		
1	délaisser,	ac.		<i>to abandon.</i>		
1	délasser,	ac.		<i>to rest.</i>		
1	délayer,	ac.		<i>to dilute.</i>		
1	déléguer,	ac.		<i>to delegate.</i>		
1	délibérer sur,			<i>to deliberate.</i>		
1	déliier,	ac.	ge.	<i>to untie.</i>		
1	délivrer,	ac.	ge.	<i>to rescue.</i>		
1	déloger,	ac.		<i>to remove.</i>		
1	demander,	ac.	da.	<i>to ask for,</i>	(subj.) à or de.	

1	aémanger,			<i>to itch.</i>	
1	démâter,	ac.		<i>to unmast</i>	
1	démêler,	ac.		<i>to disentangle.</i>	
ir.	démentir,	ac.		<i>to give the lie</i>	
ir.	se démettre,	ge.		<i>to resign.</i>	
1	démeubler,	ac.		<i>to unfurnish.</i>	
1	demeurer,			<i>to dwell, or to stay.</i>	
2	démolir,	ac.		<i>to demolish.</i>	
1	démonter,	ac.		<i>to dismount.</i>	
1	démontrer,	ac.	da.	<i>to demonstrate.</i>	
1	dénier,	ac.		<i>to deny.</i>	
1	dénommer,	ac.		<i>to name.</i>	
1	dénoncer,	ac.	da.	<i>to denounce.</i>	
1	dénoter,	ac.		<i>to denote.</i>	
1	dénouer,	ac.		<i>to untie.</i>	
1	dépaqueter,	ac.		<i>to undo a bundle.</i>	
ir.	départir,			<i>to distribute.</i>	
ir.	se départir,			<i>to stray.</i>	
1	dépaver,	ac.		<i>to unpave.</i>	
1	dépêcher,	ac.	da.	<i>to despatch.</i>	
1	se dépêcher,			<i>to make haste,</i>	— de
ir.	dépeindre,	ac.	da.	<i>to describe.</i>	
ir.	dépendre,		ge.	<i>to depend,</i>	— de
1	dépenser,	ac.		<i>to spend,</i>	— à
1	dépeupler,	ac.	ge.	<i>to depopulate.</i>	
1	déplacer,	ac.		<i>to displace.</i>	
ir.	déplaître,		da.	<i>to displease,</i>	(subj.) de
1	déplanter,	ac.		<i>to transplant.</i>	
1	déplier,	ac.		<i>to unfold.</i>	
1	déplisser,	ac.		<i>to unpleat.</i>	
1	déplorer,	ac.		<i>to lament.</i>	
1	déplumer,	ac.		<i>to take out the feathers.</i>	
2	dépolir,	ac.		<i>to unpolish.</i>	
1	déposer,	ac.		<i>to depose,</i>	— (
1	déposséder,	ac.	ge.	<i>to dispossess.</i>	
1	dépouiller,	ac.	ge.	<i>to strip.</i>	
1	dépraver,	ac.		<i>to deprave.</i>	
1	déprimer,	ac.		<i>to depress.</i>	
1	députer,	ac.	da	<i>to depute.</i>	
1	déraciner,	ac.		<i>to root out.</i>	
1	déraisonner,			<i>to talk nonsense.</i>	

1	déranger,	ac.	ge.	to disorder.		
1	dérégler,	ac.		to disorder.		
1	dériver,	ac.	ge.	to derive.		
1	dérober,	ac.	da.	to steal.		
1	déroger,		da.	to derogate.		
1	dérouiller,	ac.		to get out the rust.		
1	désabuser,	ac.	ge.	to undeceive.		
ir.	désapprendre,	ac.		to unlearn,	—	à.
1	désapprouver,	ac.		to disapprove,	—	(subj.)
1	désarmer,	ac.		to disarm.		
1	désavouer,	ac.		to disown,	—	(subj.) o.
ir.	descendre,	{ ac.		to take down.		
		{ *	da.	to go down,	—	o.
1	désennuyer,	ac.		to divert.		
1	désert,	ac. or	ge.	to desert.		
1	désespérer,	ac.		to despair,	—	(subj.) de.
1	déshabiller,	ac.		to undress.		
1	se déshabituer,		ge.	to break off one's custom,	de.	
1	déshonorer,	ac.		to dishonour.		
1	désigner,	ac.	da.	to appoint.		
1	désirer,	ac.	ge.	to long for,	(subj.) o. or	de.
1	se désister,		ge.	to give over.		
2	désobéir,		da.	to disobey.		
1	désobliger,	ac.		to displease.		
1	désoler,	ac.		to desolate,	—	de.
1	désorienter,	ac.		to put one out.		
1	désosser,	ac.		to unbone.		
2	désaisir,		ge.	to let a thing go.		
1	dessaler,	ac.		to unsalt.		
1	dessécher,	ac.		to dry up.		
1	desseller,	ac.		to unsaddle.		
ir.	desservir,	ac.		to clear up.		
1	dessiner,	ac.		to sketch.		
1	dessouder,	ac.		to unsolder.		
1	destiner,	ac.	da.	to design,	—	à.
2	désunir,	ac.		to disunite.		
1	détacher,	ac.	ge.	to untie.		
ir.	déteindre,	ac.		to discolour.		
ir.	détendre,	ac.		to unbend.		
1	déterminer,	ac.		to determine.	—	à.
1	se déterminer,		da.	to resolve upon,	—	à.



1	détester,	ac.		<i>to abhor</i>	
<i>ir.</i>	détordre,	ac.		<i>to untwist.</i>	
1	détourner,	ac.	ge.	<i>to divert,</i>	—
1	détremper,	ac.		<i>to dilute.</i>	
1	détromper,	ac.		<i>to undeceive.</i>	
1	détrôner	ac.		<i>to dethrone.</i>	
<i>ir.</i>	détruire,	ac.		<i>to destroy.</i>	
1	dévaliser,	ac.		<i>to strip.</i>	
1	devancer,	ac.		<i>to outrun.</i>	
1	développer,	ac.		<i>to unfold.</i>	
<i>ir.</i>	devenir*,	ac.		<i>to become.</i>	
1	déverrouiller,	ac.		<i>to unbolt.</i>	
1	dévider,	ac.		<i>to unravel.</i>	
1	deviner,	ac.		<i>to guess.</i>	
1	dévoiler,	ac.	da.	<i>to unveil.</i>	
<i>ir.</i>	devoir,	ac.	da.	<i>to owe,</i>	—
1	dévorer,	ac.	da.	<i>to devour.</i>	
1	dévouer,	ac.	da.	<i>to dedicate.</i>	
1	dicter,	ac.	da.	<i>to dictate.</i>	
1	diffamer,	ac.		<i>to defame.</i>	
1	différer,	ac.		<i>to differ,</i>	— d
1	digérer,	ac.		<i>to digest.</i>	
1	dilater,	ac.		<i>to dilate.</i>	
1	dimer,	ac.		<i>to tithe.</i>	
1	diminuer,	ac.		<i>to decrease.</i>	
1	dîner,			<i>to dine.</i>	
<i>ir.</i>	dire,	ac.	da.	<i>to say,</i>	— d
1	diriger,	ac.		<i>to direct.</i>	
1	discerner,	ac.		<i>to discern.</i>	
1	discipliner,	ac.		<i>to discipline.</i>	
1	discontinuer,	ac.		<i>to cease,</i>	—
<i>ir.</i>	disconvenir*,		ge.	<i>to disagree,</i>	(subj.) c
<i>ir.</i>	discourir,		ge.	<i>to discourse.</i>	
1	disculper,	ac.	ge.	<i>to justify,</i>	—
1	discuter,	ac.		<i>to discuss.</i>	
1	disgracier,	ac.		<i>to turn out of favour</i>	
<i>ir.</i>	disjoindre,	ac.		<i>to disjoin.</i>	
<i>ir.</i>	disparaître,		ge.	<i>to vanish away.</i>	
1	dispenser,	ac.	ge.	<i>to excuse,</i>	— d
1	disperser,	ac.		<i>to scatter.</i>	
1	disposer,	ac.	da.	<i>to set in order,</i>	—

1	disputer,			<i>to quarrel.</i>		
1	disséquer,	ac.		<i>to dissect.</i>		
1	dissimuler,	ac.		<i>to dissemble.</i>		
1	dissiper,	ac.		<i>to dissipate.</i>		
1	dissoudre,	ac.		<i>to dissolve.</i>		
1	dissuader,	ac.	ge.	<i>to dissuade,</i>	—	de.
1	distiller,	ac.		<i>to distil.</i>		
1	distinguer,	ac.	ge.	<i>to discern.</i>		
1	distraindre,	ac.	ge.	<i>to distract.</i>		
1	divaguer,			<i>to ramble.</i>		
2	divertir,	ac.		<i>to divert,</i>	—	à.
1	diviser,	ac.	ge.	<i>to divide.</i>		
1	divulguer,	ac.		<i>to publish.</i>		
1	dogmatiser,			<i>to dogmatise.</i>		
1	dominer,	ac.		<i>to sway.</i>		
1	dompter,	ac.		<i>to subdue.</i>		
1	donner,	ac.	da.	<i>to give,</i>	—	à.
1	dormir,			<i>to sleep.</i>		
1	doter,	ac.		<i>to give a portion.</i>		
1	doubler,	ac.	ge.	<i>to line, to double.</i>		
1	douer,	ac.	ge.	<i>to endow.</i>		
1	douter,		ge.	<i>to question,</i>	— (subj.)	
1	dresser,	ac.		<i>to make straight,</i>	—	à.
2	durcir,	ac.		<i>to harden.</i>		
1	durer,			<i>to last.</i>		

2	Eblouir,	ac.		<i>to dazzle.</i>		
1	ébranler,	ac.		<i>to shake.</i>		
1	écarter,	ac.	ge.	<i>to drive away.</i>		
1	échanger,	ac.		<i>to exchange.</i>		
1	échapper,	ge. or da.		<i>to escape.</i>		
1	échauffer,	ac.		<i>to warm.</i>		
1	échouer,			<i>to run on shore.</i>		
1	éclabousser,	ac.		<i>to spatter.</i>		
2	éclaircir,	ac.		<i>to clear up.</i>		
1	éclairer,	ac.		<i>to light.</i>		
1	éclater,			<i>to burst out.</i>		
1	s'éclipser,			<i>to disappear.</i>		
1	éconduire,	ac.		<i>to dismiss.</i>		

1	écorcher,	ac.	<i>to skin.</i>	
1	s'écouler,		<i>to flow out.</i>	
1	écouter,	ac.	<i>to listen to,</i>	—
1	écraser,	ac.	<i>to crush.</i>	
ir.	écrire,	ac. da.	<i>to write,</i>	—
1	écrouter,	ac.	<i>to chip bread.</i>	
1	écumer,	ge.	<i>to foam.</i>	
1	édifier,	ac.	<i>to edify.</i>	
1	effacer,	ac. ge.	<i>to blot out.</i>	
1	effectuer,	ac.	<i>to put in execution.</i>	
1	effiler,	ac.	<i>to ravel.</i>	
1	effleurer,	ac.	<i>to touch slightly.</i>	
1	s'efforcer,		<i>to endeavour,</i>	—
1	effrayer,	ac.	<i>to fright,</i>	—
1	égaler,	ac. da.	<i>to equal.</i>	
1	égorger,	ac.	<i>to cut the throat.</i>	
1	élaguer,	ac.	<i>to eliminate.</i>	
1	s'élancer sur,		<i>to leap upon.</i>	
2	élargir,	ac.	<i>to widen.</i>	
1	élever,	ac. da.	<i>to raise, to educate.</i>	
ir.	élire,	ac.	<i>to elect.</i>	
1	éloigner,	ac. ge.	<i>to remove,</i>	—
1	embarquer,	ac.	<i>to embark.</i>	
1	embarrasser,	ac. ge.	<i>to perplex,</i>	—
1	embaumer,	ac.	<i>to embalm.</i>	
2	embellir,	ac.	<i>to embellish.</i>	
1	embraser,	ac. ge.	<i>to set on fire.</i>	
1	embrasser,	ac.	<i>to embrace.</i>	
1	s'émerveiller,	ge.	<i>to wonder at,</i>	—
1	emmenoter,	ac.	<i>to manacle.</i>	
1	émonder,	ac.	<i>to prune.</i>	
ir.	émoudre,	ac.	<i>to sharpen.</i>	
1	émousser,	ac.	<i>to blunt.</i>	
ir.	émouvoir,	ac.	<i>to move.</i>	
1	empailler,	ac.	<i>to cover with straw.</i>	
1	empaqueter,	ac.	<i>to pack up.</i>	
1	s'emparer,	ge.	<i>to seize upon.</i>	
1	empêcher,	ac.	<i>to hinder,</i>	— (subj.)
1	empeser,	ac.	<i>to starch.</i>	
2	emplir,	ac. ge.	<i>to fill up.</i>	
1	employer,	ac. da.	<i>to employ.</i>	

1	empoisonner,	ac.	<i>to poison.</i>		
1	emporter,	ac.	<i>to carry away.</i>		
1	s'emporter,		<i>to fall into a passion.</i>		
1	s'empresser,		<i>to be eager,</i>	—	de.
1	emprisonner,	ac.	<i>to put in jail.</i>		
1	emprunter,	ac. ge.	<i>to borrow.</i>		
1	encaver,	ac.	<i>to put in a cellar.</i>		
1	encenser,	ac.	<i>to offer incense.</i>		
1	enchaîner,	ac.	<i>to put in chains.</i>		
1	enchanter,	ac.	<i>to charm,</i>	—	de.
2	enchérir,		<i>to raise price.</i>		
1	encourager,	ac.	<i>to encourage,</i>	—	à.
ir.	encourir,	ac.	<i>to incur.</i>		
1	s'endetter,		<i>to run into debt.</i>		
ir.	s'endormir,		<i>to fall asleep.</i>		
1	endurer,	ac.	<i>to suffer.</i>		
ir.	enfanter,	ac.	<i>to bring forth a child.</i>		
1	enfermer,	ac.	<i>to shut in.</i>		
1	enfiler,	ac.	<i>to thread.</i>		
1	enflammer,	ac. ge.	<i>to set on fire.</i>		
1	enfler,	ac. ge.	<i>to swell.</i>		
1	enfoncez,	ac.	<i>to break open.</i>		
ir.	enfreindre,	ac.	<i>to transgress.</i>		
1	enfumer,	ac.	<i>to smoke.</i>		
1	engager,	ac. da.	<i>to persuade,</i>	—	à.
1	s'engager,	da.	<i>to take upon one's self,</i>		à.
1	engendrer,	ac.	<i>to beget.</i>		
2	engloutir,	ac.	<i>to swallow.</i>		
1	engraisser,	ac.	<i>to fatten.</i>		
2	s'enhardir,	da.	<i>to grow bold,</i>	—	à.
1	s'enivrer,	ge.	<i>to make one's self drunk.</i>		
ir.	enjoindre,	ac. da.	<i>to order,</i>	—	de.
1	enlever,	ac. ge.	<i>to take away.</i>		
1	s'ennuyer,	ge.	<i>to be weary,</i>	—	de.
2	s'enorgueillir,	ge.	<i>to be proud,</i>	—	de.
ir.	s'enquérir,	ge.	<i>to enquire.</i>		
1	s'enraciner,		<i>to take root.</i>		
1	enrager,		<i>to enrage,</i>	—	de.
1	enregistrer,	ac.	<i>to register.</i>		
1	s'enrhumer,		<i>to catch hold.</i>		
2	s'enrichir,		<i>to grow rich,</i>	—	à.

1	enrôler	ac.		<i>to enlist.</i>	
1	ensanglanter,	ac.		<i>to make bloody.</i>	
1	enseigner,	ac.	da.	<i>to teach,</i>	—
1	ensemencer,	ac.		<i>to sow.</i>	
2	ensevelir	ac.		<i>to bury.</i>	
1	entasser,	ac.		<i>to heap up.</i>	
ir.	entendre,	ac.		<i>to hear,</i>	—
1	enterrer,	ac.		<i>to bury.</i>	
1	s'entêter,		da.	<i>to be infatuated,</i>	—
1	entraîner,	ac.	da.	<i>to drag away,</i>	—
1	entraver,	ac.		<i>to fetter.</i>	
1	entrelacer,	ac.	ge.	<i>to intermingle.</i>	
1	entremêler,	ac.	ge.	<i>to intermix.</i>	
1	entrer *,		da.	<i>to get in.</i>	
ir.	s'entremettre,		ge.	<i>to interpose.</i>	
ir.	entreprendre,	ac.		<i>to undertake,</i>	—
ir.	entretenir,	ac.	ge.	<i>to keep.</i>	
ir.	s'entretenir avec,			<i>to discourse with.</i>	
ir.	entrevoir,	ac.		<i>to have a glimpse.</i>	
ir.	entrouvrir,	ac.		<i>to open a little.</i>	
2	envahir,	ac.		<i>to invade.</i>	
1	envclopper,	ac.	ge.	<i>to fold up.</i>	
1	envenimer,	ac.		<i>to poison.</i>	
1	envier,	ac.	da.	<i>to envy.</i>	
1	environner,	ac.	ge.	<i>to encompass.</i>	
1	envisager,	ac.		<i>to look in the face.</i>	
1	s'envoler,			<i>to fly away.</i>	
ir.	envoyer,	ac.	da.	<i>to send,</i>	—
2	épaissir,	ac.		<i>to thicken.</i>	
2	s'épanouir,			<i>to spring out.</i>	
1	épargner,	ac.	da.	<i>to spare,</i>	—
1	épeler,	ac.		<i>to spell.</i>	
1	épicer,	ac.		<i>to spice.</i>	
1	épier,			<i>to ear, to spire.</i>	
1	épier,	ac.		<i>to spy.</i>	
1	ép pointer,	ac.		<i>to blunt.</i>	
1	époudrer,	ac.		<i>to wipe off the dust.</i>	
1	épouser,	ac.		<i>to marry.</i>	
1	épouvanter,	ac.		<i>to terrify,</i>	—
1	éprouver,	ac.		<i>to try.</i>	
1	épuiser,	ac.		<i>to exhaust</i>	

épurer,	ac.	ge.	<i>to refine.</i>		
équiper,	ac.	ge.	<i>to equip.</i>		
équivaloir		da.	<i>to be equal.</i>		
ériger,	ac.		<i>to erect.</i>		
errer,			<i>to ramble.</i>		
escalader,	ac.		<i>to scale.</i>		
escamoter,	ac.	da.	<i>to filch.</i>		
escarmoucher,			<i>to skirmish.</i>		
escompter,	ac.		<i>to discount.</i>		
escrimer,			<i>to fence.</i>		
escroquer,	ac.	da.	<i>to trick.</i>		
espérer,	ac.	ge.	<i>to hope,</i>	—	o.
espionner,	ac.		<i>to be a spy.</i>		
s'esquiver,		ge.	<i>to steal away.</i>		
essayer,	ac.	da.	<i>to try,</i>	—	de.
essuyer,	ac.		<i>to wipe off.</i>		
estimer,	ac.		<i>to value,</i>	—	o.
estropier,	ac.		<i>to lame.</i>		
établir,	ac.		<i>to establish.</i>		
étaler,	ac.	da.	<i>to display.</i>		
étancher,	ac.		<i>to quench.</i>		
éteindre,	ac.		<i>to extinguish.</i>		
étendre,	ac.		<i>to spread.</i>		
éternuer,			<i>to sneeze.</i>		
étiqueter,	ac.		<i>to title.</i>		
étonner,	ac.		<i>to surprise,</i>	—	de.
s'étonner,		ge.	<i>to wonder at,</i>	(subj.)	de.
étouffer,	ac.		<i>to stifle.</i>		
étourdir,	ac.		<i>to stun.</i>		
étrangler,	ac.		<i>to stifle to death.</i>		
être,			<i>to be,</i>	—	à.
étrécir,	ac.		<i>to make narrow.</i>		
s'étudier,			<i>to endeavour,</i>	—	à.
évacuer,	ac.		<i>to evacuate.</i>		
s'évader,		ge.	<i>to steal away.</i>		
évaluer,	ac.	da.	<i>to value.</i>		
s'évanouir,			<i>to faint away.</i>		
s'évaporer,			<i>to evaporate.</i>		
éveiller,	ac.		<i>to awake.</i>		
éviter,	ac.		<i>to shun,</i>	—	de.
exagérer,	ac.		<i>to exaggerate.</i>		

1	exalter,	ac.		<i>to exalt.</i>	
1	examiner,	ac.		<i>to enquire into,</i>	—
1	exaucer,	ac.		<i>to hear favourably</i>	
1	excéder,	ac.	ge.	<i>to exceed.</i>	
1	exceller,			<i>to excel.</i>	
1	excepter,	ac.	ge.	<i>to except.</i>	
1	exciter,	ac.	da.	<i>to incite,</i>	—
ir.	exclure,	ac.	ge.	<i>to exclude.</i>	
1	excommunier,	ac.		<i>to excommunicate.</i>	
1	excuser,	ac.		<i>to excuse,</i>	—
1	exempter,	da.	ge.	<i>to exempt,</i>	—
1	exécuter,	ac.		<i>to execute.</i>	
1	exercer,	ac.	da.	<i>to exercise,</i>	—
1	exhorter,	ac.	da.	<i>to exhort,</i>	—
1	exiger,	ac.	ge.	<i>to require,</i>	(subj.)
1	exiler,	ac.		<i>to banish.</i>	
1	exister,			<i>to exist.</i>	
1	s'expatrier,			<i>to quit one's own country</i>	
1	expédier,	ac.	da.	<i>to despatch.</i>	
1	expier,	ac.		<i>to atone.</i>	
1	expirer,	ac.		<i>to expire, to die.</i>	
1	expliquer,	ac.	da.	<i>to explain.</i>	
1	exposer,	ac.	da.	<i>to expose.</i>	
1	exprimer,	ac.	da.	<i>to express.</i>	
1	expulser,	ac.	ge.	<i>to turn out.</i>	
1	exterminer,	ac.		<i>to exterminate.</i>	
1	extirper,	ac.	ge.	<i>to root out.</i>	
ir.	extraire,	ac.	ge.	<i>to extract.</i>	

## F

1	Fabriquer,	ac.		<i>to manufacture.</i>	
1	fâcher,	ac.		<i>to vex,</i>	—
1	se fâcher,		ge.	<i>to be angry,</i>	(subj.)
1	faciliter,	ac.	da.	<i>to facilitate.</i>	
1	façonner,	ac.		<i>to fashion.</i>	
ir.	faire,	ac.	da.	<i>to make or to do,</i>	—
imp.	falloir,			<i>to be necessary,</i>	(subj.)
1	falsifier,	ac.		<i>to counterfeit.</i>	
1	se familiariser,			<i>to grow familiar.</i>	
2	farcir,	ac.	ge.	<i>to stuff.</i>	

se farder,			<i>to print.</i>		
fatiguer,	ac.		<i>to tire,</i>	—	de.
favoriser,	ac.		<i>to favour.</i>		
feindre,	ac.		<i>to dissemble,</i>	—	de.
fendre,	ac.		<i>to split or cleav</i>		
fermenter,			<i>to ferment.</i>		
fermer,	ac.		<i>to shut up.</i>		
ferrer un cheval,			<i>to shoe a horse.</i>		
se fier,		da.	<i>to trust to.</i>		
se figer,			<i>to congeal.</i>		
figurer,	ac.		<i>to represent.</i>		
se figurer,	ac.		<i>to fancy,</i>	—	o.
filer,	ac.		<i>to spin.</i>		
filtrer,	ac.		<i>to filtrate.</i>		
finir,			<i>to make an end,</i>	—	de.
flamber,			<i>to blaze.</i>		
se flatter,		ge.	<i>to flatter one's self,</i>	—	de.
fléchir,	ac.		<i>to soften.</i>		
flétrir,	ac.		<i>to wither, or tarnish.</i>		
fleurir,	ac.		<i>to bloom.</i>		
flotter,			<i>to float.</i>		
fomenter,	ac.		<i>to foment.</i>		
se fondre,	ac.		<i>to melt.</i>		
forcer,	ac.	da.	<i>to compel,</i>	—	à or de.
forger,	ac.		<i>to hammer.</i>		
se formaliser,	ac.	ge.	<i>to find fault,</i>	—	de
former,	ac.		<i>to form.</i>		
fortifier,	ac.		<i>to strengthen.</i>		
foudroyer,	ac.		<i>to storm.</i>		
fouetter,	ac.		<i>to whip.</i>		
fouler aux pieds,	ac.		<i>to trample upon.</i>		
fournir,	ac.	da.	<i>to furnish.</i>		
frapper,	ac.	ge.	<i>to strike.</i>		
frémir,		ge.	<i>to tremble,</i>	—	de.
fréquenter,	ac.		<i>to haunt.</i>		
friser,	ac.		<i>to curl.</i>		
frissonner,		ge.	<i>to shiver,</i>	—	de.
froidir,			<i>to grow cold.</i>		
froisser,	ac.		<i>to bruise.</i>		
frotter,	ac.		<i>to rub.</i>		
frustrer,	ac.	ge.	<i>to disappoint.</i>		



ir.	fuir,	ac.	ge.	<i>to shun.</i>
1	fumer	ac.		<i>to smoke.</i>

## G

1	Gager,	ac.		<i>to lay wagers.</i>
1	gagner,	ac.		<i>to win.</i>
1	galoper,	ac.		<i>to gallop.</i>
1	se gangréner,			<i>to gangrene.</i>
2	garantir,	ac.	ge.	<i>to preserve.</i>
1	garder,	ac.		<i>to keep.</i>
1	se garder,		ge.	<i>to beware,</i> —
2	garnir,	ac.	ge.	<i>to furnish.</i>
1	garotter,	ac.	ge.	<i>to tie fast.</i>
1	gâter,	ac.		<i>to spoil.</i>
1	geler,			<i>to freeze.</i>
2	gémir,			<i>to groan,</i> —
1	gesticuler,			<i>to be full of action.</i>
1	glacer,		ge.	<i>to freeze.</i>
1	glaner,	ac.		<i>to glean.</i>
1	glisser,			<i>to slide.</i>
1	se glisser,			<i>to creep in.</i>
1	goûter,	ac.		<i>to taste.</i>
1	gouverner,	ac.		<i>to rule.</i>
2	grandir,			<i>to grow tall.</i>
1	gratter,	ac.		<i>to scratch.</i>
1	graver,	ac.		<i>to engrave.</i>
1	grêler,			<i>to hail.</i>
1	griller,	ac.		<i>to broil.</i>
1	griller,		ge.	<i>to burn with impatience,</i>
1	grincer les dents,			<i>to gnash the teeth.</i>
1	gronder,	ac.	ge.	<i>to scold at,</i> —
2	grossir,			<i>to grow big.</i>
2	guérir,	ac.	ge.	<i>to cure.</i>
2	se guérir,			<i>to recover.</i>
1	guider,	ac.	da.	<i>to guide.</i>

## H

1	Habiller,	ac.	ge.	<i>to clothe, to dress.</i>
1	s'habiller,			<i>to dress one's self.</i>
1	habiter,	ac.		<i>to live in.</i>

1	s'habituer,	da.	<i>to get a habit,</i>	—	à.
r.	haïr,	ac.	<i>to hate,</i>	—	de.
1	haranguer,	ac.	<i>to make a speech.</i>		
1	hasarder,	ac.	<i>to venture,</i>	—	de.
1	se hâter,		<i>to make haste,</i>	—	de.
1	hériter,	ge.	<i>to inherit.</i>		
1	hésiter,		<i>to hesitate,</i>	—	à.
1	honorer,	ac. ge.	<i>to honour.</i>		
1	humilier,	ac.	<i>to humble.</i>		

## I

1	Idolâtrer,	ac.	<i>to worship idols.</i>		
1	ignorer,	ac.	<i>to be ignorant.</i>		
1	illuminer,	ac.	<i>to illuminate.</i>		
1	s'imaginer,	ac.	<i>to fancy,</i>	—	o
1	imbiber,	ac.	<i>to imbibe.</i>		
1	s'immiscer,	ac.	<i>to intermeddle.</i>		
1	immoler,	ac. da.	<i>to sacrifice.</i>		
1	immortaliser,	ac.	<i>to immortalize.</i>		
1	impatier,	ac.	<i>to tire one's patience.</i>		
1	implorer,	ac.	<i>to implore.</i>		
1	importuner,	ac.	<i>to be troublesome.</i>		
1	imposer,	ac. da.	<i>to lay on.</i>		
1	imprimer,	ac.	<i>to print.</i>		
1	imputer,	ac. da.	<i>to impute,</i>	—	de.
1	incliner,	da.	<i>to incline,</i>	—	à.
1	incommoder,	ac.	<i>to disturb.</i>		
1	incorporer,	ac. da.	<i>to incorporate.</i>		
1	inculper,	ac.	<i>to accuse,</i>	—	de.
1	inculquer,	ac. da.	<i>to inculcate.</i>		
1	indemniser,	ac. ge.	<i>to indemnify.</i>		
1	indiquer,	ac. da.	<i>to show,</i>	—	de.
1	indisposer,	ac.	<i>to alienate.</i>		
1	infecter,	ac. ge.	<i>to infect.</i>		
1	infester,	ac.	<i>to infest.</i>		
1	influencer,	ac. ge.	<i>to influence.</i>		
1	informer,	ac. ge.	<i>to inform.</i>		
1	infuser,	ac.	<i>to infuse.</i>		
1	s'ingérer,	ge.	<i>to intermeddle with,</i>	—	de.
1	inhumer,	ac.	<i>to bury.</i>		

1	injurier,	ac.		<i>to abuse.</i>	
1	innover,	ac.		<i>to innovate.</i>	
1	inonder,	ac.	ge.	<i>to overflow.</i>	
1	inquiéter,	ac.		<i>to trouble.</i>	
ir.	inscrire,	ac.		<i>to inscribe.</i>	
1	s'insinuer,			<i>to steal in.</i>	
1	insinuer,	ac.	da.	<i>to insinuate,</i>	— (
1	inspirer,	ac.	da.	<i>to inspire with,</i>	— (
1	instituer,	ac.		<i>to appoint.</i>	
ir.	instruire,	ac.	ge.	<i>to teach.</i>	
1	insulter,	ac. or da.	ge.	<i>to insult.</i>	
1	intercéder,	ac.		<i>to intercede.</i>	
1	intercepter,	ac.		<i>to intercept.</i>	
ir.	interdire,	ac.		<i>to interdict.</i>	
1	s'interposer,	ac.		<i>to intermeddle.</i>	
1	interpréter,	ac.	ge.	<i>to explain.</i>	
1	interroger,	ac.		<i>to ask questions.</i>	
ir.	interrompre,	ac.		<i>to interrupt.</i>	
ir.	intervenir,			<i>to intervene.</i>	
1	intimider,	ac.		<i>to fright.</i>	
1	intituler,	ac.		<i>to entitle.</i>	
1	intriguer,			<i>to cabal.</i>	
ir.	introduire,	ac.		<i>to introduce.</i>	
1	invectiver contre,			<i>to inveigh against.</i>	
1	inventer,	ac.		<i>to find out,</i>	— (
2	investir,	ac.	ge.	<i>to invest.</i>	
1	inviter,	ac.	da.	<i>to invite,</i>	— à or (
1	invoquer,	ac.		<i>to invoke.</i>	
1	irriter,	ac.		<i>to exasperate.</i>	

## J.

1	Jardiner,			<i>to dress a garden.</i>	
1	jeter,	ac.	da.	<i>to throw.</i>	
1	jeûner,	ac.		<i>to fast.</i>	
ir.	joindre,	ac.	da.	<i>to join.</i>	
1	jouer,	ac.	ge. da.	<i>to play.</i>	
2	jouir,		ge.	<i>to enjoy.</i>	
1	juger,	ac.	ge.	<i>to judge,</i>	—
1	jurer,	ac.	da.	<i>to swear,</i>	— de or
1	justifier,	ac.	ge.	<i>to justify,</i>	—

## L

1	Labourer,	ac.		<i>to plough.</i>	
1	lacer,	ac.		<i>to lace.</i>	
1	lâcher,	ac.		<i>to loosen.</i>	
1	laisser,	ac.	da.	<i>to leave,</i>	— o
1	lambrisser,	ac.		<i>to wainscot.</i>	
1	lamenter,	ac.		<i>to bemoan.</i>	
1	lancer,	ac.	da.	<i>to fling.</i>	
2	languir,	ge.		<i>to languish.</i>	
1	larder,	ac.	ge.	<i>to lard.</i>	
1	se lasser,			<i>to be weary,</i>	— de or à.
1	laver,	ac.	da.	<i>to wash.</i>	
1	légitimer,	ac.		<i>to legitimate.</i>	
1	léguer,	ac.	da.	<i>to leave by will.</i>	
1	se lever,			<i>to rise.</i>	
1	lier,	ac.		<i>to tie.</i>	
1	se liguer contre,			<i>to enter into a league.</i>	
1	limer,	ac.		<i>to file off.</i>	
1	limiter,	ac.	da.	<i>to limit.</i>	
1	liquéfier,	ac.		<i>to liquefy.</i>	
ir.	lire,	ac.	da.	<i>to read.</i>	
1	livrer,	ac.	da.	<i>to give up.</i>	
1	loger,	ac.		<i>to lodge, to dwell.</i>	
1	loucher,			<i>to squint.</i>	
1	louer,	ac.	ge.	<i>to praise,</i>	— de
ir.	luire,			<i>to shine.</i>	
1	lutter contre,			<i>to struggle with.</i>	
1	lutter,			<i>to wrestle.</i>	

## M

1	Mâcher,	ac.		<i>to chew.</i>	
1	maçonner,	ac.		<i>to build.</i>	
2	maigrir,			<i>to grow lean.</i>	
ir.	maintenir,	ac.		<i>to maintain.</i>	
1	maîtriser,	ac.		<i>to subdue.</i>	
1	maltraiter,	ac.	ge.	<i>to use ill.</i>	
1	mander,	ac.	da.	<i>to send for,</i>	— de
1	manger,	ac.		<i>to eat.</i>	
1	manier,	ac.		<i>to handle.</i>	

1	manifester,	ac.		<i>to reveal.</i>	
1	manquer,	ac.		<i>to miss.</i>	
1	manquer,	ge.	da.	<i>to want, to fail,</i>	—
1	marchander,	ac.		<i>to cheapen.</i>	
1	marcher,		da.	<i>to walk.</i>	
1	marier,	ac.	da.	<i>to marry.</i>	
1	se marier,	ac.	da.	<i>to marry.</i>	
1	mariner,	ac.		<i>to pickle.</i>	
1	marquer,	ac.	da.	<i>to mark.</i>	
1	massacrer,	ac.		<i>to massacre.</i>	
ir.	maudire,	ac.		<i>to curse.</i>	
ir.	se méconnaître,			<i>to forget one's self.</i>	
ir.	méconnaître,	ac.		<i>to take for another.</i>	
ir.	médire,		ge.	<i>to slander.</i>	
1	méditer,	ac.		<i>to meditate,</i>	— da
1	se méfier,		ge.	<i>to distrust.</i>	
1	mélanger,	ac.		<i>to mix together.</i>	
1	mêler,	ac.	ge.	<i>to mix.</i>	
1	se mêler,		ge.	<i>to meddle with,</i>	— da
1	menacer,	ac.	ge.	<i>to threaten,</i>	— da
1	ménager,	ac.	da.	<i>to spare.</i>	
ir.	mentir,			<i>to tell lies.</i>	
ir.	se méprendre,			<i>to mistake.</i>	
1	mépriser,	ac.		<i>to despise.</i>	
1	mériter,	ac.		<i>to deserve,</i>	— da
2	mésoffrir,			<i>to beat down price.</i>	
1	mesurer,	ac.	da.	<i>to measure.</i>	
1	métamorphoser,	ac.		<i>to metamorphose.</i>	
ir.	mettre,	ac.	da.	<i>to put.</i>	
1	meubler,	ac.	ge.	<i>to furnish.</i>	
2	meurtrir,	ac.	ge.	<i>to bruise.</i>	
1	miauler,			<i>to mew.</i>	
1	modérer,	ac.		<i>to moderate.</i>	
1	moissonner,	ac.		<i>to harvest.</i>	
1	molester,	ac.		<i>to grieve.</i>	
1	monter,	ac.	da.	<i>to get up, to take up.</i>	
1	montrer,	ac.	da.	<i>to show,</i>	—
1	se moquer,		ge.	<i>to laugh at.</i>	
1	moraliser,			<i>to moralise.</i>	
ir.	mordre,	ac.		<i>to bite.</i>	
1	moucheter,	ac.		<i>to spot.</i>	

<i>ir.</i>	moudre,	ac.	<i>to grind.</i>
<i>ir.</i>	mourir *,	ge.	<i>to die.</i>
1	murer,	ac. da.	<i>to wall up.</i>
2	mûrir,		<i>to ripen.</i>
1	murmurer,		<i>to mutter.</i>

## N

1	Nager,		<i>to swim.</i>		
<i>ir.</i>	naître *,		<i>to be born.</i>		
1	nécessiter,	ac.	<i>to compel,</i>	—	à.
1	négliger,	ac.	<i>to neglect,</i>	—	de.
1	négo cier,	ac.	<i>to trade.</i>		
<i>imp.</i>	neiger,		<i>to snow.</i>		
1	nettoyer,	ac.	<i>to clean.</i>		
1	nier	ac.	<i>to deny,</i>	— (subj.)	o.
2	noircir,	ac.	<i>to blacken.</i>		
1	nommer,	ac. da.	<i>to name.</i>		
1	noter,	ac.	<i>to note.</i>		
1	notifier,	ac. da.	<i>to let one know,</i>	—	de.
1	nouer,	ac.	<i>to tie.</i>		
2	nourrir,	ac. ge.	<i>to feed,</i>	—	à.
1	noyer,	ac. gc.	<i>to drown.</i>		
1	se noyer,		<i>to be drowned.</i>		
1	nuancer,	ac.	<i>to shadow.</i>		
<i>ir.</i>	nuire,	da.	<i>to hurt.</i>		

## O

2	Obéir	da.	<i>to obey.</i>		
1	objecter,	ac. da.	<i>to object.</i>		
1	obliger,	ac. da.	<i>to oblige,</i>	—	de or à.
2	obscurcir,	ac.	<i>to darken.</i>		
1	obséder,	ac.	<i>to beset.</i>		
1	observer,	ac.	<i>to observe,</i>	—	o.
1	s'obstiner,	da.	<i>to be obstinate,</i>	—	à.
<i>ir.</i>	obtenir,	ac. ge.	<i>to obtain,</i>	—	de
1	obvier,	da.	<i>to obviate.</i>		
1	occuper,	ac. da.	<i>to employ,</i>	—	à.
1	offenser,	ac.	<i>to offend.</i>		
<i>ir.</i>	offrir,	ac. da.	<i>to offer,</i>	—	de.

1	offusquer,	ac.	<i>to dim.</i>		
1	ombrager,	ac.	<i>to shadow.</i>		
ir.	omettre,	ac.	<i>to omit,</i>	—	de.
1	opiner,	da.	<i>to vote.</i>		
1	s'opiniâtrer,	da.	<i>to be obstinate,</i>	—	a.
1	s'opposer,	da.	<i>to be against.</i>		
1	opprimer,	ac.	<i>to oppress.</i>		
1	opter,		<i>to choose.</i>		
1	ordonner,	ac. da.	<i>to order,</i>	—	(subj.) de.
1	orner,	ac. ge.	<i>to adorn.</i>		
1	orthographier,	ac.	<i>to spell.</i>		
1	oser,	ac.	<i>to dare,</i>	—	o.
1	ôter,	ac. ge. da.	<i>to take away,</i>		
1	oublier,	ac.	<i>to forget,</i>	—	de.
2	ourdir,	ac.	<i>to weave.</i>		
1	outrager,	ac.	<i>to affront.</i>		
ir.	ouvrir,	ac. da.	<i>to open.</i>		

## P

1	Pacifier,	ac.	<i>to pacify.</i>		
ir.	paître,	ac.	<i>to graze.</i>		
1	pallier,	ac.	<i>to palliate.</i>		
1	panser,	ac.	<i>to dress wounds.</i>		
1	paraphraser,	ac.	<i>to comment upon.</i>		
ir.	parcourir,	ac.	<i>to run over.</i>		
1	pardonner,	ac. da.	<i>to forgive,</i>	—	de.
1	parier,	ac.	<i>to bet,</i>	—	o.
1	parler,	ge. da.	<i>to speak,</i>	—	de.
ir.	paraître,		<i>to appear,</i>	—	o.
1	parquer,	ac.	<i>to fold.</i>		
1	parsemer,	ac. ge.	<i>to strew.</i>		
1	partager,	ac. da.	<i>to share.</i>		
ir.	partir *,	ge.	<i>to set out.</i>		
ir.	parvenir *,	da.	<i>to arrive at</i>		
1	passer,	ac.	<i>to pass.</i>		
1	patienter,		<i>to take patience.</i>		
1	patiner,		<i>to skait.</i>		
1	paver,	ac. da.	<i>to pave.</i>		
1	payer,	ac.	<i>to pay.</i>		
1	pécher,		<i>to sin.</i>		

1	pêcher,	ac.		<i>to fish.</i>		
ir.	peindre,	ac.	da.	<i>to paint.</i>		
1	peler,	ac.		<i>to peel.</i>		
1	pencher sur,			<i>to lean upon.</i>		
ir.	pendre,	ac.	da.	<i>to hang.</i>		
1	pénétrer dans,			<i>to get into.</i>		
1	penser,	ge.	da.	<i>to think of,</i>	—	à.
1	percer,	ac.		<i>to pierce.</i>		
ir.	perdre,	ac.	da.	<i>to lose,</i>	—	à.
ir.	permettre,	ac.	da.	<i>to permit,</i>	— (subj.)	de.
1	persister,			<i>to persist,</i>	—	à.
1	persuader,	ac.	da.	<i>to persuade,</i>	—	de.
2	pervertir,	ac.		<i>to pervert.</i>		
1	peser,	ac.		<i>to weigh.</i>		
1	pétrifier,	ac.		<i>to petrify.</i>		
1	peupler,	ac.	ge.	<i>to people.</i>		
1	piler,	ac.		<i>to bruise.</i>		
1	piller,	ac.		<i>to plunder.</i>		
1	pincer,	ac.	da.	<i>to pinch.</i>		
1	piquer,	ac.	da.	<i>to prick.</i>		
1	se piquer,		ge.	<i>to pretend to,</i>	—	de.
1	placer,	ac.	da.	<i>to place.</i>		
ir.	plaindre,	ac.		<i>to pity,</i>	—	de.
ir.	se plaindre,	ge.	da.	<i>to complain,</i>	(subj.)	de.
ir.	plaire,		da.	<i>to please,</i>	—	à.
1	planter,	ac.		<i>to plant.</i>		
1	plâtrer,	ac.		<i>to plaster.</i>		
1	pleurer,	ac.	ge.	<i>to bewail, to cry.</i>		
1	plier,	ac.		<i>to plait, to bend.</i>		
1	plisser,	ac.		<i>to plait.</i>		
1	plomber,	ac.		<i>to lead.</i>		
1	plonger,	ac.		<i>to plunge.</i>		
1	ployer,	ac.		<i>to fold up.</i>		
1	poignarder,	ac.		<i>to stab.</i>		
1	poivrer,	ac.		<i>to pepper.</i>		
1	policer,	ac.		<i>to regulate.</i>		
2	polir,	ac.		<i>to polish.</i>		
1	pomper,	ac.		<i>to pump.</i>		
1	ponctuer,	ac.		<i>to point.</i>		
ir.	pondre,	ac.		<i>to lay eggs.</i>		
1	porter,	ac.	da.	<i>to carry,</i>	—	à.



1	poser,	ac.	<i>to lay.</i>		
1	posséder,	ac.	<i>to possess.</i>		
1	poudrer,	ac.	<i>to powder.</i>		
ir.	poursuivre,	ac.	<i>to pursue.</i>		
ir.	pouvoir,	ac. ge. da.	<i>to provide.</i>		
1	pousser,	ac. da.	<i>to thrust, to push,</i>	—	à.
ir.	pouvoir,	ac. da.	<i>to be able,</i>	—	o.
1	pratiquer,	ac.	<i>to practise.</i>		
1	précéder,	ac. ge.	<i>to precede.</i>		
1	prêcher,	da.	<i>to preach,</i>	—	de.
ir.	prédire,	ac. da.	<i>to foretel,</i>	—	o.
1	prédominer,	ac.	<i>to predominate.</i>		
1	préférer,	ac. da.	<i>to prefer,</i>	—	o.
1	préjudicier,	da.	<i>to prejudice.</i>		
1	prélever,	ac.	<i>to deduct.</i>		
1	préméditer,	ac.	<i>to premeditate,</i>	—	de.
ir.	prendre,	ac. ge. da.	<i>to take.</i>		
1	préparer,	ac. da.	<i>to prepare,</i>	—	à.
1	préposer,	ac. da.	<i>to set over.</i>		
1	présager,	ac.	<i>to portend,</i>	—	o.
ir.	prescrire,	ac.	<i>to prescribe,</i>	—	de.
1	présenter,	ac. da.	<i>to offer,</i>	—	à.
1	préserver,	ac.	<i>to preserve.</i>		
1	présider,	ac.	<i>to preside.</i>		
1	présenter,	ac.	<i>to present,</i>	—	à.
ir.	pressentir,	ac.	<i>to foresee.</i>		
1	presser,	ac.	<i>to press, or squeeze,</i>		de.
1	présumer,	ac. ge.	<i>to presume,</i>	—	de.
ir.	prétendre,	ac. da.	<i>to pretend to, to design,</i>		o.
1	prêter,	ac. da.	<i>to lend.</i>		
ir.	prévaloir,		<i>to prevail.</i>		
ir.	prévenir,	ac. ge.	<i>to anticipate.</i>		
ir.	prévoit,	ac.	<i>to foresee,</i>	—	o.
1	prier,	ac.	<i>to pray,</i>	— (subj.)	de.
1	priver,	ac. ge.	<i>to deprive,</i>	—	de.
1	procéder,	ge. da.	<i>to proceed.</i>		
1	proclamer,	ac.	<i>to proclaim.</i>		
1	procurer,	ac. da.	<i>to procure,</i>	—	de.
1	prodiguer,	ac.	<i>to lavish.</i>		
ir.	produire,	ac.	<i>to produce.</i>		
1	profaner,	ac.	<i>to profane.</i>		

1	proférer,	ac.		<i>to utter.</i>		
1	professer,	ac.		<i>to profess.</i>		
1	profiter,		ge.	<i>to improve.</i>		
1	projeter,	ac.		<i>to intend,</i>	—	de.
1	prolonger,	ac.		<i>to prolong.</i>		
1	se promener,			<i>to walk.</i>		
ir.	promettre,	ac.	da.	<i>to promise,</i>	—	de.
1	prononcer,	ac.	da.	<i>to pronounce.</i>		
1	propager,	ac.		<i>to propagate.</i>		
1	prophétiser,	ac.		<i>to foretel.</i>		
1	proposer,	ac.	da.	<i>to propose,</i>	—	de.
ir.	proscrire,	ac.	ge.	<i>to proscribe.</i>		
1	prosperer,			<i>to prosper.</i>		
1	se prosterner,		da.	<i>to prostrate one's self.</i>		
1	protéger,	ac.		<i>to protect.</i>		
1	protester-contre,			<i>to protest.</i>		
ir.	provenir *,		ge.	<i>to proceed.</i>		
1	publier,	ac.		<i>to publish,</i>	—	o
2	punir,	ac.	ge.	<i>to punish,</i>	—	de.
1	purger,	ac.		<i>to purge.</i>		
1	purifier,	ac.		<i>to purify.</i>		
1	se putréfier,			<i>to rot.</i>		

## Q

1	Quadrupler,	ac.		<i>to quadruplicate.</i>		
1	qualifier,	ac.		<i>to qualify.</i>		
1	quereller,	ac.		<i>to scold at.</i>		
1	questionner,	ac.		<i>to ask questions.</i>		
1	quêter,	ac.		<i>to beg.</i>		
1	quitter,	ac.		<i>to quit.</i>		

## R

1	Rabaisser,	ac.		<i>to abate.</i>		
1	raccommoder,	ac.		<i>to mend.</i>		
1	racheter,	ac.	ge.	<i>to redeem.</i>		
1	racheter,	ac.		<i>to buy again.</i>		
1	raconter,	ac.	da.	<i>to relate.</i>		
2	se radoucir,			<i>to be appeased.</i>	—	
2	raffermir,	ac.		<i>to strengthen.</i>		
1	raffiner,	ac.		<i>to refine.</i>		

2	rafrâchir,	ac.		<i>to cool.</i>	
2	se raidir,			<i>to grow stiff.</i>	
1	raisonner,	ac.	ge.	<i>to reason.</i>	
2	ralentir,	ac.		<i>to relent.</i>	
1	rallier,	ac.		<i>to rally.</i>	
1	rallumer,	ac.		<i>to kindle again.</i>	
1	ramasser,	ac.	ge.	<i>to pick up.</i>	
1	ramener,	ac. ge. da.		<i>to bring back.</i>	
2	ramollir,	ac.		<i>to soften.</i>	
1	ramper,		da.	<i>to crawl.</i>	
1	rançonner,	ac.		<i>to ransom.</i>	
1	ranger,	ac.		<i>to set in order.</i>	
1	ranimer,	ac.		<i>to revive,</i>	— à
1	râper,	ac.		<i>to grate.</i>	
1	rappeler,	ac.	da.	<i>to call again.</i>	
1	rapporter,	ac. ge. da.		<i>to bring back.</i>	
ir.	rapprendre,	ac.		<i>to learn again.</i>	
1	rapprocher,	ac.	ge.	<i>to draw near again.</i>	
1	raréfier,	ac.		<i>to rarefy.</i>	
1	raser,	ac.		<i>to shave.</i>	
1	rassasier,	ac.	ge.	<i>to satisfy,</i>	— de
1	rassembler,	ac.		<i>to join together.</i>	
1	rassurer,	ac.		<i>to encourage.</i>	
1	ratifier,	ac.		<i>to ratify.</i>	
1	ratisser,	ac.		<i>to scrape off.</i>	
1	rattacher,	ac.	da.	<i>to tie again.</i>	
1	raturer,	ac.		<i>to scratch out.</i>	
1	ravager,	ac.		<i>to lay waste.</i>	
2	ravir,	ac.	ge.	<i>to ravish,</i>	— de
1	rayer,	ac.	ge.	<i>to bar, to erase.</i>	
1	réaliser,	ac.		<i>to realise.</i>	
1	réassigner,	ac.		<i>to assign anew,</i>	— à
2	rebâtir,	ac.		<i>to rebuild.</i>	
1	rebaptiser,	ac.		<i>to rebaptize.</i>	
2	reblanchir,	ac.		<i>to wash again.</i>	
2	rebondir,			<i>to rebound.</i>	
1	reborder,	ac.		<i>to new border</i>	
1	reboucher,	ac.		<i>to stop again.</i>	
1	rebrider,	ac.		<i>to bridle again.</i>	
1	rebuter,	ac.		<i>to reject.</i>	
1	recacheter,	ac.		<i>to seal up again.</i>	

1	recéler,	ac.		<i>to conceal.</i>	
ir.	recevoir,	ac.	ge.	<i>to receive.</i>	
1	rechanger,	ac.		<i>to change again.</i>	
1	recharger,	ac.	ge.	<i>to load again.</i>	
1	réchauffer,	ac.		<i>to warm again.</i>	
1	rechercher,	ac.		<i>to seek again.</i>	
1	réciter,	ac.		<i>to rehearse.</i>	
1	réclamer,	ac.	ge.	<i>to claim.</i>	
1	recoller,	ac.		<i>to glue again.</i>	
1	recommander,	ac.	da.	<i>to recommend,</i>	— de
1	récompenser,	ac.	ge.	<i>to reward,</i>	— de
1	recomposer,	ac.		<i>to compose again.</i>	
1	recompter,	ac.		<i>to reckon again.</i>	
1	réconcilier,	ac.		<i>to reconcile.</i>	
ir.	reconduire,	ac.	da.	<i>to wait upon one back.</i>	
ir.	reconnaître,	ac.		<i>to know again.</i>	
ir.	se reconnaître,			<i>to come to one's self.</i>	
ir.	reconquérir,	ac.		<i>to conquer.</i>	
1	reconter,	ac.	da.	<i>to tell over again.</i>	
1	recopier,	ac.		<i>to write fair again.</i>	
ir.	recoudre,	ac.		<i>to sew again.</i>	
ir.	recourir,		da.	<i>to have recourse.</i>	
1	recouvrer,	ac.		<i>to recover.</i>	
ir.	recouvrir,		da.	<i>to new cover.</i>	
1	récréer,	ac.		<i>to recreate.</i>	
1	se récrier,			<i>to exclaim.</i>	
1	récriminer,			<i>to recriminate.</i>	
ir.	récrire,	ac.	da.	<i>to write over,</i>	— de.
1	recruter,	ac.		<i>to recruit.</i>	
1	rectifier,	ac.		<i>to rectify.</i>	
ir.	recueillir,	ac.		<i>to gather.</i>	
1	reculer,	ac.		<i>to draw back.</i>	
1	récuser,	ac.		<i>to except against.</i>	
ir.	redéfaire,	ac.		<i>to undo again.</i>	
1	redemander,	ac.	da.	<i>to ask again,</i>	— à.
ir.	redescendre,			<i>to come down again.</i>	
ir.	redevoir,	ac.	da.	<i>to owe still.</i>	
1	rediger,	ac.		<i>to put in order.</i>	
ir.	redire,	ac.	da.	<i>to say again,</i>	— de.
1	redonner,	ac.	da.	<i>to give again.</i>	
1	redorer,	ac.		<i>to new gild.</i>	

1	redoubler,	ac.	<i>to new line.</i>	
1	redoubler,	ge.	<i>to redouble.</i>	
1	redouter,	ac.	<i>to dread,</i>	— d
1	redresser,	ac.	<i>to make straight.</i>	
ir.	réduire,	ac. da.	<i>to reduce,</i>	—
1	réédifier,	ac.	<i>to build up again.</i>	
ir.	refaire,	ac.	<i>to do over again.</i>	
1	référer,	ac. da.	<i>to refer.</i>	
2	réfléchir sur,		<i>to reflect.</i>	
1	refluer,		<i>to flow back.</i>	
ir.	refondre,	ac.	<i>to melt again.</i>	
1	réformer,	ac.	<i>to reform.</i>	
1	réfréner,	ac.	<i>to repress.</i>	
2	refroidir,	ac.	<i>to cool.</i>	
1	se réfugier,		<i>to take sanctuary.</i>	
1	refuser,	ac. da.	<i>to refuse,</i>	— d
1	réfuter,	ac.	<i>to refute.</i>	
1	regagner,	ac.	<i>to get again.</i>	
1	régaler,	ac. ge.	<i>to entertain.</i>	
1	regarder,	ac.	<i>to look upon,</i>	—
2	regarnir,	ac. ge.	<i>to furnish again.</i>	
imp.	regeler,		<i>to freeze again.</i>	
1	régénérer,	ac.	<i>to regenerate.</i>	
2	régir,	ac.	<i>to govern.</i>	
1	régler,	ac.	<i>to rule.</i>	
1	régner,		<i>to reign.</i>	
1	regorger,	ge.	<i>to overflow.</i>	
1	regratter,	ac.	<i>to scratch again.</i>	
1	regretter,	ac.	<i>to lament,</i>	—
1	réhabiliter,	ac.	<i>to rehabilitate.</i>	
1	rehausser,	ac.	<i>to raise.</i>	
1	rejaillir,		<i>to spurt up.</i>	
1	rejeter,	ac. ge.	<i>to reject.</i>	
1	réintégrer,	ac.	<i>to restore.</i>	
ir.	rejoindre,	ac.	<i>to join again</i>	
2	se réjouir,	ge.	<i>to rejoice,</i>	— (subj.)
1	réitérer,	ac.	<i>to repeat.</i>	
1	relâcher,	ac.	<i>to slacken.</i>	
2	relargir,	ac.	<i>to make wider again.</i>	
1	relaver,	ac.	<i>to wash again.</i>	
1	reléguer,	ac. da.	<i>to banish.</i>	

1 relever,	ac.	ge.	<i>to raise up again.</i>	
1 relier,	ac.		<i>to bind.</i>	
r. relire,	ac.		<i>to read over.</i>	
r. reluire,			<i>to glitter.</i>	
1 remander,	ac.	da.	<i>to send back again,</i>	— de.
1 remarier,	ac.	da.	<i>to marry again.</i>	
1 remarquer,	ac.		<i>to observe.</i>	
1 remballer,	ac.		<i>to pack up again.</i>	
1 rembarquer,	ac.		<i>to embark again.</i>	
1 rembourser,	ac.		<i>to reimburse.</i>	
1 remêler,	ac.		<i>to shuffle again.</i>	
1 remener,	ac.	da.	<i>to carry back,</i>	— o.
1 remercier,	ac.	ge.	<i>to thank,</i>	— de.
1 remesurer,	ac.		<i>to measure again.</i>	
1 remédier,		da.	<i>to remedy.</i>	
1 remettre,	ac.	da.	<i>to put again.</i>	
1 remeubler,	ac.		<i>to furnish again.</i>	
1 remonter,	{	* da.	<i>to get up again.</i>	
		ac. da.	<i>to take up again.</i>	
1 remontrer,	ac.	da.	<i>to remonstrate.</i>	
1 remoudre,	ac.		<i>to grind again.</i>	
1 rempaqueter,	ac.		<i>to pack up again.</i>	
1 remplacer,	ac.		<i>to replace.</i>	
2 remplir,	ac.		<i>to fill up.</i>	
1 se remplumer,			<i>to new feather.</i>	
1 remporter,	ac.	da.	<i>to carry back.</i>	
1 emprunter,	ac.	ge.	<i>to borrow again.</i>	
1 remuer,	ac.		<i>to stir.</i>	
1 renaître,		ge.	<i>to be born again.</i>	
1 renchaîner,	ac.		<i>to chain up again.</i>	
2 renchérir,	ac.		<i>to raise.</i>	
1 rencontrer,	ac.		<i>to meet with.</i>	
1 se rendormir,			<i>to fall asleep again.</i>	
1 rendre,	ac.	da.	<i>to return.</i>	
1 rendreire,	ac.	ge.	<i>to new plaster.</i>	
1 renfermer,	ac.		<i>to shut up again.</i>	
1 renfler,	ac.		<i>to swell again.</i>	
1 renforcer,	ac.		<i>to fortify.</i>	
1 rengainer,	ac.		<i>to sheath.</i>	
1 renier,	ac.		<i>to disown.</i>	
1 renoncer,	ac.	da.	<i>to renounce,</i>	— à.

1	renouer,	ac.	<i>to tie again.</i>		
1	renouveler,	ac.	<i>to renew.</i>		
1	renter,	ac.	<i>to endow.</i>		
1	rentrer,	da.	<i>to come again.</i>		
1	renverser,	ac.	<i>to throw down.</i>		
ir.	renvoyer,	ac. da.	<i>to send back,</i>	—	o
ir.	répandre,	ac.	<i>to spill, to spread.</i>		
1	réparer,	ac.	<i>to repair.</i>		
ir.	reparaître,		<i>to appear again.</i>		
2	répartir,	da.	<i>to reply.</i>		
ir.	repartir *,		<i>to go back again.</i>		
1	repasser,		<i>to cross again.</i>		
1	repasser,	ac.	<i>to iron.</i>		
1	repenser,	da.	<i>to remind,</i>	—	à
ir.	se repentir,	ge.	<i>to repent,</i>	—	de
1	répéter	ac. da.	<i>to repeat.</i>		
1	repeupler,	ac. ge.	<i>to repeople</i>		
1	replacer,	ac.	<i>to place again.</i>		
1	replanter,	ac.	<i>to plant again.</i>		
1	replier,	ac.	<i>to fold again.</i>		
1	répliquer,	ac. da.	<i>to reply.</i>		
1	replisser,	ac.	<i>to plait again.</i>		
1	replonger,	ac.	<i>to dip again.</i>		
1	repolir,	ac.	<i>to polish again.</i>		
ir.	répondre,	ac. da.	<i>to answer.</i>		
1	reporter,	ac. da.	<i>to carry back.</i>		
1	se reposer,		<i>to rest.</i>		
1	repousser,	ac.	<i>to drive back.</i>		
ir.	reprandre,	ac. ge.	<i>to chide,</i>	—	de.
1	représenter,	ac. da.	<i>to represent.</i>		
1	réprimander,	ac. ge.	<i>to rebuke,</i>	—	de
1	réprimer,	ac.	<i>to repress.</i>		
1	reprocher,	ac. da.	<i>to reproach,</i>	—	de.
ir.	reproduire,	ac. da.	<i>to reproduce.</i>		
1	répudier,	ac.	<i>to divorce.</i>		
1	repugner,	da.	<i>to repugn,</i>	—	de.
1	repurger,	ac.	<i>to purge again.</i>		
1	réputer,	ac.	<i>to repute,</i>	—	o
ir.	requérir,	ac. ge.	<i>to require.</i>	—	de.
1	réserver,	ac. da.	<i>to reserve.</i>		
1	résider,	da.	<i>to reside.</i>		

1	résigner,	ac.	da.	to resign,	—	à.
1	résilier,	ac.	da.	to cancel.		
1	résister,		da.	to resist.		
ir.	résoudre,	ac.		to resolve,	—	de or à.
ir.	se résoudre,		da.	to resolve upon,	—	à.
1	respecter,	ac.		to respect.		
1	respirer,	ac.		to breathe.		
1	ressembler,		da.	to resemble.		
ir.	ressentir,	ac.		to feel.		
1	resserrer,	ac.		to tie tighter.		
ir.	ressortir,			to go out again.		
ir.	se ressouvenir,		ge.	to remember,	—	de.
1	ressusciter,			to raise from the dead.		
1	restaurer,	ac.		to restore.		
1	rester,			to stop,	—	à.
1	restituer,	ac.	da.	to return.		
ir.	restreindre,	ac.		to limit,	—	à.
1	résulter,		ge.	to result from.		
1	résumer,	ac.		to recapitulate.		
2	rétablir,	ac.		to re-establish.		
1	retarder,	ac.		to put off.		
ir.	retenir,	ac.		to detain,	—	à.
1	retirer,	ac.	ge.	to draw back.		
1	se retirer,		ge.	to withdraw.		
1	retomber,			to fall again.		
ir.	retordre,	ac.		to twist again.		
1	retoucher,	ac.		to revise again.		
1	retourner,	{	da.	to return,	—	o.
			ac.	to turn again.		
1	retracer,	ac.		to draw again.		
1	se rétracter,		ge.	to recant,	—	de.
1	retrancher,	ac.	ge. da.	to diminish.		
1	se retrancher,			to intrench.		
2	rétrécir,	ac.		to make narrow.		
1	rétrograder,			to retrograde.		
1	retrouver,	ac.		to find again.		
1	réveiller,	ac.	ge.	to awake.		
1	révéler,	ac.	da.	to reveal.		
1	revendiquer,	ac.		to claim.		
ir.	revendre,	ac.	da.	to sell again.		
ir.	revenir *	ge.	da.	to come again,	—	o.



1 rêver,			<i>to dream,</i>	—
1 réverbérer,	ac.		<i>to reflect.</i>	
1 révéler,	ac.		<i>to honour.</i>	
ir. revêtir,	ac.	ge.	<i>to invest.</i>	
ir. revivre,			<i>to revive.</i>	
2 réunir,	ac.	da.	<i>to reunite.</i>	
ir. revoir,	ac.		<i>to see again.</i>	
1 se révolter,			<i>to revolt.</i>	
1 révoquer,	ac.		<i>to repeal.</i>	
2 réussir,			<i>to succeed,</i>	—
1 rider,			<i>to wrinkle.</i>	
1 ridiculiser,	ac.		<i>to laugh at.</i>	
1 rimer,	ac.		<i>to rhyme.</i>	
1 réimprimer,	ac.		<i>to reprint,</i>	
1 riposter,	ac.	da.	<i>to reply.</i>	
ir. rire,		ge.	<i>to laugh,</i>	— d
1 risquer,	ac.		<i>to venture,</i>	— à or d
1 rissoler,	ac.		<i>to roast brown.</i>	
1 river,	ac.		<i>to rivet.</i>	
1 rogner,	ac.	da.	<i>to cut, to pare.</i>	
ir. rompre,	ac.	da.	<i>to break.</i>	
1 ronfler,			<i>to snore.</i>	
1 ronger,	ac.		<i>to gnaw.</i>	
2 rôtir,	ac.		<i>to roast.</i>	
2 rougir,			<i>to blush, to redden,</i>	— d
1 rouler,	ac.		<i>to roll.</i>	
2 roussir,			<i>to grow red.</i>	
ir. rouvrir,	ac.		<i>to open again.</i>	
1 ruiner,	ac.		<i>to ruin.</i>	
1 se ruiner.		da.	<i>to ruin one's self,</i>	—

## S

1 Sabler,	ac.		<i>to gravel.</i>	
1 sabrer,	ac.		<i>to cut with a hanger.</i>	
1 saccager,	ac.		<i>to plunder.</i>	
1 sacrer,	ac.		<i>to consecrate.</i>	
1 sacrifier,	ac.	da.	<i>to sacrifice,</i>	—
1 saigner,	ac.		<i>to let blood.</i>	
2 se saisir,		ge.	<i>to lay hold of.</i>	

2	salir,	ac.	<i>to foul.</i>		
1	saluer,	ac.	<i>to salute.</i>		
1	sanctifier,	ac.	<i>to sanctify</i>		
1	saper,	ac.	<i>to sap.</i>		
1	sarcler,	ac.	<i>to weed.</i>		
1	satiriser,	ac.	<i>to satirise.</i>		
ir.	satisfaire,	ac.	<i>to satisfy,</i>	—	de.
ir.	savoir,	ac.	<i>to know,</i>	—	o.
1	sauter,	ac.	<i>to leap, to jump.</i>		
1	sauver,	ac. ge.	<i>to save.</i>		
1	scandaliser,	ac.	<i>to scandalise,</i>	—	de.
1	scier,	ac.	<i>to saw.</i>		
1	sculpter,	ac.	<i>to engrave..</i>		
1	sécher,	ac.	<i>to dry.</i>		
1	seconder,	ac.	<i>to help.</i>		
1	secouer,	ac.	<i>to shake.</i>		
ir.	secourir,	ac.	<i>to relieve.</i>		
ir.	séduire,	ac.	<i>to seduce.</i>		
1	séjourner,	da.	<i>to stay in a place.</i>		
1	sembler,	da.	<i>to seem,</i>	—	o.
1	semer,	ac.	<i>to sow.</i>		
ir.	sentir,	ac.	<i>to feel, to smell.</i>		
1	séquestrer,	ac.	<i>to sequestrate.</i>		
1	serrer,	ac. da.	<i>to squeeze.</i>		
ir.	servir,	ac. da.	<i>to serve,</i>	—	à.
1	sevrer,	ac.	<i>to wean.</i>		
1	siffler,		<i>to whistle.</i>		
1	signaler,	ac.	<i>to make famous.</i>		
1	signer,	ac.	<i>to subscribe.</i>		
1	signifier,	ac. da.	<i>to notify,</i>	—	de.
1	solliciter,	ac. da.	<i>to solicit,</i>	—	à or de.
1	sommeiller,		<i>to slumber.</i>		
1	sommer,	ac.	<i>to summon,</i>	—	de.
1	sonder,	ac.	<i>to sound.</i>		
1	songer.	da.	<i>to think,</i>	—	à.
1	sonner,	ac.	<i>to ring.</i>		
ir.	sortir,	ge.	<i>to go out,</i>	—	de.
1	se soucier,	ge.	<i>to care for,</i>	—	de.
1	souffler,	ac. da.	<i>to blow.</i>		
ir.	souffrir,		<i>to suffer,</i>	—	(subj.) o.
1	souhaiter,	ac. da.	<i>to wish,</i>	—	(subj.) o.

1	souiller,	ac.	ge.	<i>to dirty.</i>		
1	soulager,	ac.	ge.	<i>to relieve.</i>		
1	se souler,		ge.	<i>to cloy one's self.</i>		
1	soulever,	ac.	ge.	<i>to raise.</i>		
ir.	soumettre,	ac.	da.	<i>to submit,</i>	—	à
1	soupçonner,	ac.	ge.	<i>to suspect,</i>	—	de
1	souper,			<i>to sup.</i>		
1	soupirer,			<i>to sigh.</i>		
ir.	sourire,		da.	<i>to smile.</i>		
ir.	souscrire,	ac.	da.	<i>to subscribe.</i>		
ir.	soustraire,	ac. ge.	da.	<i>to subtract.</i>		
ir.	soutenir,	ac.	da.	<i>to maintain,</i>		o
ir.	se souvenir,		ge.	<i>to remember,</i>	—	de
1	spécifier,	ac.		<i>to specify.</i>		
1	statuer,			<i>to ordain,</i>	—	de
1	stipuler,	ac.		<i>to stipulate.</i>		
1	stupéfier,	ac.		<i>to stupefy.</i>		
1	subdiviser,	ac.		<i>to subdivide.</i>		
2	subir,	ac.		<i>to undergo.</i>		
1	submerger,	ac.		<i>to sink.</i>		
1	subordonner,	ac.	da.	<i>to subordinate.</i>		
1	suborner,	ac.		<i>to corrupt.</i>		
1	subroger,	ac.		<i>to substitute.</i>		
1	subsister,			<i>to subsist.</i>		
1	substituer,	ac.	da.	<i>to substitute.</i>		
1	subtiliser,	ac.		<i>to subtilise.</i>		
ir.	subvenir,		da.	<i>to relieve.</i>		
1	succéder,		da.	<i>to succeed.</i>		
1	sucrer,	ac.		<i>to sugar.</i>		
ir.	suffire,		da.	<i>to suffice,</i>	—	de
1	suffoquer,	ac.		<i>to stifle.</i>		
1	suggérer,	ac.		<i>to suggest,</i>	—	de
ir.	suivre,	ac.	da.	<i>to follow.</i>		
1	supplanter,	ac.		<i>to supplant.</i>		
1	suppléer,	ac.	da.	<i>to supply.</i>		
1	supplier,	ac.	ge.	<i>to entreat,</i>	(subj.)	de
1	supporter,	ac.		<i>to suffer, to bear up.</i>		
1	supposer,	ac.	da.	<i>to suppose,</i>	(ind. subj.)	o
1	supprimer,	ac.	ge.	<i>to suppress.</i>		
1	supputer,	ac.		<i>to compute.</i>		
1	surcharger,	ac.	ge.	<i>to overcharge.</i>		

<i>ir.</i>	surfaire,	ac.	<i>to exact.</i>		
1	surmonter,	ac.	<i>to excel.</i>		
1	surmager,		<i>to swim over.</i>		
1	surpasser,	ac.	<i>to excel.</i>		
<i>ir.</i>	surprendre,	ac.	<i>to surprise,</i>	—	de.
<i>ir.</i>	survivre,	da.	<i>to survive.</i>		
<i>ir.</i>	suspendre,	ac. da.	<i>to hang up.</i>		
1	sustenter,	ac.	<i>to give sustenance.</i>		
1	sympatiser,		<i>to sympathise.</i>		

## T

1	Tacher,	ac.	<i>to stain.</i>		
1	tâcher,		<i>to endeavour,</i>	—	de.
			<i>to aim at,</i>	—	à.
1	tacheter,	ac.	<i>to speckle.</i>		
1	tailler,	ac.	<i>to cut out.</i>		
<i>ir.</i>	taire,	ac.	<i>to keep silent.</i>		
1	tamiser,	ac.	<i>to sift.</i>		
1	taner,	ac.	<i>to tan.</i>		
1	tapisser,	ac.	<i>to furnish with hangings.</i>		
1	tarder,		<i>to delay,</i>	—	à.
1	tarir,	ac.	<i>to dry up.</i>		
1	tasser,	ac.	<i>to heap up.</i>		
1	tâter,	ac. da.	<i>to feel.</i>		
1	taxer,	ac. ge.	<i>to tax,</i>	—	de.
<i>ir.</i>	teindre,	ac.	<i>to dye.</i>		
1	tempérer,	ac.	<i>to allay.</i>		
1	temporiser,		<i>to delay.</i>		
<i>ir.</i>	tendre,	ac. da.	<i>to tend,</i>	—	à.
<i>ir.</i>	tenir,	ac. da.	<i>to hold.</i>		
1	tenter,	ac.	<i>to tempt,</i>	—	de.
1	tergiverser,		<i>to shift.</i>		
1	terminer,	ac.	<i>to terminate.</i>		
1	terrasser,	ac.	<i>to throw down.</i>		
1	tirer,	{ ac. ge. da.	<i>to draw.</i>		
		{ da.	<i>to shoot.</i>		
1	toiser,	ac.	<i>to measure.</i>		
1	tolérer,	ac.	<i>to tolerate.</i>		
1	tomber*,		<i>to fall.</i>		

<i>ir.</i>	tondre,	ac.		<i>to shear</i>	
<i>imp.</i>	tonner,			<i>to thunder.</i>	
1	toucher,	ac.	da.	<i>to touch.</i>	
1	tourmenter,	ac.		<i>to plague.</i>	
1	tourner,	ac.	da.	<i>to turn round</i>	
1	tournoyer,			<i>to whirl about</i>	
1	tousser,			<i>to cough.</i>	
1	tracer,	ac.	da.	<i>to draw.</i>	
<i>ir.</i>	traduire,	ac.	ge.	<i>to translate.</i>	
1	trafiquer,	ac.		<i>to trade.</i>	
2	trahir,	ac.		<i>to betray.</i>	
1	trainer,	ac.		<i>to drag along</i>	
<i>ir.</i>	traire,	ac.		<i>to milk.</i>	
1	traiter,	ac.		<i>to treat.</i>	
1	tramer,	ac.		<i>to plot.</i>	
1	trancher,	ac.	da.	<i>to cut off.</i>	
1	tranquilliser,	ac.		<i>to quiet.</i>	
<i>ir.</i>	transcrire,	ac.		<i>to transcribe</i>	
1	transférer,	ac. ge. da.		<i>to transfer.</i>	
1	transformer,	ac.		<i>to transform.</i>	
1	transgresser,	ac.		<i>to transgress.</i>	
1	transiger,			<i>to transact.</i>	
<i>ir.</i>	transmettre,	ac.	da.	<i>to transmit.</i>	
1	transpirer,			<i>to perspire.</i>	
1	transplanter,	ac.		<i>to transplant.</i>	
1	transporter,	ac. ge. da.		<i>to transfer.</i>	
1	transposer,	ac.		<i>to transpose.</i>	
1	transvaser,	ac.		<i>to decant.</i>	
1	travailler,	ac.	da.	<i>to work,</i>	—
1	traverser,	ac.		<i>to cross.</i>	
2	se travestir,			<i>to disguise one's self.</i>	
1	trébucher,			<i>to stumble.</i>	
1	trembler,		ge.	<i>to shiver,</i>	— d
1	tremper,	ac.		<i>to soak.</i>	
1	trépaner,	ac.		<i>to trepan.</i>	
<i>ir.</i>	tressaillir,		ge.	<i>to start.</i>	
1	tricoter,	ac.		<i>to knit.</i>	
1	triompher,		ge.	<i>to triumph,</i>	— d
1	tripler,	ac.		<i>to treble.</i>	
1	tromper	ac.		<i>to deceive.</i>	

1	tronquer,	ac.	<i>to mutilate.</i>		
1	troquer,	ac.	<i>to barter.</i>		
1	trotter,		<i>to trot.</i>		
1	troubler,	ac.	<i>to trouble.</i>		
1	trouver,	ac.	<i>to find out,</i>	—	à.
1	tyranniser,	ac.	<i>to oppress.</i>		

## U

1	Ulcérer,	ac.	<i>to ulcerate.</i>		
2	unir,	ac.	da. <i>to unite.</i>		
1	user,	{	ge. <i>to use.</i>		
		ac.	<i>to wear out.</i>		

## V

1	Vaciller,		<i>to stagger.</i>		
1	vaincre,	ac.	<i>to vanquish</i>		
1	valoir,	ac.	da. <i>to be worth.</i>		
1	valoir mieux,		<i>to be better,</i>	—	o.
1	vanter,	ac.	<i>to commend.</i>		
1	se vanter,	ge.	<i>to boast,</i>	—	de.
1	végéter,		<i>to vegetate.</i>		
1	veiller,	ac.	da. <i>to watch,</i>	—	à.
1	vendre,	ac.	da. <i>to sell.</i>		
1	venir*,	ge.	da. { <i>to come to,</i>	—	o.
			<i>to happen,</i>	—	à.
			<i>to have just,</i>	—	de
1	venter,		<i>to blow.</i>		
1	verdir,		<i>to become green.</i>		
1	vergetter,	ac.	<i>to brush.</i>		
1	vérifier,	ac.	<i>to verify.</i>		
1	vernir,	ac.	<i>to varnish.</i>		
1	vernisser,	ac.	<i>to varnish.</i>		
1	vexer,	ac.	<i>to vex.</i>		
1	vicier,	ac.	<i>to viciate.</i>		
1	vider,	ac.	<i>to empty.</i>		
2	vieillir,		<i>to grow old.</i>		
1	violier,	ac.	<i>to transgress, to violate.</i>		

1	viser,	ac.	da.	<i>to aim at,</i>	—	ā.
1	vitrer,	ac.		<i>to glaze.</i>		
ir.	vivre,			<i>to live.</i>		
ir.	voir,	ac.		<i>to see,</i>	—	o.
1	voler,	{	ac.	<i>to rob.</i>		
			da.	<i>to fly,</i>	—	o.
1	vouer,	ac.	da.	<i>to devote.</i>		
ir.	vouloir,	ac.		<i>to be willing,</i>		(subj.) o.

## DIALOGUES.

---

### DIALOGUE I. *Sur l'Histoire de France.*

D. Combien y a-t-il eu de rois en France depuis Pharamond jusqu'à Louis Seize ?

R. Soixant

D. Nommez-les dans l'ordre qu'ils ont régné, mettez en titre le nom de chaque famille, et après chaque roi, l'année où il a commencé son règne.

R. Volontiers, mais à condition que vous les apprendrez par cœur.

#### ROIS DE FRANCE.

21 <i>Mérovingiens.</i>				Childéric II.	-	-	715
Pharamond	-	-	420	Thierry II.	-	-	720
Clodion	-	-	427	<i>Inter règne</i>	-	-	737
Mérovée	-	-	448	Childéric III.	-	-	742
Childéric I.	-	-	458	12 <i>Carlovingiens.</i>			
Clovis I.	-	-	481	Pépin	-	-	752
Childébert I.	-	-	511	Charlemagne	-	-	768
Clotaire I.	-	-	558	Lois I.	-	-	814
Charibert	-	-	561	Charles <i>le Chauve</i>	-	-	840
Childéric I.	-	-	567	Louis II.	-	-	877
Clotaire II.	-	-	584	Louis III. et Carloman	-	-	879
Dagobert I.	-	-	628	Charles II.	-	-	884
Clovis II.	-	-	638	Eudes *	-	-	887
Clotaire III.	-	-	656	Charles III.	-	-	898
Childéric II.	-	-	670	Robert *	-	-	922
Thierry I.	-	-	673	Raoul *	-	-	923
Clovis III.	-	-	691	Louis IV.	-	-	936
Childébert II.	-	-	695	Lothaire	-	-	954
Dagobert II.	-	-	711	Louis V.	-	-	986

\* Eudes, Robert, et Raoul ne sont point de la famille des Carlovingiens; Eudes et Robert étaient, l'un Comte de Paris, et l'autre Duc de France. Raoul était Duc de Bourgogne.



33 Capétiens.				Jean II.			
Hugues Capet	-	-	987	Charles V.	-	-	1350
Robert	-	-	996	Charles VI.	-	-	1380
Henri I.	-	-	1031	Charles VII.	-	-	1422
Philippe I.	-	-	1060	Louis XI.	-	-	1461
Louis VI.	-	-	1108	Charles VIII.	-	-	1483
Louis VII.	-	-	1137	Louis XII.	-	-	1493
Philippe II.	-	-	1180	François I.	-	-	1515
Louis VIII.	-	-	1223	Henri II.	-	-	1547
Louis IX.	-	-	1226	François II.	-	-	1559
Philippe III.	-	-	1270	Charles IX.	-	-	1560
Philippe le Bel	-	-	1285	Henri III.	-	-	1574
Louis X.	-	-	1314	Henri IV.	-	-	1589
Jean I.	-	-	1316	Louis XIII.	-	-	1610
Philippe V.	-	-	1316	Louis XIV.	-	-	1643
Charles IV.	-	-	1322	Louis XV.	-	-	1715
Philippe de Valois	-	-	1328	Louis XVI.	-	-	1774

D. Quels sont les rois qui ont plus particulièrement protégé les sciences ?

R. Charlemagne, Robert, Philippe-le-Bel, François Premier, et Louis Quatorze.

D. Combien de rois ont eu des morts tragiques ?

R. Sept, savoir, Chilpéric Premier, Childéric Second, Charles le Chauve, Lothaire, Henri Trois, Henri Quatre, et Louis Seize. Chilpéric fut assassiné par un de ses nobles l'an 584. Childéric Second fut tué en revenant de la chasse l'an 673. Charles le Chauve fut empoisonné par son médecin l'an 877. Lothaire fut empoisonné par sa femme l'an 986. Henri Trois fut assassiné par Jacques Clément l'an 1589. Henri Quatre fut tué par Ravallac en 1610. Louis Seize fut décapité par ordre de la Convention Nationale en 1793.

D. Y a-t-il eu des guerres civiles en France ?

R. Oui, particulièrement quatre; la première arriva à la mort de Louis Premier, qui avait nommé Charles le Chauve son jeune fils pour son successeur, par préférence à Lothaire son fils aîné. Lothaire disputa la couronne, et la bataille la plus sanglante qui ait été livrée depuis le commencement de la monarchie Française se donna entre les fils de Louis, à Fontenay, l'an 842.

La seconde fut entre Henri Premier et sa mère Constance qui voulait mettre sur le trône Robert son jeune frère.

La troisième fut excitée par les Calvinistes qui se liguèrent et attaquèrent Henri Trois en 1575; ils prirent plusieurs places fortes et livrèrent bien des combats avant qu'on pût les réduire.

La quatrième commença l'an 1793, dans la Bretagne; elle fut très-cruelle, et très-sanglante.

Le parti-royaliste a coûté plus de cent mille hommes avant d'être détruit.

*D.* Nommez-moi quelques faits remarquables depuis Pharaon jusqu'au douzième siècle.

*R.* Clovis Premier se fit baptiser et établit le Christianisme l'an 496. En 583 une peste cruelle désola toute la France, et surtout Paris: Childéric Trois et dernier de la famille des Mérovingiens fut déposé et enfermé dans un monastère, l'an 752. Pépin fut élu à sa place par les états assemblés à Soissons. La célèbre Université de Paris commença sous Charlemagne en 796.

En 922 Charles Trois, dit le Simple, fut déposé par les seigneurs, qui mirent Robert sur le trône: Charles fut arrêté peu de temps après, et renfermé dans le château de Thiéri, où il mourut.

Il y eut une famine si cruelle en 1033, qu'au rapport des historiens on dérobaient les petits enfans pour les manger, et qu'on attendait les voyageurs au coin des bois pour les dévorer. Les croisades pour la Terre Sainte commencèrent en 1096

*D.* Rapportez-moi quelques faits remarquables depuis le douzième siècle jusqu'à Louis Seize.

*R.* La Pragmatique sanction est publiée en 1269, par laquelle les cathédrales et les abbayes obtiennent le privilège d'élire leurs prélats. Humbert attacha le Dauphiné à la couronne de France en 1349, à condition que le fils aîné du roi en porterait le nom et les armes. En 1356, Jean et son fils furent faits prisonniers par le Prince Noir, fils d'Edouard Trois, roi d'Angleterre, qui prétendait à la couronne de France au droit de sa mère, mais qui en était exclu par la loi Salique. Henri Six, Roi d'Angleterre, fut couronné Roi de France l'an 1431, au droit de son père, qui avait été nommé héritier de la couronne; mais le Dauphin soutint ses droits, se fit reconnaître, et chassa Henri Six de ses états. La France fut un théâtre de carnage en 1569. Charles Neuf fit égorguer les Calvinistes à Paris en 1572. Les Calvinistes excitèrent une guerre civile en 1575.

Henri Quatre, qui avait été élevé dans la religion Protestante, se convertit à la religion Catholique en 1593, et par sa conver-

sion appaisa les troubles et les guerres civiles qui désolaient la France.

Louis Quatorze, qui regna près de soixante-douze ans, détruisit les duels, protégea les sciences, et récompensa toujours le mérite; il réussit à maintenir son petit-fils Philippe Cinq sur le trône d'Espagne, malgré plusieurs rois ligués contre lui. Louis Seize assembla les états généraux en 1789, pour réparer l'état de ses finances; cette assemblée a opéré la révolution Française, dont l'histoire seule demande des volumes entiers.

DIALOGUE II. *Sur l'Histoire d'Angleterre.*

D. Combien y a-t-il eu de rois et de reines en Angleterre depuis l'Eptarchie Saxonne ?

R. Il y a eu quarante-neuf rois, et quatre reines.

D. Nommez-les dans l'ordre qu'ils ont régné, mettez en titre le nom de chaque famille, et après chaque roi, l'époque où il a commencé à régner ?

R. Volontiers, mais soyez attentif, et tâchez de vous en res-souvenir.

ROIS D'ANGLETERRE.

15 Saxons.		Jean sans terre	-	-	1199
Egbert	-	819	Henri III.	-	1216
Ethelwolf	-	837	Edouard I.	-	1272
Ethelbald	-	858	Edouard II.	-	1307
Ethelbert	-	860	Edouard III.	-	1327
Ethelred I.	-	866	Richard II.	-	1377
Alfred	-	871	3 Lancastres.		
Edward le vieux	-	900	Henri IV.	-	1400
Athelstan	-	925	Henri V.	-	1413
Edmond I.	-	940	Henri VI.	-	1422
Edred	-	946	3 Yorks.		
Edwin	-	955	Edouard IV.	-	1461
Edgar	-	959	Edouard V.	-	1483
Edward le jeune	-	975	Richard III.	-	1483
Ethelred II.	-	978	5 Tudors.		
Edmond II.	-	1016	Henri VII.	-	1485
3 Danois.			Henri VIII.	-	1509
Canut	-	1017	Edouard VI.	-	1547
Harold I.	-	1036	Marie	-	1553
Hardi-Canut	-	1040	Elizabeth	-	1556
Encore 2 Saxons.			6 Stuarts.		
Edouard le Confesseur	1042		Jacques I.	-	1602
Harold II.	1065		Charles I.	-	1625
3 Normans.			Charles II.	-	1660
Guillaume I. le Conq.	1066		Jacques II.	-	1685
Guillaume II. le Roux	1087		Guillaume III. et Marie	1689	
Henri I.	1100		Anne	-	1702
Maison de Blois.			4 Brunswicks.		
Etienne	1135		George I.	-	1714
8 Plantagenets.			George II.	-	1727
Henri II.	1154		George III.	-	1760
Richard I. Cœur de Lion	1189		George IV.	-	1820

*D.* Quels droits avaient à la couronne les premiers rois de chaque famille?

*R.* Egbert était un des rois de l'Eptarchie Saxonne, il soumit les six autres, et se fit couronner roi de la Bretagne supérieure, à laquelle il donna le nom d'Angleterre.

Canut, Prince Danois, avait partagé l'Angleterre avec Edmond, et fut reconnu roi de tout le royaume à la mort du dernier; il n'y avait d'autre droit que celui de conquête.

Guillaume, Duc de Normandie, occupa l'Angleterre à titre d'héritier d'Edouard le Confesseur, et prit celui de Conquérant.

Etienne de Blois s'empara du trône dans l'absence de Mathilde, fille de Henri Premier, et héritière légitime.

Henri Second, fils de Mathilde, monta sur le trône à la mort d'Etienne, qui, pour mettre fin à la guerre civile, s'était engagé par un traité à lui laisser la couronne au préjudice de ses propres enfans.

Henri Quatre fut élevé sur le trône au préjudice d'Edmond Mortimer, ce qui, occasionna de funestes divisions entre les maisons d'York et de Lancastre.

Edmond Quatre, de la maison d'York, qui se croyait héritier de la couronne, réussit à détrôner Henri Six après une guerre civile.

Henri Sept, de la famille des Tudors, avait du côté de sa mère tous les droits de la famille de Lancastre à la couronne, et du côté de sa femme tous ceux de la maison d'York.

Jacques Premier, roi d'Ecosse, était le plus proche parent d'Elizabeth, qui l'avait nommé pour son successeur dans son testament.

George Premier était sorti de la maison des Stuarts par sa mère, petite fille de Jacques Premier; la Reine Anne l'avait nommé son successeur.

*D.* Combien de rois ont été tués en combattant?

*R.* Trois: Ethelred Premier fut tué dans une bataille contre les Danois qui venaient continuellement ravager son pays. Harold Deux fut tué dans une bataille contre Guillaume le Conquérant. Richard Trois fut tué dans une bataille contre Henri Sept.

*D.* Combien de rois ont eu une mort tragique?

*R.* Les neuf suivans ; Edmond Premier, Edouard le Jeune, Edmond Second, Guillaume le Roux, Richard Premier, Edouard Second, Richard Second, Edouard Cinq, et Charles Premier.

1. Edmond Premier fut assassiné par un nommé Léol, scé-  
lérat renommé, que le roi avait envoyé en exil. 2. Edouard le  
Jeune fut assassiné par les ordres de sa belle-mère Elfride, qui  
voulait faire régner son propre fils Ethelred Second. 3. Edmond  
Second fut cruellement assassiné par les domestiques de son  
beau-frère Edrick, à qui Canut fit trancher la tête. 4. Guillaume  
le Roux, étant à la chasse, fut tué d'un coup de flèche tiré sans  
dessein par un de ses domestiques. 5. Richard Premier, sur-  
nommé Cœur de Lion, voulant obliger un Seigneur Limousin à  
lui rendre un trésor qu'il avait trouvé, s'approcha du château de  
ce gentilhomme pour l'attaquer ; il reçut un coup de flèche  
dont il mourut. 6. Edouard Second fut déposé par le parle-  
ment, et enfermé au château de Berkley où il fut cruellement  
assassiné. 7. Richard Second fut déposé par le parlement, et  
enfermé dans le château de Pontefract où il fut inhumainement  
assassiné par l'ordre de Henri Quatre, chef des mécontents, qui  
fut élu à sa place. 8. Edouard Cinq, et son frère le Duc d'York,  
furent enfermés à la Tour, et ensuite étouffés dans leur lit par  
l'ordre du Duc de Gloucester, qui prit le nom de Richard Trois  
quand il fut monté sur le trône. 9. Charles Premier fut dé-  
capité par l'ordre du parlement, le 30 Janvier 1649 ; son fils,  
Charles Second, ne monta sur le trône qu'en 1660, onze ans  
après la mort de son père.

*D.* L'Angleterre a-t-elle eu bien des guerres étrangères à  
soutenir ?

*R.* Oui, du temps des rois Saxons, les Danois y firent des  
descentes fréquentes pendant plus de deux cens ans. Il y a eu  
beaucoup de guerres entre l'Angleterre et la France depuis  
Guillaume le Conquérant, mais particulièrement depuis la Reine  
Anne ; il y a eu aussi des guerres contre l'Espagne, contre la  
Hollande, et contre l'Amérique.

*D.* Y a-t-il eu plusieurs guerres civiles en Angleterre ?

*R.* Oui, et nous pouvons compter entre autres les quatre  
suivantes comme les plus mémorables. La première commença  
en 1135, quand Etienne de Blois monta sur le trône au pré-  
judice de Mathilde, fille unique et légitime héritière de Henri  
Premier. La seconde arriva sous le règne de Richard Second,  
et finit par le déposer. La troisième fut suscitée par la maison  
d'York, et finit par mettre Edouard Quatre sur le trône à la  
place de Henri Six, qui fut déposé. La quatrième fut celle du

parlement contre Charles Premier; ce prince malheureux fut vaincu et décapité.

*D.* Depuis quand les rois d'Angleterre prennent-ils le titre de rois de France?

*R.* Depuis Edouard Trois, qui avait épousé la sœur de Charles Quatre, qui mourut sans enfans: il était exclu de la couronne par la loi Salique; cependant il prit le titre de roi de France, que ses successeurs ont conservé jusqu'en 1800.

*D.* Y a-t-il eu des rois d'Angleterre qui aient été couronnés rois de France?

*R.* Oui: Henri Six encore enfant fut couronné roi de France dans l'église de Notre-Dame de Paris, l'an 1431.

*D.* Quels droits avait-il à la couronne?

*R.* Son père avait épousé Catherine, fille de Charles Six, Roi de France, qui l'avait reconnu pour héritier de sa couronne, au préjudice du Dauphin.

*D.* Henri Six jouit-il long-temps de la couronne de France?

*R.* Non: le Dauphin, connu sous le nom de Charles Sept, se fit aussi couronner roi de France: il soutint son droit, reprit toutes les villes que son père avait perdues, et chassa Henri Six de son royaume. Jeanne d'Arc (surnommée la Pucelle d'Orléans) fit des choses extraordinaires dans cette guerre contre les Anglais.

*D.* Y a-t-il eu plusieurs pestes en Angleterre?

*R.* Oui, et de très-cruelles; il y eut une peste désastreuse en 1094, une seconde en 1349, une troisième en 1407, une quatrième en 1603, et la dernière en 1665.

*D.* Y a-t-il eu des incendies considérables à Londres?

*R.* Oui, particulièrement deux: le premier arriva en 1132, et brûla une très-grande partie de Londres; le second en 1666, il y eut quatre-vingt-neuf églises et plus de treize mille maisons brûlées.

*D.* Nommez-moi deux ou trois époques considérables de l'histoire d'Angleterre.

*R.* Les trois événemens les plus intéressans sont: 1. La conquête de l'Angleterre par Guillaume, Duc de Normandie, en

1066. 2. La réforme que Luther commença en 1517. 3. La révolution que Cromwell et le parlement opérèrent en Angleterre, et dans laquelle Charles Premier fut décapité.

*D.* En quoi consiste l'autorité des rois d'Angleterre ?

*R.* Ils ont le pouvoir de faire la paix et la guerre ; ils disposent des armées de terre et de mer ; ils peuvent seuls convoquer, proroger, ou casser le parlement ; les décrets passés dans les deux chambres n'ont pas force de loi sans leur consentement formel : ils donnent les places de l'état, disposent des charges de la magistrature, et nomment à tous les évêchés.

**FIN.**



**LONDON:**  
**Printed by A. SPOTTISWOOD,**  
**New-Street-Square.**





